Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for elementary learners of English

Fourth Edition

with answers

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/essentialgrammarinuse

Fourth Edition © Cambridge University Press 2015

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

Essential Grammar in Use first published 1990
Fourth edition 2015

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-48055-1 Edition with answers
ISBN 978-1-107-48053-7 Edition with answers and Interactive eBook
ISBN 978-1-107-48056-8 Edition without answers
ISBN 978-1-107-48061-2 Edition with Supplementary Exercises
ISBN 978-1-107-48060-5 Interactive eBook

S 300/31 g

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Acknowledgements vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present

1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like** etc. (present simple)
6 **I don't ...** (present simple negative)
7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
9 **I have ...** and **I've got ...**

Past

10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went** etc. (past simple)
12 **I didn't ...** **Did you ... ?** (past simple negative and questions)
13 **I was doing** (past continuous)
14 **I was doing** (past continuous) and **I did** (past simple)

Present perfect

15 **I have done** (present perfect 1)
16 **I've just ...** **I've already ...** **I haven't ... yet** (present perfect 2)
17 **Have you ever ... ?** (present perfect 3)
18 **How long have you ... ?** (present perfect 4)
19 **for** **since** **ago**
20 **I have done** (present perfect) and **I did** (past)

Passive

21 **is done** **was done** (passive 1)
22 **is being done** **has been done** (passive 2)

Verb forms

23 **be/have/do** in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future

25 **What are you doing tomorrow?**
26 **I'm going to ...**
27 **will/shall** 1
28 **will/shall** 2

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271

Modals, imperative etc.

29 **might**
30 **can** and **could**
31 **must   mustn't   don't need to**
32 **should**
33 **I have to ...**
34 **Would you like ... ?   I'd like ...**
35 **Do this!   Don't do that!   Let's do this!**
36 **I used to ...**

There *and* ***it***

37 **there is   there are**
38 **there was/were   there has/have been   there will be**
39 **It ...**

Auxiliary verbs

40 **I am, I don't** etc.
41 **Have you?   Are you?   Don't you?** etc.
42 **too/either   so am I / neither do I** etc.
43 **isn't, haven't, don't** etc. (negatives)

Questions

44 **is it ... ?   have you ... ?   do they ... ?** etc. (questions 1)
45 **Who saw you?   Who did you see?** (questions 2)
46 **Who is she talking to?   What is it like?** (questions 3)
47 **What ... ?   Which ... ?   How ... ?** (questions 4)
48 **How long does it take ... ?**
49 **Do you know where ... ?   I don't know what ...** etc.

Reported speech

50 **She said that ...   He told me that ...**

-ing *and* ***to ...***

51 **work/working   go/going   do/doing**
52 **to ...** (**I want to do**) and **-ing** (**I enjoy doing**)
53 **I want you to ...   I told you to ...**
54 **I went to the shop to ...**

Go*,* ***get****,* ***do****,* ***make*** *and* ***have***

55 **go to ...   go on ...   go for ...   go -ing**
56 **get**
57 **do** and **make**
58 **have**

Pronouns and possessives

59 **I/me   he/him   they/them** etc.
60 **my/his/their** etc.
61 **Whose** is this? It's **mine/yours/hers** etc.
62 **I/me/my/mine**
63 **myself/yourself/themselves** etc.
64 **-'s** (**Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car etc.)

A** and **the

65 **a/an …**
66 **train(s)** **bus(es)** (singular and plural)
67 **a bottle / some water** (countable/uncountable 1)
68 **a cake / some cake / some cakes** (countable/uncountable 2)
69 **a/an** and **the**
70 **the …**
71 **go to work** **go home** **go to the cinema**
72 I like **music** I hate **exams**
73 **the …** (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns

74 **this/that/these/those**
75 **one/ones**
76 **some** and **any**
77 **not** + **any** **no** **none**
78 **not** + **anybody/anyone/anything** **nobody/no-one/nothing**
79 **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc.
80 **every** and **all**
81 **all** **most** **some** **any** **no/none**
82 **both** **either** **neither**
83 **a lot** **much** **many**
84 **(a) little** **(a) few**

Adjectives and adverbs

85 **old/nice/interesting** etc. (adjectives)
86 **quickly/badly/suddenly** etc. (adverbs)
87 **old/older** **expensive / more expensive**
88 **older than …** **more expensive than …**
89 **not as … as**
90 **the oldest** **the most expensive**
91 **enough**
92 **too**

Word order

93 He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)
94 **always/usually/often** etc. (word order 2)
95 **still** **yet** **already**
96 **Give me that book!** **Give it to me!**

Conjunctions and clauses

97 **and** **but** **or** **so** **because**
98 **When …**
99 **If we go …** **If you see …** etc.
100 **If I had …** **If we went …** etc.
101 a person **who …** a thing **that/which …** (relative clauses 1)
102 the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

Prepositions

103 **at 8 o'clock** **on Monday** **in April**
104 **from … to** **until** **since** **for**
105 **before** **after** **during** **while**
106 **in** **at** **on** (places 1)
107 **in** **at** **on** (places 2)
108 **to** **in** **at** (places 3)
109 **under**, **behind**, **opposite** etc.
110 **up**, **over**, **through** etc.
111 **on** **at** **by** **with** **about**
112 **afraid of …** , **good at …** etc. **of/at/for** etc. (prepositions) + **-ing**
113 **listen to …** , **look at …** etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs

114 **go in**, **fall off**, **run away** etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
115 **put on** your shoes **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices

Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (**he's** / **I'd** / **don't** etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (**take off** / **give up** etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **give up** your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283
Key to Additional exercises 310
Key to Study guide 313

Index 315

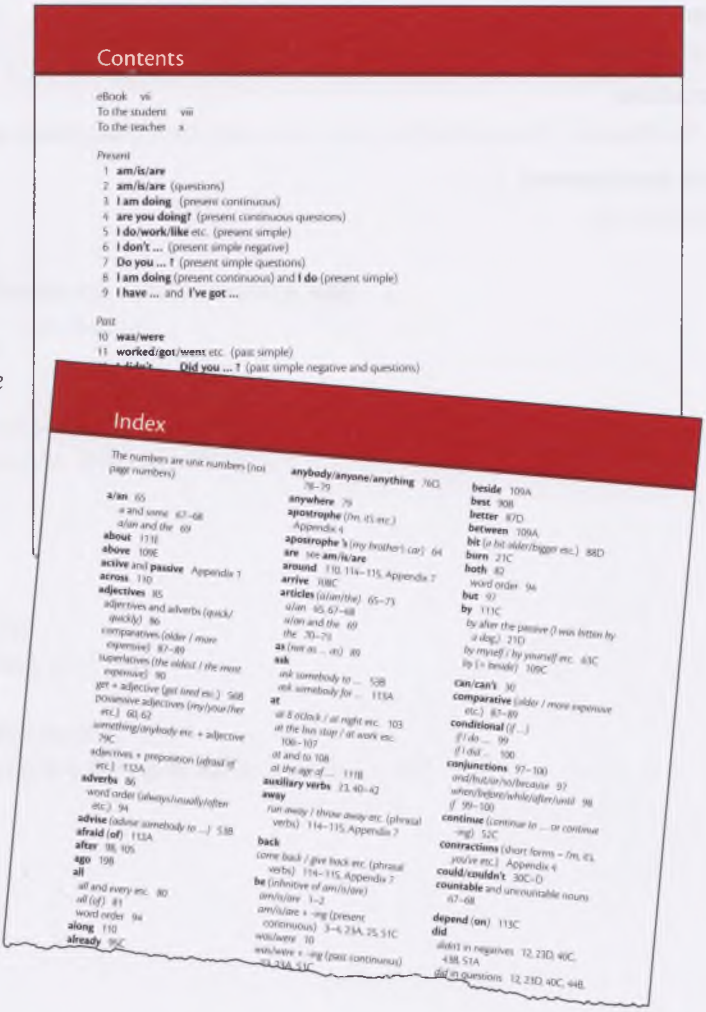
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271

To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done* etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.



Contents

eBook vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present
1 **am/is/are**
2 **am/is/are** (questions)
3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
5 **I do/work/like** etc. (present simple)
6 **I don't ...** (present simple negative)
7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)
8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
9 **I have ...** and **I've got ...**

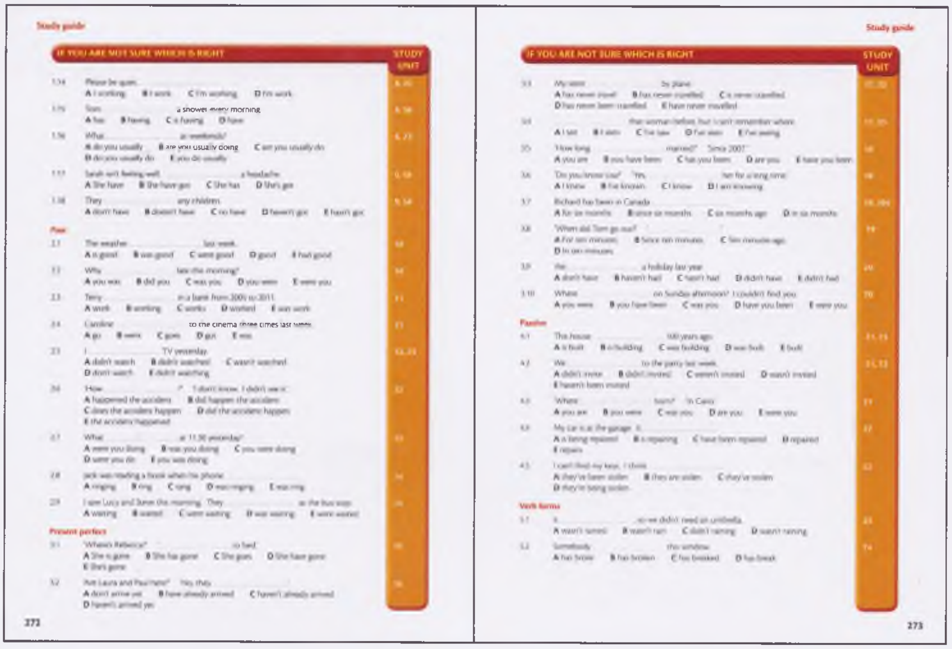
Past
10 **was/were**
11 **worked/got/went** etc. (past simple)
Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers)

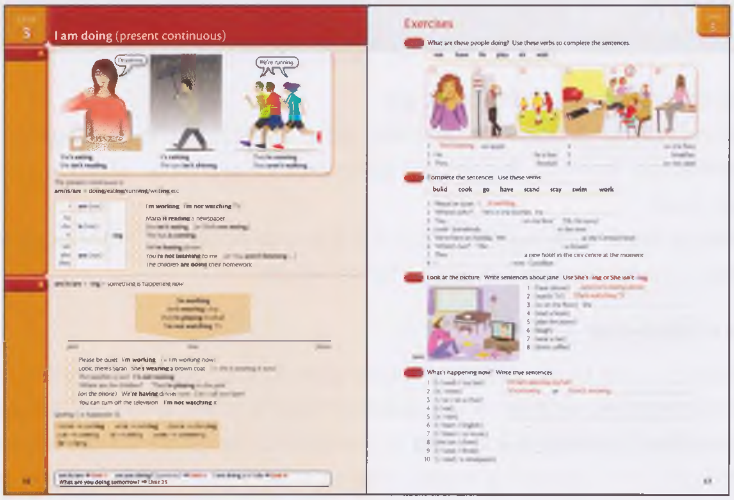
a/an 65
a and *some* 67–68
a/an and *the* 69
about 111E
above 109E
active and **passive** Appendix 1
across 110
adjectives 85
adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 86
comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 87–89
superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 90
get + adjective (*get tired* etc.) 56B
possessive adjectives (*my/your/her* etc.) 60, 62
something/anybody etc. + adjective 79C
adjectives + preposition (*afraid of* etc.) 113A
adverbs 86
word order (*always/usually/often* etc.) 94
advise (*advise somebody to ...*) 53B
afraid (of) 113A
after 98, 105
ago 19B
all
all and *every* etc. 80
all (of) 81
word order 94
along 110
already 95C
anybody/anyone/anything 76D, 78–79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (*I'm, it's* etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 64
are see **am/is/are**
around 110, 114–115, Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (*a/an/the*) 65–73
a/an 65, 67–68
a/an and *the* 69
the 70–73
as (*not as ... as*) 89
ask
ask somebody to ... 53B
ask somebody for ... 113A
at
at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103
at the bus stop / at work etc. 106–107
at and *to* 108
at the age of ... 111B
auxiliary verbs 23, 40–42
away
run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
back
come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
be (infinitive of *am/is/are*)
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are + -*ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
was/were 10
was/were + -*ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
beside 109A
best 90B
better 87D
between 109A
bit (*a bit older/bigger* etc.) 88D
born 21C
both 82
word order 94
but 97
by 111C
by after the passive (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 21D
by myself / by yourself etc. 63C
by (= beside) 109C
can/can't 30
comparative (*older / more expensive* etc.) 87–89
conditional (*if ...*)
if I do ... 99
if I did ... 100
conjunctions 97–100
and/but/or/so/because 97
when/before/while/after/until 98
if 99–100
continue (*continue to ...* or *continue* -*ing*) 52C
contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've* etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 30C–D
countable and uncountable nouns 67–68
depend (on) 113C
did
didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* at the back of the book.



Study guide (pages 271–282)

Each unit is two pages.
The information is on
the left-hand page and
the exercises are on the
right:


Unit 3 I am doing (present continuous)

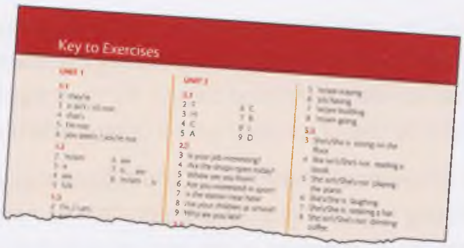
Exercises

Information **Exercises**

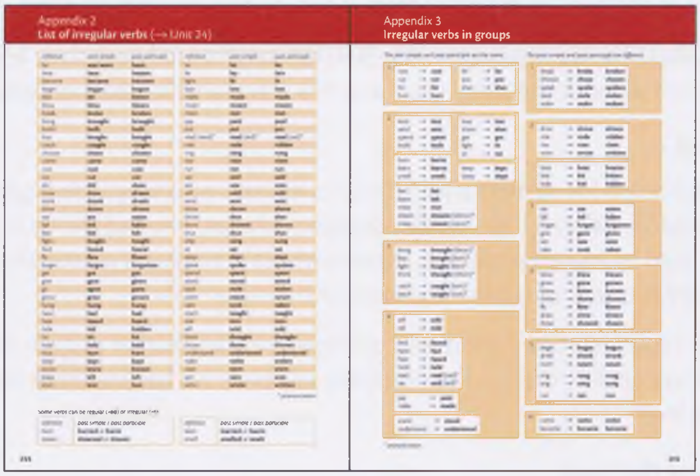
Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the *Key* to check your answers. The *Key* is on pages 283–309.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

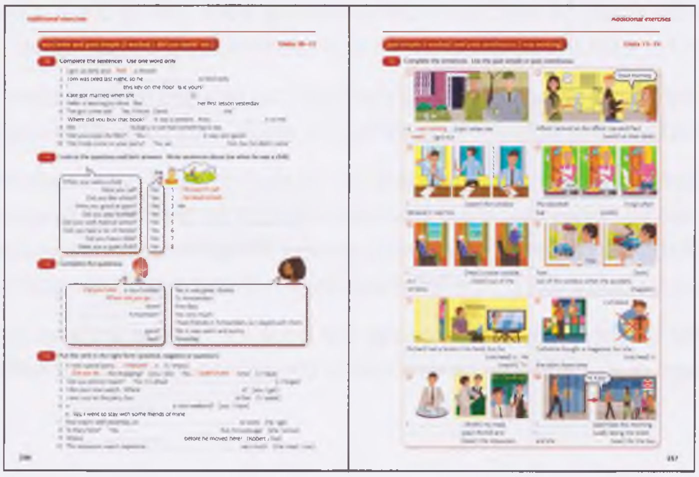

Key to Exercises

Don't forget the seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.


Appendix 2
List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

Appendix 3
Irregular verbs in groups

There are also *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (pages 252–270).
There is a list of these exercises on page 252.


Additional exercises

To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 271.

Finally, there is a *Key* (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study guide* and *Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

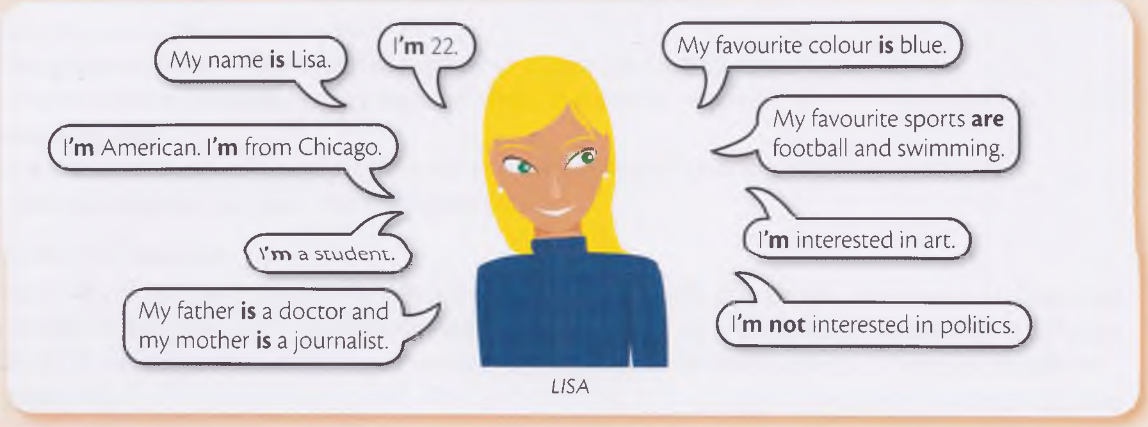
In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

Unit
1

am/is/are

A


My name **is** Lisa.
I**'m** 22.
My favourite colour **is** blue.
My favourite sports **are** football and swimming.
I**'m** American. I**'m** from Chicago.
I**'m** a student.
I**'m** interested in art.
My father **is** a doctor and my mother **is** a journalist.
I**'m not** interested in politics.
LISA

B

positive

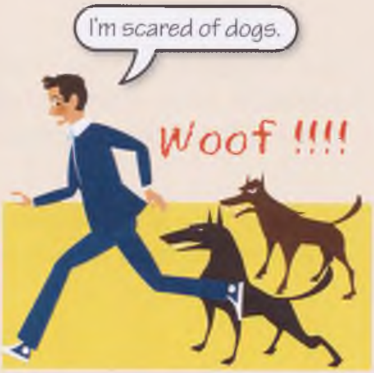
I	**am**	(I**'m**)
he she it	**is**	(he**'s**) (she**'s**) (it**'s**)
we you they	**are**	(we**'re**) (you**'re**) (they**'re**)
		short form

negative

I	**am not**	(I**'m not**)		
he she it	**is not**	(he**'s not** (she**'s not** (it**'s not**	*or* *or* *or*	he **isn't**) she **isn't**) it **isn't**)
we you they	**are not**	(we**'re not** (you**'re not** (they**'re not**	*or* *or* *or*	we **aren't**) you **aren't**) they **aren't**)
		short forms		

- ☐ I**'m** cold. Can you close the window, please?
- ☐ I**'m** 32 years old. My sister **is** 29.
- ☐ Steve **is** ill. He**'s** in bed.
- ☐ My brother **is** scared of dogs.
- ☐ It**'s** ten o'clock. You**'re** late again.
- ☐ Ann and I **are** good friends.
- ☐ Your keys **are** on the table.

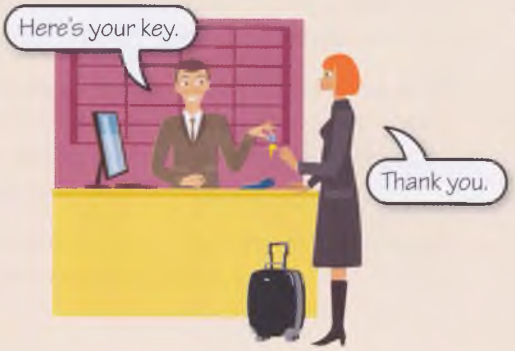
- ☐ I**'m** tired, but I**'m not** hungry.
- ☐ Lisa **isn't** interested in politics. She**'s** interested in art.
- ☐ James **isn't** a teacher. He**'s** a student.
- ☐ Those people **aren't** English. They**'re** Australian.
- ☐ It**'s** sunny today, but it **isn't** warm.


I'm scared of dogs.
Woof !!!!

C

that**'s** = that **is** there**'s** = there **is** here**'s** = here **is**

- ☐ Thank you. That**'s** very kind of you.
- ☐ Look! There**'s** Chris.
- ☐ 'Here**'s** your key.' 'Thank you.'


Here's your key.
Thank you.

am/is/are (questions) ➔ Unit 2 there is/are ➔ Unit 37 a/an ➔ Unit 65 short forms ➔ Appendix 4

Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (**she's / we aren't** etc.).

1 she is she's
2 they are ……
3 it is not ……
4 that is ……
5 I am not ……
6 you are not ……

1.2 Write **am, is** or **are**.

1 The weather is nice today.
2 I …… not rich.
3 This bag …… heavy.
4 These bags …… heavy.
5 Look! There …… Helen.
6 My brother and I …… good tennis players.
7 Emily …… at home. Her children …… at school.
8 I …… a taxi driver. My sister …… a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

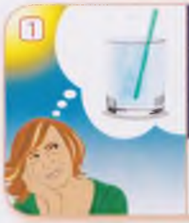
1 Steve is ill. He's in bed.
2 I'm not hungry, but …… thirsty.
3 Mr Thomas is a very old man. …… 98.
4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but …… comfortable.
5 The weather is nice today. …… warm and sunny.
6 '…… late.' 'No, I'm not. I'm early!'
7 Catherine isn't at home. …… at work.
8 '…… your coat.' 'Oh, thank you very much.'

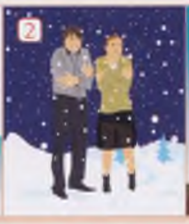
1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

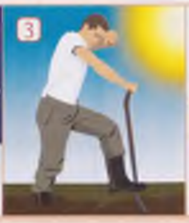
1 (name?) My ……
2 (age?) I ……
3 (from?) I ……
4 (job?) I ……
5 (favourite colour or colours?) My ……
6 (interested in … ?) I ……

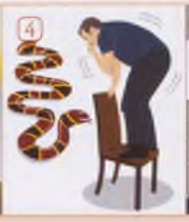
1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

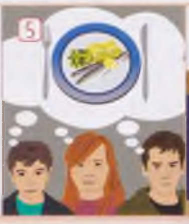
angry **cold** **hot** **hungry** **scared** ~~**thirsty**~~

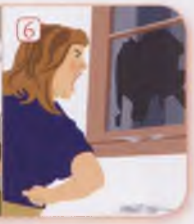












1 She's thirsty.
2 They ……
3 He ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use **is/isn't** or **are/aren't**.

1 (it / hot today) It isn't hot today. or It's hot today.
2 (it / windy today) It ……
3 (my hands / cold) My ……
4 (Brazil / a very big country) ……
5 (diamonds / cheap) ……
6 (Toronto / in the US) ……

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use **I'm / I'm not**.

7 (tired) I'm tired. or I'm not tired.
8 (hungry) I ……
9 (a good swimmer) ……
10 (interested in football) ……

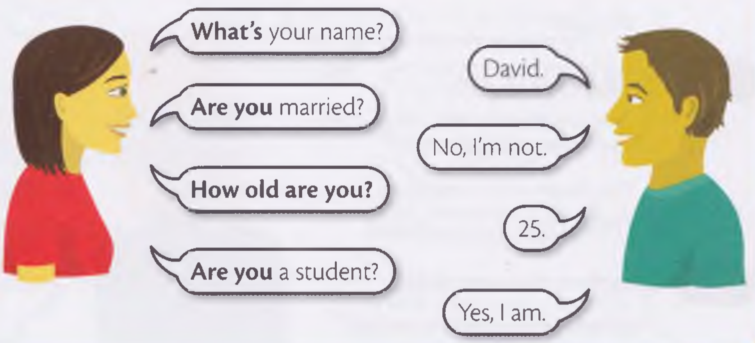
→ **Additional exercise 1** (page 252)

Unit
2

am/is/are (questions)

A

positive		*question*	
I	**am**	**am**	I?
he she it	**is**	**is**	he? she? it?
we you they	**are**	**are**	we? you? they?


What's your name?
David.
Are you married?
No, I'm not.
How old are you?
25.
Are you a student?
Yes, I am.

○ '**Am I** late?' 'No, **you're** on time.'
○ '**Is your mother** at home?' 'No, **she's** out.'
○ '**Are your parents** at home?' 'No, **they're** out.'
○ '**Is it** cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
○ **Your shoes are** nice. **Are they** new?

We say:
○ **Is she** at home? / **Is your mother** at home? (*not* Is at home your mother?)
○ **Are they** new? / **Are your shoes** new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

B

Where ... **?** / **What** ... **?** / **Who** ... **?** / **How** ... **?** / **Why** ... **?**

○ **Where is** your mother? Is she at home?
○ '**Where are** you from?' 'Canada.'
○ '**What colour is** your car?' 'It's red.'
○ '**How old is** Joe?' 'He's 24.'
○ **How are** your parents? Are they well?
○ These shoes are nice. **How much are** they?
○ This hotel isn't very good. **Why is** it so expensive?

what**'s** = what **is** who**'s** = who **is** how**'s** = how **is** where**'s** = where **is**
○ **What's** the time?
○ **Where's** Lucy?
○ **Who's** that man?
○ **How's** your father?

C

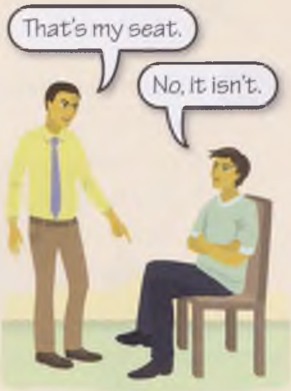
Short answers

Yes,	I	**am**.
	he she it	**is**.
	we you they	**are**.

No,	I**'m**	**not**.
	he**'s** she**'s** it**'s**	
	we**'re** you**'re** they**'re**	

or

No,	he she it	**isn't**.
	we you they	**aren't**.


That's my seat.
No, it isn't.

○ '**Are you** tired?' '**Yes, I am.**'
○ '**Are you** hungry?' '**No, I'm not**, but I'm thirsty.'
○ '**Is your friend** English?' '**Yes, he is.**'
○ '**Are** these **your keys?**' '**Yes, they are.**'
○ '**That's** my seat.' '**No, it isn't.**'

am/is/are ➔ **Unit 1** questions ➔ **Unit 44** **what/which/how** ➔ **Unit 47**

Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

1 Where's the camera?
2 Is your car blue?
3 Is Kate from London?
4 Am I late?
5 Where's Amy from?
6 What colour is your bag?
7 Are you hungry?
8 How is George?
9 Who's that woman?

A London.
B No, I'm not.
C Yes, you are.
D My sister.
E Black.
F No, it's black.
G In your bag.
H No, she's American.
I Very well.

1 G
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……
8 ……
9 ……

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1 (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home ?
2 (your parents / are / well) Are your parents well ?
3 (interesting / is / your job) ……?
4 (the shops / are / open today) ……?
5 (from / where / you / are) ……?
6 (interested in sport / you / are) ……?
7 (is / near here / the station) ……?
8 (at school / are / your children) ……?
9 (you / are / late / why) ……?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use **What … / Who … / Where … / How … .**

1	How are your parents?	They're very well.
2	…… the bus stop?	At the end of the street.
3	…… your children?	Five, six and ten.
4	…… these oranges?	£1.50 a kilo.
5	…… your favourite sport?	Skiing.
6	…… the man in this photo?	That's my father.
7	…… your new shoes?	Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

1	(name?) What's your name?	Paul.
2	(American?) ……	No, I'm Australian.
3	(how old?) ……	I'm 30.
4	(a teacher?) ……	No, I'm a lawyer.
5	(married?) ……	Yes, I am.
6	(wife a lawyer?) ……	No, she's a designer.
7	(from?) ……	She's Italian.
8	(her name?) ……	Anna.
9	(how old?) ……	She's 27.

2.5 Write short answers (**Yes, I am. / No, he isn't.** etc.).

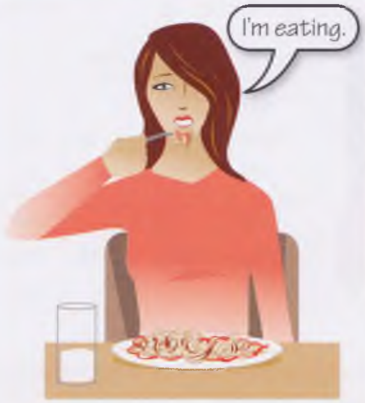
1 Are you married? No, I'm not.
2 Are you thirsty? ……
3 Is it cold today? ……
4 Are your hands cold? ……
5 Is it dark now? ……
6 Are you a teacher? ……

→ **Additional exercises 1–2** (pages 252–53)

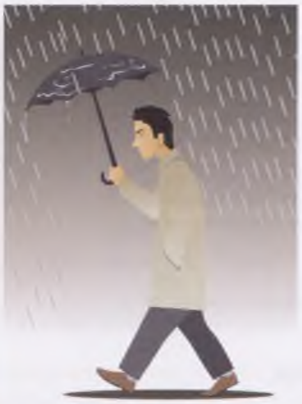
Unit 3

I am doing (present continuous)

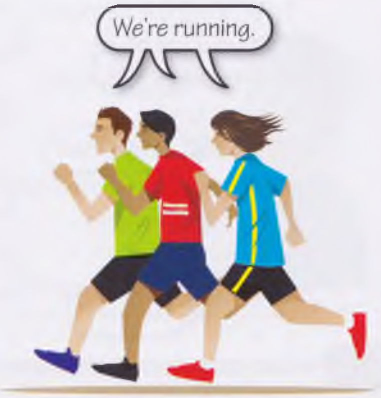
A



She**'s eating**.
She **isn't reading**.



It**'s raining**.
The sun **isn't shining**.


We're running.

They**'re running**.
They **aren't walking**.

The present continuous is:
am/**is**/**are** + do**ing**/eat**ing**/runn**ing**/writ**ing** etc.

I	**am** (not)	**-ing**
he she it	**is** (not)	
we you they	**are** (not)	

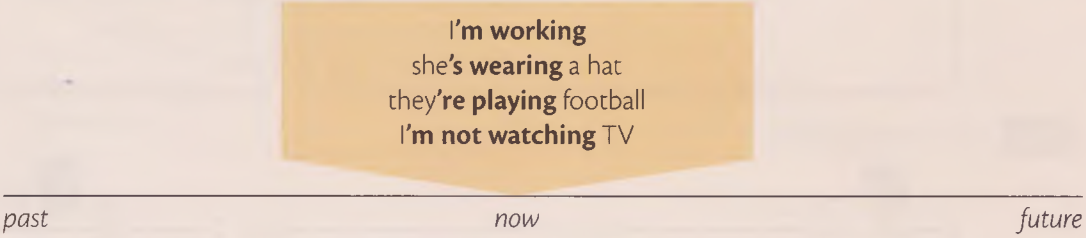
○ I**'m working**. I**'m not watching** TV.

○ Maria **is reading** a newspaper.
○ She **isn't eating**. (*or* She**'s not eating**.)
○ The bus **is coming**.

○ We**'re having** dinner.
○ You**'re not listening** to me. (*or* You **aren't listening** ...)
○ The children **are doing** their homework.

B

am/**is**/**are** + **-ing** = something is happening *now*:



I**'m working**
she**'s wearing** a hat
they**'re playing** football
I**'m not watching** TV

○ Please be quiet. I**'m working**. (= I'm working now)
○ Look, there's Sarah. She**'s wearing** a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
○ The weather is nice. It**'s not raining**.
○ 'Where are the children?' 'They**'re playing** in the park.'
○ *(on the phone)* We**'re having** dinner now. Can I call you later?
○ You can turn off the television. I**'m not watching** it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

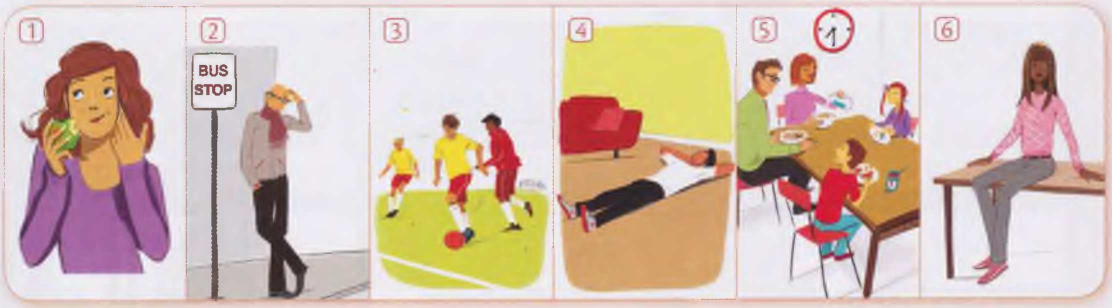
com**e** → com**ing** writ**e** → writ**ing** danc**e** → danc**ing**
ru**n** → ru**nn**ing si**t** → si**tt**ing swi**m** → swi**mm**ing
l**ie** → l**y**ing

am/is/are → **Unit 1** **are you doing?** (questions) → **Unit 4** **I am doing** and **I do** → **Unit 8**
What are you doing tomorrow? → **Unit 25**

Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

~~eat~~ have lie play sit wait



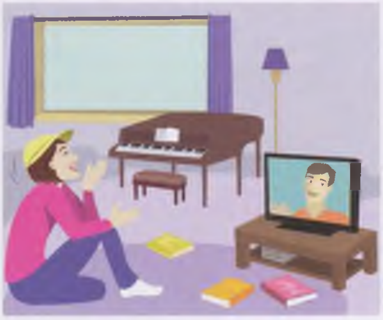
1 ……She's eating…… an apple.
2 He …………………… for a bus.
3 They …………………… football.
4 …………………… on the floor.
5 …………………… breakfast.
6 …………………… on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build cook go have stand stay swim ~~work~~

1 Please be quiet. I ……'m working…… .
2 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He …………………… .'
3 'You …………………… on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
4 Look! Somebody …………………… in the river.
5 We're here on holiday. We …………………… at the Central Hotel.
6 'Where's Sue?' 'She …………………… a shower.'
7 They …………………… a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
8 I …………………… now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use **She's -ing** or **She isn't -ing**.



1 (have dinner) ……Jane isn't having dinner.……
2 (watch TV) ……She's watching TV.……
3 (sit on the floor) She ……………………
4 (read a book) ……………………
5 (play the piano) ……………………
6 (laugh) ……………………
7 (wear a hat) ……………………
8 (drink coffee) ……………………

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1 (I / wash / my hair) ……I'm not washing my hair.……
2 (it / snow) ……It's snowing.…… or ……It isn't snowing.……
3 (I / sit / on a chair) ……………………
4 (I / eat) ……………………
5 (it / rain) ……………………
6 (I / learn / English) ……………………
7 (I / listen / to music) ……………………
8 (the sun / shine) ……………………
9 (I / wear / shoes) ……………………
10 (I / read / a newspaper) ……………………

Unit
4

are you doing?
(present continuous questions)

A

positive

I	**am**	**doing** **working** **going** **staying** etc.
he she it	**is**	
we you they	**are**	

question

am	I	**doing** **working** **going** **staying** etc.
is	he she it	
are	we you they	

What are you doing?

- ☐ '**Are** you **feeling** OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
- ☐ '**Is** it **raining**?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- ☐ Why **are** you **wearing** a coat? It's not cold.
- ☐ 'What**'s** Paul **doing**?' 'He**'s studying** for his exams.'
- ☐ 'What **are** the children **doing**?' 'They**'re watching** TV.'
- ☐ Look, there's Emily! Where**'s** she **going**?
- ☐ Who **are** you **waiting** for? **Are** you **waiting** for Sue?

B

Study the word order:

is/are + *subject* + **-ing**

	Is	he	**working** today?
	Is	Ben	**working** today? (*not* Is working Ben today?)
Where	**are**	they	**going**?
Where	**are**	those people	**going**? (*not* Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am**.
	he she it	**is**.
	we you they	**are**.

No,	I**'m**	**not**.
	he**'s** she**'s** it**'s**	
	we**'re** you**'re** they**'re**	

or

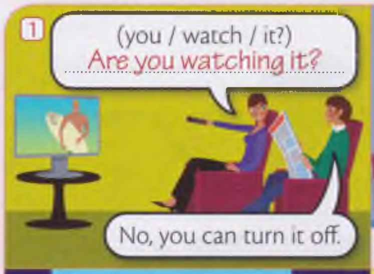
No,	he she it	**isn't**.
	we you they	**aren't**.

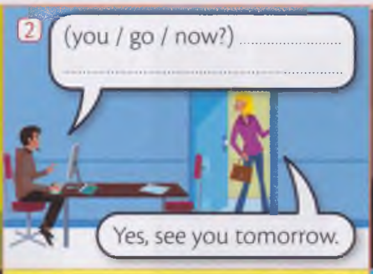
- ☐ '**Are** you **going** now?' '**Yes, I am.**'
- ☐ '**Is** Ben **working** today?' '**Yes, he is.**'
- ☐ '**Is** it **raining**?' '**No, it isn't.**'
- ☐ '**Are** your friends **staying** at a hotel?' '**No, they aren't.** They're staying with me.'

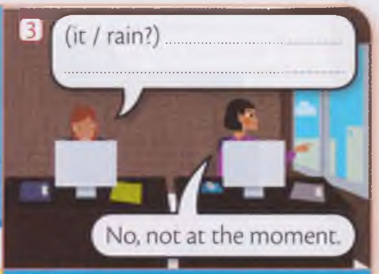
I am doing ➜ Unit 3 **What are you doing tomorrow?** ➜ Unit 25 questions ➜ Units 44–47

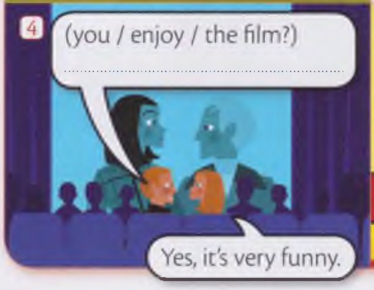
Exercises

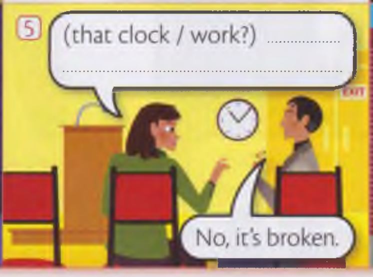
4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

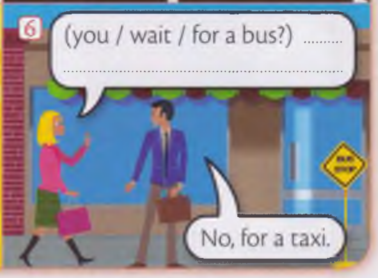

1
(you / watch / it?)
Are you watching it?
No, you can turn it off.


2
(you / go / now?)
Yes, see you tomorrow.


3
(it / rain?)
No, not at the moment.

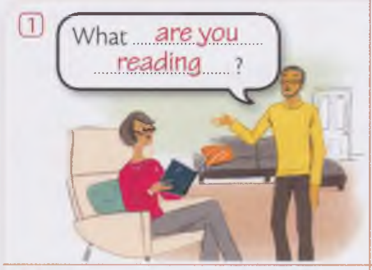

4
(you / enjoy / the film?)
Yes, it's very funny.

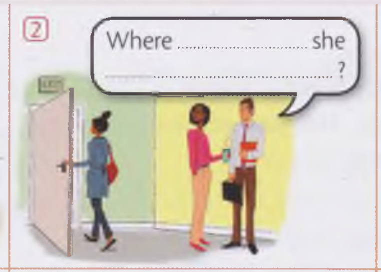

5
(that clock / work?)
EXIT
No, it's broken.

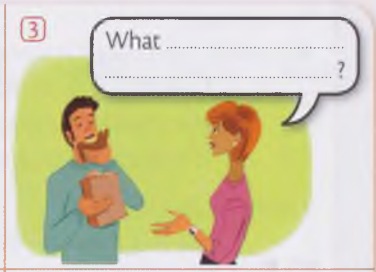

6
(you / wait / for a bus?)
No, for a taxi.

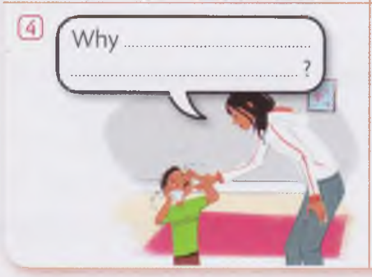
4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

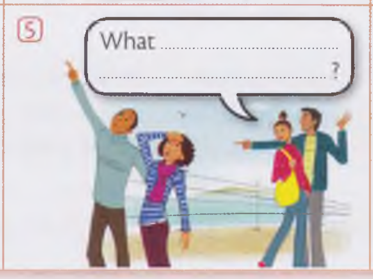
cry eat go laugh look at ~~read~~

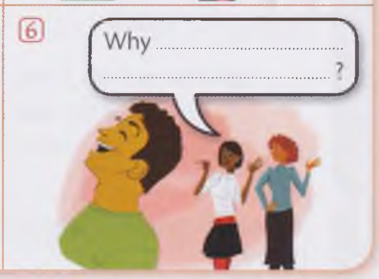

1
What are you reading ?











4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1 (is / working / Ben / today) Is Ben working today ?
2 (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing ?
3 (you / are / listening / to me) ?
4 (where / your friends / are / going) ?
5 (are / watching / your parents / TV) ?
6 (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ?
7 (why / you / are / looking / at me) ?
8 (is / coming / the bus) ?

4.4 Write short answers (**Yes, I am.** / **No, he isn't.** etc.).

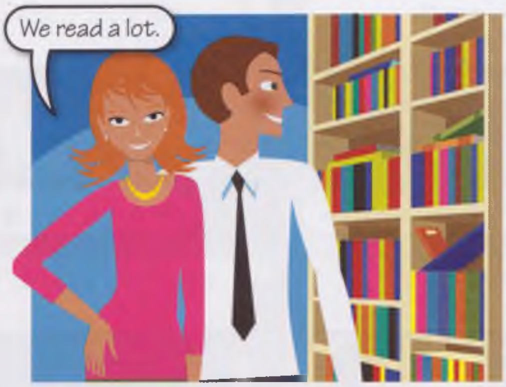
1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
2 Are you wearing a watch?
3 Are you eating something?
4 Is it raining?
5 Are you sitting on the floor?
6 Are you feeling well?

→ **Additional exercise 3** (page 253)

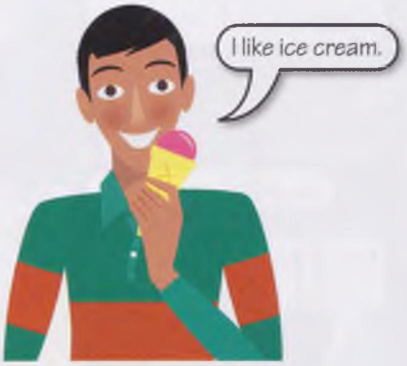
Unit
5

I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

A


We read a lot.

They have a lot of books.
They **read** a lot.


I like ice cream.

He's eating an ice cream.
He **likes** ice cream.

They **read** / he **likes** / I **work** etc. = the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they	**read**	**like**	**work**	**live**	**watch**	**do**	**have**
he/she/it	**reads**	**likes**	**works**	**lives**	**watches**	**does**	**has**

Remember:
he works / **she** lives / **it** rains etc.

○ **I work** in a shop. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
○ **Lucy lives** in London. **Her parents live** in Scotland.
○ **It rains** a lot in winter.

I **have** → he/she/it **has**:

○ **Joe has** a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

-es after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch**:	pass → pass**es**	finish → finish**es**	watch → watch**es**
-y → **-ies**:	study → stud**ies**	try → tr**ies**	
also:	do → do**es**	go → go**es**	

B

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

○ I **like** big cities.
○ Your English is good. You **speak** very well.
○ Tom **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.
○ The earth **goes** round the sun.
○ We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
○ It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital.

C

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple

○ Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
○ I **never eat** breakfast. (*not* I eat never)
○ We **often go** away at weekends.
○ Mark **usually plays** football on Sundays.
○ I **sometimes walk** to work, but not very often.

I don't ... (negative) ➔ Unit 6 **Do you** ... ? (questions) ➔ Unit 7 **I am doing** and **I do** ➔ Unit 8
always/usually/often etc. (word order) ➔ Unit 94

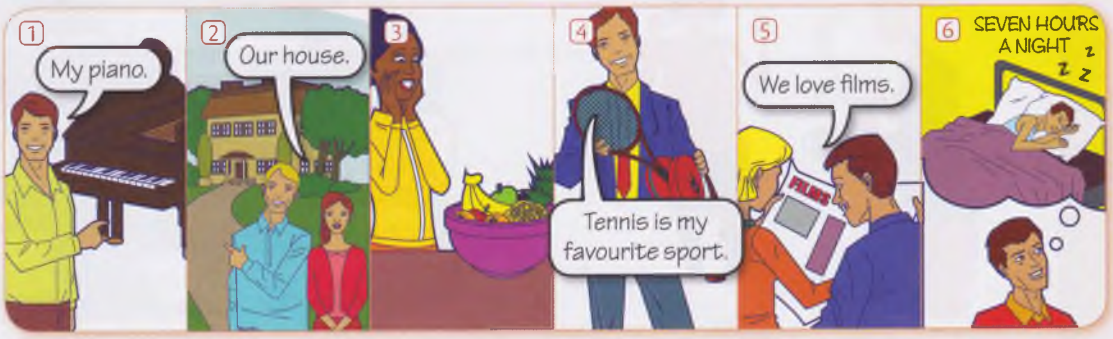
Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.

1 (read) she ~~~~reads~~~~.........
2 (think) he ....
3 (fly) it ....
4 (dance) he ....
5 (have) she ....
6 (finish) it ....

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

eat go live ~~play~~ play sleep



1 ....He plays............ the piano.
2 They .... in a very big house.
3 .... a lot of fruit.
4 .... tennis.
5 .... to the cinema a lot.
6 .... seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

boil close cost cost like like meet open ~~speak~~ teach wash

1 Maria ....speaks.... four languages.
2 The shops in the city centre usually .... at 9 o'clock in the morning.
3 The City Museum .... at 5 o'clock in the evening.
4 Tina is a teacher. She .... mathematics to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I .... a lot of people.
6 Peter's car is always dirty. He never .... it.
7 Food is expensive. It .... a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They .... a lot of money.
9 Water .... at 100 degrees Celsius.
10 Laura and I are good friends. I .... her and she .... me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).

1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) ....Sue always arrives early.............
2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I ....
3 (work / Martina / hard / always) ....
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) ....
5 (Jackie / parties / enjoy / always) ....
6 (often / people's names / I / forget) ....
7 (TV / Sam / watch / never) ....
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) ....
9 (Kate / always / nice clothes / wear) ....

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

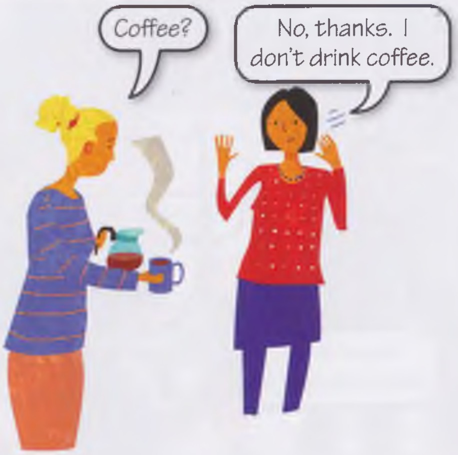
1 (watch TV in the evening) ....I usually watch TV in the evening.............
2 (read in bed) I ....
3 (get up before 7 o'clock) ....
4 (go to work/school by bus) ....
5 (drink coffee in the morning) ....

Unit
6

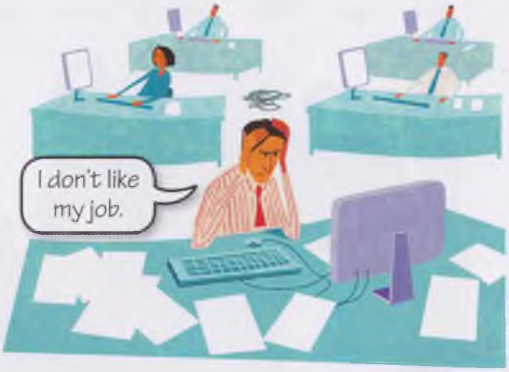
I don't ... (present simple negative)

A

The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't** + *verb*:


Coffee?
No, thanks. I don't drink coffee.

She **doesn't drink** coffee.


I don't like my job.

He **doesn't like** his job.

positive

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

negative

I we you they	**don't** (**do not**)	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**doesn't** (**does not**)	

○ I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
○ Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
○ You **don't work** very hard.
○ We **don't watch** TV very often.
○ The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
○ Sam and Chris **don't know** many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they	**don't** ...
he/she/it	**doesn't** ...

○ **I don't** like football.
○ **He doesn't** like football.

○ **I don't** like Fred and **Fred doesn't** like me. (*not* Fred don't like)
○ **My car doesn't** use much petrol. (*not* My car don't use)
○ Sometimes he is late, but **it doesn't** happen very often.

C

We use **don't/doesn't** + *infinitive* (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do** etc.):

○ I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
○ Sarah **speaks** Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
○ David **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not* David doesn't his job)
○ Paula **doesn't** usually **have** breakfast. (*not* doesn't ... has)

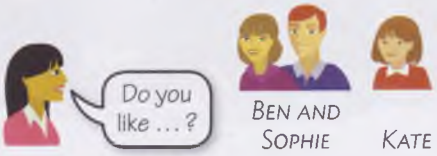
I do/work/like etc. (present simple) ➜ **Unit 5** **Do you** ... ? (present simple questions) ➜ **Unit 7**

Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

1 I play the piano very well. ...... I don't play the piano very well.
2 Anna plays the piano very well. Anna ......
3 They know my phone number. They ......
4 We work very hard. ......
5 He has a bath every day. ......
6 You do the same thing every day. ......

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with **like**.



	Ben and Sophie	Kate	You
1 classical music?	yes	no	**?**
2 boxing?	no	yes	
3 horror movies?	yes	no	

1 ...... Ben and Sophie like classical music.
Kate ......
I ...... classical music.

2 Ben and Sophie ......
Kate ......
I ......

3 ......
......
......

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:

I never ... or **I often ...** or **I don't ... very often.**

1 (watch TV) ...... I don't watch TV very often. or ...... I never watch TV. or
...... I often watch TV.
2 (go to the theatre) ......
3 (ride a bike) ......
4 (eat in restaurants) ......
5 (travel by train) ......

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't** + these verbs:

cost go know ~~rain~~ see use wear

1 The weather here is usually nice. It ...... doesn't rain ...... much.
2 Paul has a car, but he ...... it very often.
3 Paul and his friends like films, but they ...... to the cinema very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she ...... a ring.
5 I ...... much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It ...... much to stay there.
7 Ed lives very near us, but we ...... him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 Margaret ...... speaks ...... four languages – English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2 I ...... don't like ...... my job. It's very boring. (like)
3 'Where's Steve?' 'I'm sorry. I ....' (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She ...... very much. (talk)
5 Andy ...... a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
6 It's not true! I ...... it! (believe)
7 That's a very beautiful picture. I ...... it very much. (like)
8 Mark is a vegetarian. He ...... meat. (eat)

Unit
7

Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

A

We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

positive

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

question

do	I we you they	**work?** **like?** **do?** **have?**
does	he she it	

Do you play the guitar?

B

Study the word order:

do/does + *subject* + *infinitive*

	Do	you	**play**	the guitar?
	Do	your friends	**live**	near here?
	Does	Chris	**work**	on Sundays?
	Does	it	**rain**	a lot here?
Where	**do**	your parents	**live?**	
How often	**do**	you	**wash**	your hair?
What	**does**	this word	**mean?**	
How much	**does**	it	**cost**	to fly to Rome?

Questions with **always** and **usually**:

	Does	Chris	**always**	**work**	on Sundays?
What	**do**	you	**usually**	**do**	at weekends?

What do you **do?** = What's your job?

- '**What do** you **do?**' 'I work in a bank.'

C

Remember:

do I/we/you/they ...
does he/she/it ...

- **Do they** like music?
- **Does he** like music?

D

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they **do.**	
	he/she/it **does.**	

No,	I/we/you/they **don't.**	
	he/she/it **doesn't.**	

- '**Do you** play the guitar?' '**No, I don't.**'
- '**Do your parents** speak English?' '**Yes, they do.**'
- '**Does James** work hard?' '**Yes, he does.**'
- '**Does your sister** live in London?' '**No, she doesn't.**'

I do/work/like etc. (present simple) ➔ **Unit 5** **I don't** ... (negative) ➔ **Unit 6** questions ➔ **Units 44–47**

Exercises

7.1 Write questions with **Do … ?** and **Does … ?**

1 I like chocolate. How about you? *Do you like chocolate* ?
2 I play tennis. How about you? .... you .... ?
3 You live near here. How about Lucy? .... Lucy .... ?
4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? .... ?
5 You speak English. How about your brother? .... ?
6 I do yoga every morning. How about you? .... ?
7 Sue goes away a lot. How about Paul? .... ?
8 I want to be famous. How about you? .... ?
9 You work hard. How about Anna? .... ?

7.2 Make questions from these words + **do/does**. Put the words in the right order.

1 (where / live / your parents) *Where do your parents live* ?
2 (you / early / always / get up) *Do you always get up early* ?
3 (how often / TV / you / watch) .... ?
4 (you / want / what / for dinner) .... ?
5 (like / you / football) .... ?
6 (your brother / like / football) .... ?
7 (what / you / do / in your free time) .... ?
8 (your sister / work / where) .... ?
9 (breakfast / always / you / have) .... ?
10 (what / mean / this word) .... ?
11 (in winter / snow / it / here) .... ?
12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)
.... ?
13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost)
.... ?
14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)
.... ?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ **do** **enjoy** **go** **like** **start** **teach** **work**

1	What *do you do* ?	I work in a bookshop.
2	.... it?	It's OK.
3	What time .... in the morning?	At 9 o'clock.
4	.... on Saturdays?	Sometimes.
5	How .... to work?	Usually by bus.
6	And your husband. What .... ?	He's a teacher.
7	What .... ?	Science.
8	.... his job?	Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (**Yes, he does. / No, I don't.** etc.).

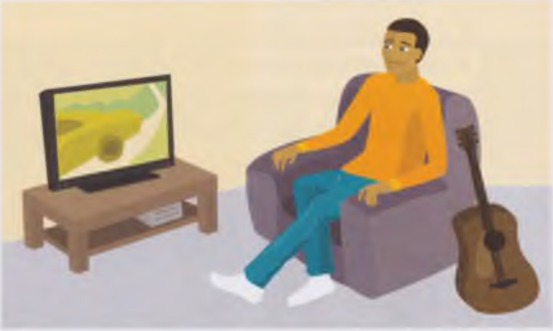
1 Do you watch TV a lot? *No, I don't.* or *Yes, I do.*
2 Do you live in a big city? ....
3 Do you often ride a bike? ....
4 Does it rain a lot where you live? ....
5 Do you play the piano? ....

→ **Additional exercises 4–7** (pages 253–54)

Unit
8

I am doing (present continuous) **and** **I do** (present simple)

A



Jack is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

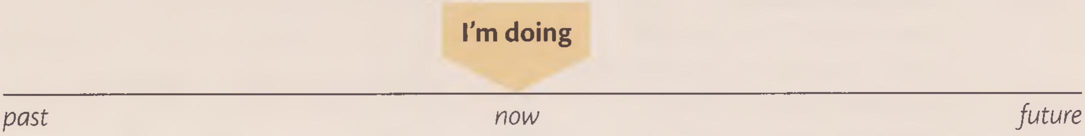
But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack **plays** the guitar,
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? **No, he isn't.** *(present continuous)*
Does he play the guitar? **Yes, he does.** *(present simple)*

B

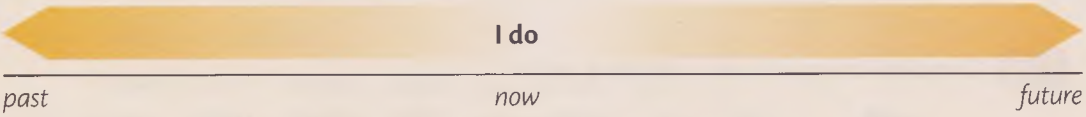
Present continuous (**I am doing**) = now, at the time of speaking:



- ○ Please be quiet. I'**m** work**ing**. (*not* I work)
- ○ Tom **is** hav**ing** a shower at the moment. (*not* Tom has)
- ○ Take an umbrella with you. It'**s** rain**ing**.
- ○ You can turn off the television. I'**m** not watch**ing** it.
- ○ Why are you under the table? What **are** you do**ing**?

C

Present simple (**I do**) = in general, all the time or sometimes:



- ○ I **work** every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
- ○ Tom **has** a shower every morning.
- ○ It **rains** a lot in winter.
- ○ I **don't watch** TV very often.
- ○ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?

D

We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

like	**want**	**know**	**understand**	**remember**
prefer	**need**	**mean**	**believe**	**forget**

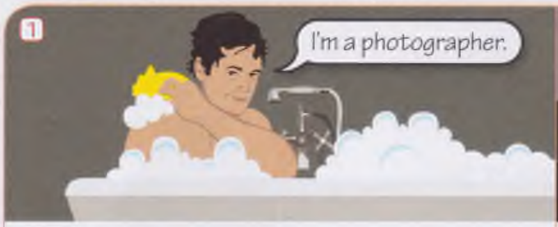
Use only the present simple with these verbs (I **want** / **do you like?** etc.):

- ○ I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
- ○ '**Do** you **know** that girl?' 'Yes, but I **don't remember** her name.'
- ○ I **don't understand**. What **do** you **mean**?

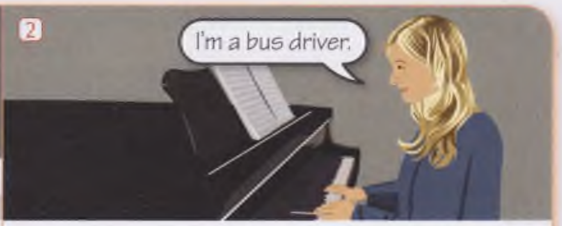
present continuous ➜ **Units 3–4** present simple ➜ **Units 5–7** present for the future ➜ **Unit 25**

Exercises

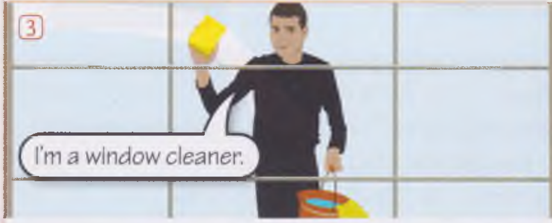
8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1

I'm a photographer.

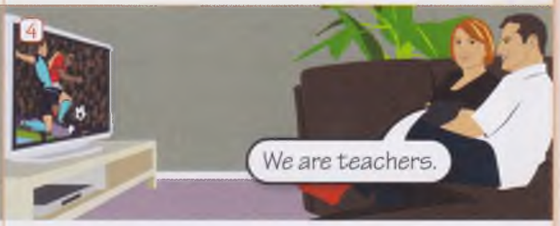
Does he take photographs? *Yes, he does.*
Is he taking a photograph? *No, he isn't.*
What is he doing?
He's having a bath.

2

I'm a bus driver.

Is she driving a bus? ....
Does she drive a bus? ....
What is she doing?
....

3

I'm a window cleaner.

Does he clean windows? ....
Is he cleaning a window? ....
What is he doing?
....

4

We are teachers.

Are they teaching? ....
Do they teach? ....
What do they do?
....

8.2 Complete the sentences with **am/is/are** or **do/don't/does/doesn't**.

1 Excuse me, *do* you speak English?
2 'Where's Kate?' 'I .... know.'
3 What's funny? Why .... you laughing?
4 'What .... your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'
5 It .... raining. I .... want to go out in the rain.
6 'Where .... you come from?' 'Canada.'
7 How much .... it cost to stay at this hotel? Is it expensive?
8 Steve is a good tennis player, but he .... play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (**I am doing**) or the present simple (**I do**).

1 Excuse me, *do you speak* (you/speak) English?
2 'Where's Tom?' '*He's having* (he/have) a shower.'
3 *I don't watch* (I/not/watch) TV very often.
4 Listen! Somebody .... (sing).
5 Sarah is tired. .... (she/want) to go home now.
6 How often .... (you/use) your car? Every day?
7 'Excuse me, but .... (you/sit) in my seat.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
8 I'm sorry, ... (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9 It's late. .... (I/go) home now. ....
(you/come) with me?
10 What time .... (your father / finish) work every day?
11 You can turn off the radio. .... (I/not/listen) to it.
12 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen. .... (he/cook) something.'
13 Mark .... (not/usually/drive) to work. He
.... (usually/walk).
14 Sue .... (not/like) coffee. .... (she/prefer) tea.

→ **Additional exercises 8–9** (page 255)

Unit
9

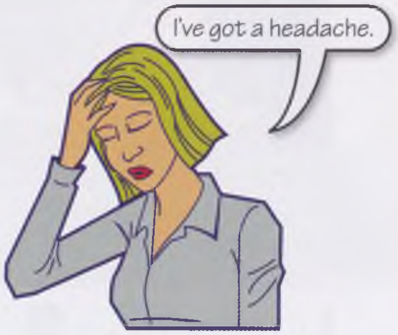
I have ... and I've got ...

A

You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got**:

I we you they	**have**	*or*	I we you they	**have got**	(I'**ve got**) (we'**ve got**) (you'**ve got**) (they'**ve got**)
he she it	**has**	*or*	he she it	**has got**	(he'**s got**) (she'**s got**) (it'**s got**)

short form


I've got a headache.

○ I **have** blue eyes. *or* I'**ve got** blue eyes.
○ Tom **has** two sisters. *or* Tom **has got** two sisters.
○ Our car **has** four doors. *or* Our car **has got** four doors.
○ Sarah isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. *or* She'**s got** a headache.
○ They like animals. They **have** a horse, three dogs and six cats. *or* They'**ve got** a horse ...

B

I **don't have** / I **haven't got** etc. (negative)

You can say:

I/you we/they	**don't**	**have**	*or*	I/you we/they	**haven't**	**got**
he/she it	**doesn't**			he/she it	**hasn't**	

○ I **don't have** a car. *or* I **haven't got** a car.
○ They **don't have** any children. *or* They **haven't got** any children.
○ It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garden. *or* ... it **hasn't got** a garden.
○ Amy **doesn't have** a job at the moment. *or* Amy **hasn't got** a job ...

C

do you **have**? / **have** you **got**? etc. (questions)

You can say:

do	I/you we/they	**have**	*or*	**have**	I/you we/they	**got**
does	he/she it			**has**	he/she it	

○ '**Do** you **have** a camera?' 'No, I **don't**.' *or*
'**Have** you **got** a camera?' 'No, I **haven't**.'

○ '**Does** Helen **have** a car?' 'Yes, she **does**.' *or*
'**Has** Helen **got** a car?' 'Yes, she **has**.'

○ What kind of car **does** she **have**? *or* ... **has** she **got**?

○ How many children **do** they **have**? *or* ... **have** they **got**?

had / **didn't have** (past) ➜ Units 11–12 **have breakfast** / **have a shower** etc. ➜ Unit 58
some and **any** ➜ Unit 76

Exercises

9.1 Write these sentences with **got**. The meaning is the same.

1 They have two children. .... They've got two children.
2 She doesn't have a key. .... She hasn't got a key.
3 He has a new job. He ....
4 Do you have an umbrella? ....
5 We have a lot of work to do. ....
6 I don't have your phone number. ....
7 Does your father have a car? ....
8 How much money do we have? ....

9.2 Write these sentences with **do/does/don't/doesn't**. The meaning is the same.

1 Have you got any money? .... Do you have any money?
2 I haven't got many clothes. I ....
3 Has Tom got a brother? ....
4 How many children have they got? ....
5 Have you got any questions? ....
6 Sam hasn't got a job. ....

9.3 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

1	Have you got a car?	No.
2	Have you got a bike?	Yes.
3	Have you got a dog?	No.
4	Have you got a mobile phone?	Yes.
5	Have you got a watch?	No.
6	Have you got any brothers or sisters?	Yes, two brothers and a sister.

Mark

1 .... He hasn't got a car.
2 He ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

What about you? Write sentences with **I've got** or **I haven't got**.

7 (a dog) ....
8 (a bike) ....
9 (brothers/sisters) ....

9.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have, has, don't have** or **doesn't have**.

1 Sarah ....doesn't have.... a car. She goes everywhere by bike.
2 They like animals. They ....have.... three dogs and two cats.
3 Charles isn't happy. He .... a lot of problems.
4 They are always busy. They .... much free time.
5 'What's wrong?' 'I .... something in my eye.'
6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I .... it.'
7 Amy wants to go to the concert, but she .... a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use **have/has got** or **haven't/hasn't got** with:

six legs **a key** ~~**a headache**~~ **a lot of friends** **a job** **much time**

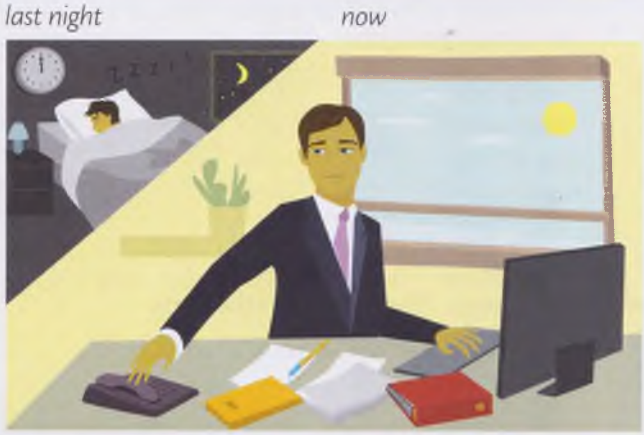
1 I'm not feeling very well. I ....'ve got a headache.
2 Everybody likes Tom. He ....
3 She can't open the door. She ....
4 Quick!. We ....
5 An insect ....
6 I'm unemployed. I ....

→ Additional exercises 5–7 (page 254)

Unit
10

was/were

A



Now Robert **is** at work.

At midnight last night
he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.
He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → **was** (past):

☐ I **am** tired. (now)	I **was** tired **last night**.
☐ Where **is** Kate? (now)	Where **was** Kate **yesterday**?
☐ The weather **is** good today.	The weather **was** good **last week**.

are (present) → **were** (past):

☐ You **are** late. (now)	You **were** late **yesterday**.
☐ They **aren't** here. (now)	They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

B

positive

I he she it	**was**
we you they	**were**

negative

I he she it	**was not** (**wasn't**)
we you they	**were not** (**weren't**)

question

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

☐ Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
☐ When I **was** a child, I **was** scared of dogs.
☐ We **were** hungry after the journey, but we **weren't** tired.
☐ The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.

☐ **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on holiday?
☐ Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
☐ Why **were** you late this morning?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it **was.**
	we/you/they **were.**

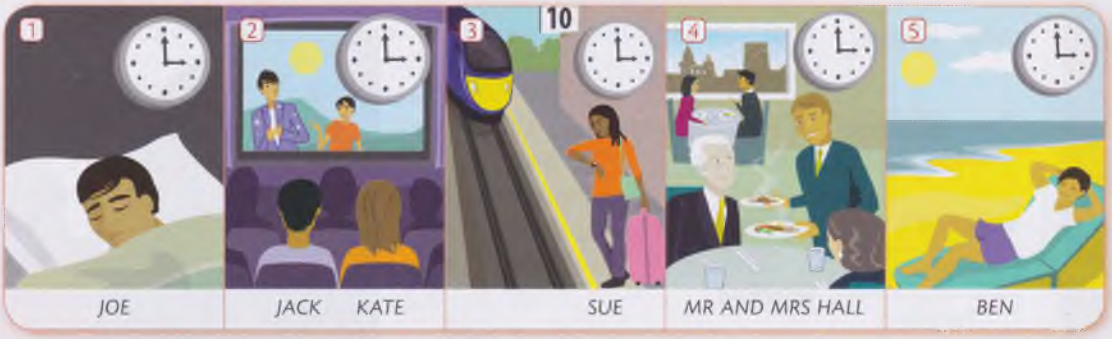
No,	I/he/she/it **wasn't.**
	we/you/they **weren't.**

☐ '**Were you** late?' '**No, I wasn't.**'
☐ '**Was Tom** at work yesterday?' '**Yes, he was.**'
☐ '**Were Sue and Steve** at the party?' '**No, they weren't.**'

am/is/are ➔ Units 1–2 **I was doing** ➔ Unit 13

Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



1 Joe was in bed.
2 Jack and Kate ......
3 Sue ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 And you? I ......

10.2 Write **am/is/are** (present) or **was/were** (past).

1 Last year she ...was... 22, so she ...is... 23 now.
2 Today the weather ...... nice, but yesterday it ...... very cold.
3 I ...... hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning, but I ...... very tired last night.
5 Where ...... you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6 Don't buy those shoes. They ...... very expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. ...... it expensive?
8 This time last year I ...... in Paris.
9 'Where ...... Sam and Joe?' 'I don't know. They ...... here a few minutes ago.'

10.3 Write **was/were** or **wasn't/weren't**.

1 We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room ...was... very small and it ...wasn't... clean.
2 Mark ...... at work last week because he ...... ill. He's better now.
3 Yesterday ...... a public holiday, so the banks ...... closed. They're open today.
4 '...... Kate and Ben at the party?' 'Kate ...... there, but Ben ....'
5 Where are my keys? They ...... on the table, but they're not there now.
6 You ...... at home last night. Where ...... you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + **was/were**. Put the words in the right order.

1 (late / you / this morning / why?)
Why were you late this morning? → The traffic was bad.

2 (difficult / your exam?)
...... → No, it was easy.

3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
...... → They were on holiday.

4 (your new camera / how much?)
...... → A hundred pounds.

5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
...... → Because you were late.

6 (nice / the weather / last week?)
...... → Yes, it was beautiful.

Unit 11

worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

A

They **watch** TV every evening.
(present simple)

They **watched** TV yesterday evening.
(past simple)

watched is the *past simple*:

I/we/you/they	**watched**
he/she/it	

B

The past simple is often **-ed** (*regular verbs*). For example:

work → **worked**
clean → **cleaned**
start → **started**
dance → **danced**
stay → **stayed**
need → **needed**

- ○ I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
- ○ Terry **worked** in a bank from 2005 to 2011.
- ○ Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- ○ We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

tr**y** → tr**ied**
sto**p** → sto**pped**
stud**y** → stud**ied**
pla**n** → pla**nned**
cop**y** → cop**ied**

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The past simple is *not* **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin →	**began**	fall →	**fell**	leave →	**left**	sell →	**sold**
break	**broke**	find	**found**	lose	**lost**	sit	**sat**
bring	**brought**	fly	**flew**	make	**made**	sleep	**slept**
build	**built**	forget	**forgot**	meet	**met**	speak	**spoke**
buy	**bought**	get	**got**	pay	**paid**	stand	**stood**
catch	**caught**	give	**gave**	put	**put**	take	**took**
come	**came**	go	**went**	read	**read** (red)*	tell	**told**
do	**did**	have	**had**	ring	**rang**	think	**thought**
drink	**drank**	hear	**heard**	say	**said**	win	**won**
eat	**ate**	know	**knew**	see	**saw**	write	**wrote**

* *pronounced 'red'*

- ○ I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9 o'clock.
- ○ We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- ○ Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- ○ James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

was/were → **Unit 10** **I didn't / Did you** ... ? (negative and questions) → **Unit 12** **ago** → **Unit 19**

Exercises

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

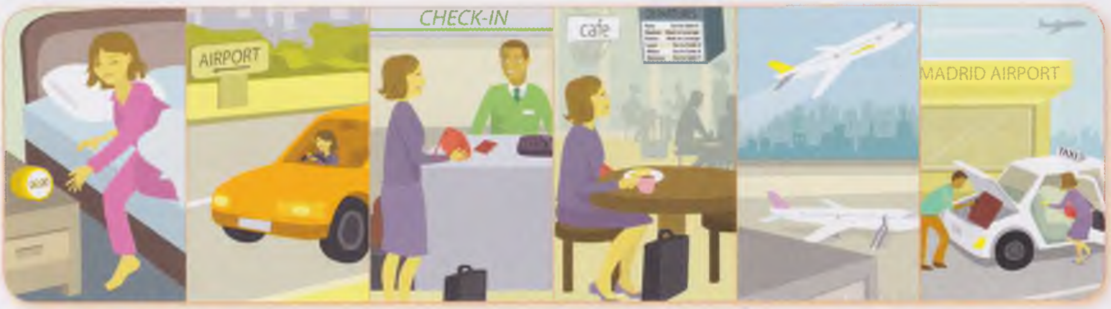
~~clean~~ die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want

1 I ...cleaned... my teeth three times yesterday.
2 It was hot in the room, so I .... the window.
3 The film was very long. It .... at 7.15 and .... at 10 o'clock.
4 When I was a child, I .... to be a doctor.
5 The accident .... last Sunday afternoon.
6 The weather is nice today, but yesterday it .... all day.
7 We .... our holiday last year. We .... at a very nice place.
8 Anna's grandfather .... when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1 get ...got...
2 see ....
3 play ....
4 pay ....
5 visit ....
6 buy ....
7 go ....
8 think ....
9 copy ....
10 know ....
11 put ....
12 speak ....

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Lisa (1) ...flew... from London to Madrid. She (2) .... up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) .... a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) .... home and (5) .... to the airport. When she (6) .... there, she (7) .... the car, (8) .... to the airport building, and (9) .... in. Then she (10) .... breakfast at a cafe and (11) .... for her flight. The plane (12) .... on time and (13) .... in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) .... a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

fly, get
have
leave, drive
get, park, walk
check, have
wait, depart
arrive, take

11.4 Write sentences about the past (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.).

1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday ...he went to work by car....
2 Rachel often loses her keys. She .... last week.
3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She .... yesterday evening.
4 I buy a newspaper every day. Yesterday I ....
5 We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we ....
6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I ....
7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he ....
8 Our friends often come to see us. They .... last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1 ...I went to the theatre....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

→ **Additional exercise 10** (page 256)

Unit
12

I didn't ... Did you ... ?
(past simple negative and questions)

A

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive
play
start
watch
have
see
do
go

positive	
I	**played**
we	**started**
you	**watched**
they	**had**
he	**saw**
she	**did**
it	**went**

negative		
I		play
we		start
you		watch
they	**did not** **(didn't)**	have
he		see
she		do
it		go

question		
	I	play?
	we	start?
	you	watch?
did	they	have?
	he	see?
	she	do?
	it	go?

B

do/**does** (*present*) → **did** (*past*):

- I **don't** watch TV very often.
  I **didn't** watch TV **yesterday**.
- **Does** she often go away?
  Did she go away **last week**?

C

We use **did**/**didn't** + *infinitive* (**watch**/**play**/**go** etc.):

I **watched**	*but*	I **didn't watch**	(*not* I didn't watched)
they **went**		**did** they **go**?	(*not* did they went?)
he **had**		he **didn't have**	
you **did**		**did** you **do**?	

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win**.
- '**Did** you **do** the shopping?' 'No, I **didn't have** time.'
- We **went** to the cinema, but we **didn't enjoy** the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

	did	+ *subject* +	*infinitive*	
	Did	your sister	**call**	you?
What	**did**	you	**do**	last night?
How	**did**	the accident	**happen**?	
Where	**did**	your parents	**go**	for their holiday?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**did**.

No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't**.

- '**Did you** see Joe yesterday?' '**No, I didn't.**'
- '**Did it** rain on Sunday?' '**Yes, it did.**'
- '**Did Helen** come to the party?' '**No, she didn't.**'
- '**Did your parents** have a good holiday?' '**Yes, they did.**'

worked/**got**/**went** etc. (past simple) ➜ Unit 11

Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1 I saw Barbara, but I ...didn't see... Jane.
2 They worked on Monday, but they .... on Tuesday.
3 We went to the post office, but we .... to the bank.
4 She had a pen, but she .... any paper.
5 Jack did French at school, but he .... German.

12.2 Write questions with **Did ... ?**

1 I watched TV last night. How about you? ...Did you watch TV last night...?
2 I enjoyed the party. How about you? ....?
3 I had a good holiday. How about you? ....?
4 I finished work early. How about you? ....?
5 I slept well last night. How about you? ....?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1 (watch TV) ...I watched TV.... or ...I didn't watch TV....
2 (get up before 7 o'clock) I ....
3 (have a shower) ....
4 (buy a magazine) ....
5 (eat meat) ....
6 (go to bed before 10.30) ....

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time ~~stay~~ win

1 A: We went to New York last month.
B: Where ...did you stay...?
A: With some friends.

2 A: I was late for the meeting.
B: What time ....?
A: Half past nine.

3 A: I played tennis this afternoon.
B: ....?
A: No, I lost.

4 A: I had a nice holiday.
B: Good. Where ....?
A: To the mountains.

5 A: We came home by taxi.
B: How much ....?
A: Ten pounds.

6 A: I'm tired this morning.
B: ....?
A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.

7 A: We went to the beach yesterday.
B: ....?
A: Yes, it was great.

8 A: The window is broken.
B: How ....?
A: I don't know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.

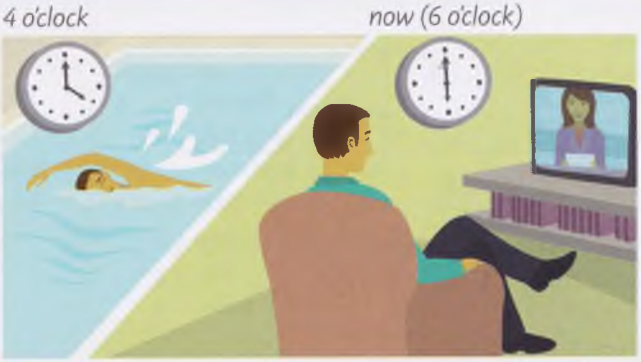
1 We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good. We ...didn't enjoy... it. (enjoy)
2 Tom .... some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
3 '........................ yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)
4 We were tired, so we .... long at the party. (stay)
5 It was very warm in the room, so I .... a window. (open)
6 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No, I .... time.' (have)
7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How .... that?' (do)
8 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?' 'I .... about it.' (know)

→ Additional exercises 10–13 (page 256)

Unit
13

I was doing (past continuous)

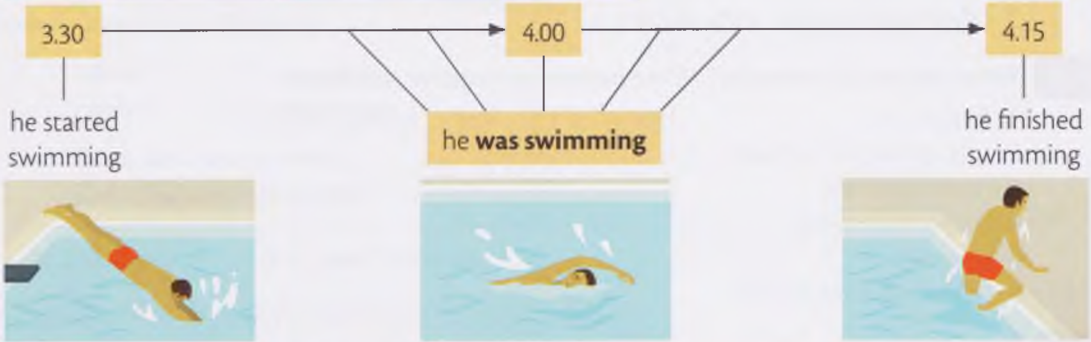
A



It is 6 o'clock now.
Paul **is** at home.
He **is watching** TV.

At 4 o'clock he **wasn't** at home.
He **was** at the sports club.

He **was swimming** in the pool.
He **wasn't watching** TV.



B

was/were + **-ing** is the *past continuous*:

positive

I he she it	**was**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **swimming** **living**
we you they	**were**	etc.

negative

I he she it	**was not** **(wasn't)**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **swimming** **living**
we you they	**were not** **(weren't)**	etc.

question

was	I he she it	**doing?** **watching?** **playing?** **swimming?** **living?**
were	we you they	etc.

○ What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday? **Were** you **working**?
○ 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I **wasn't listening**.'
○ It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.
○ In 2009 we **were living** in Canada.
○ Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** trousers.
○ I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (live → **living** / run → **running** / lie → **lying** etc.) → Appendix 5

C

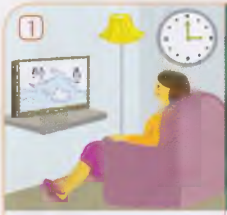
am/is/are + **-ing** (*present*) → **was/were** + **-ing** (*past*):

present	*past*
○ I**'m working** (now).	○ I **was working** at 10.30 last night.
○ It **isn't raining** (now).	○ It **wasn't raining** when we went out.
○ What **are** you **doing** (now)?	○ What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

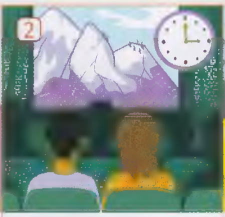
was/were → **Unit 10** **I was doing** and **I did** (past continuous and simple) → **Unit 14**

Exercises

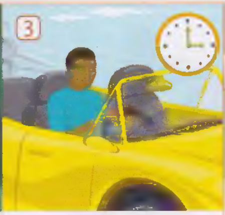
13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



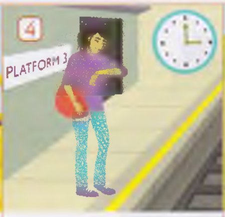
RACHEL
at home
watch TV



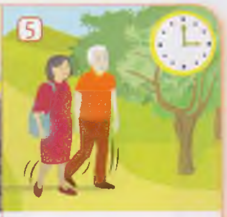
JACK KATE
at the cinema
watch a film



TOM
in his car
drive



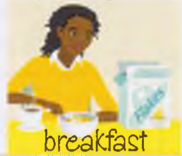
TRACEY
at the station
wait for a train

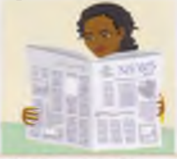


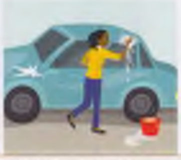
MR AND MRS HALL
in the park
walk

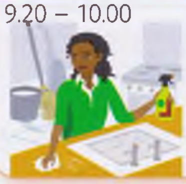
1 Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
2 Jack and Kate .... They ....
3 Tom ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 And you? I ....

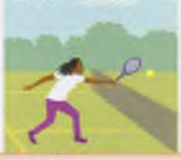
13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

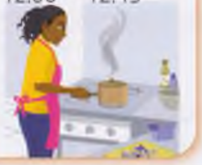
7.10 – 7.25


7.30 – 8.10


8.30 – 9.00


9.20 – 10.00


10.15 – 11.45


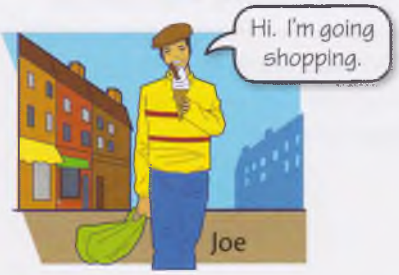
12.00 – 12.45


1 At 8.45 she was washing her car.
2 At 10.45 she ....
3 At 8 o'clock ....
4 At 12.10 ....
5 At 7.15 ....
6 At 9.30 ....

13.3 Complete the questions. Use **was/were -ing.** Use **what/where/why** if necessary.

1 (you/live) Where were you living ...... in 2012?	In London.
2 (you/do) .... at 2 o'clock?	I was asleep.
3 (it/rain) .... when you got up?	No, it was sunny.
4 (Sue/drive) .... so fast?	Because she was late.
5 (Tom/wear) .... a suit yesterday?	No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

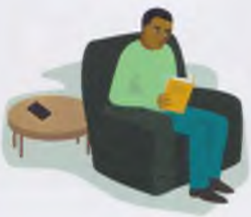


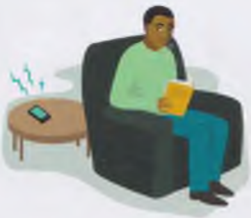
1 (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2 (carry / a bag) ....
3 (go / to the dentist) ....
4 (eat / an ice cream) ....
5 (carry / an umbrella) ....
6 (go / home) ....
7 (wear / a hat) ....
8 (ride / a bicycle) ....

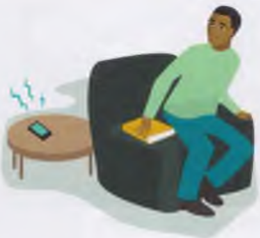
Unit
14

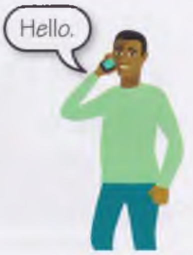
I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

A


Jack was reading a book.


His phone rang.


He stopped reading.



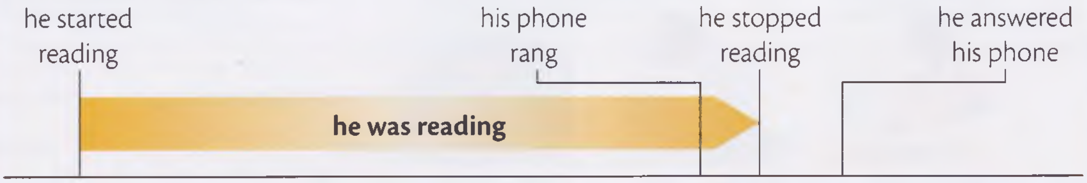
He answered his phone.

What **happened**? His phone **rang**. (*past simple*)

What **was** Jack **doing** when his phone rang?
He **was reading** a book.
} (*past continuous*)

What **did** he **do** when his phone rang?
He **stopped** reading and **answered** his phone.
} (*past simple*)

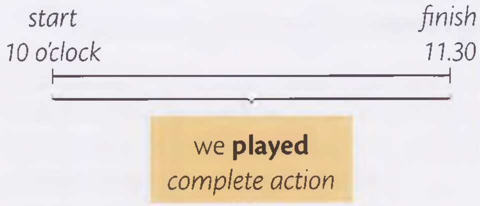
Jack began reading *before* his phone rang.
So *when* his phone rang, he **was reading**.


he started reading
his phone rang
he stopped reading
he answered his phone
he was reading

B

past simple

○ A: What **did** you **do** yesterday morning?
B: We **played** tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)


start
10 o'clock
finish
11.30
we played
complete action

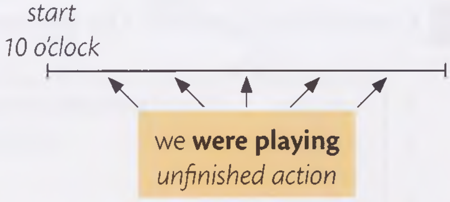
○ Jack **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)

○ **Did** you **watch** the game on TV last night?

○ It **didn't rain** while we were on holiday.

past continuous

○ A: What **were** you **doing** at 10.30?
B: We **were playing** tennis.


start
10 o'clock
we were playing
unfinished action

○ Jack **was reading** a book when his phone rang.

○ **Were** you **watching** TV when I phoned you?

○ It **wasn't raining** when I got up.

○ I **started** work at 9 o'clock and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 I **was working**.

○ It **was raining** when we **went** out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)

○ I **saw** Lucy and Steve this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.

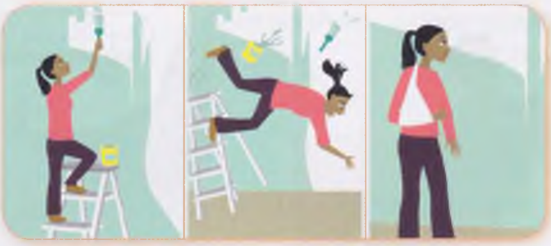
○ Kelly **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.

I did (past simple) ➜ **Units 11–12** **I was doing** (past continuous) ➜ **Unit 13** **while** ➜ **Unit 105**

Exercises

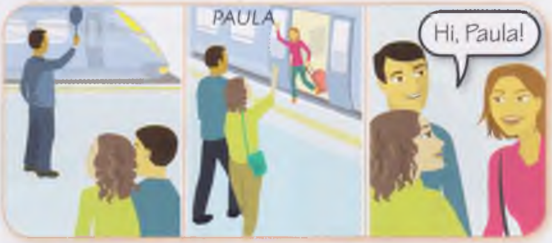
14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1



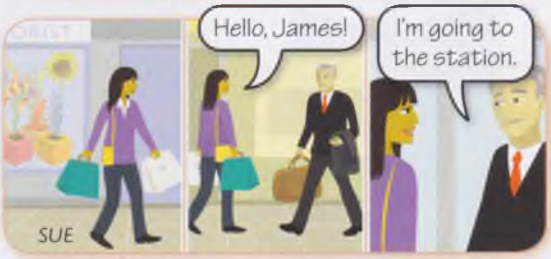
Lucy ....broke.... (break) her arm last week.
It .... (happen) when
she .... (paint) her
room. She .... (fall)
off the ladder.

2



The train .... (arrive)
at the station and Paula ....
(get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel,
.... (wait) to
meet her.

3


SUE
Hello, James!
I'm going to the station.

Yesterday Sue .... (walk)
along the road when she .... (meet)
James. He .... (go)
to the station to catch a train and he
.... (carry) a bag.
They .... (stop) to
talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

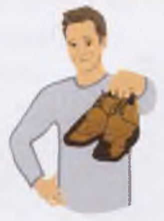
1 A: What was the weather like when you ....got.... (get) up this morning?
B: It ....was raining.... (rain).
2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she .... (study).
3 A: .... (Paul/call) you this morning?
B: Yes, he .... (call) while I .... (have) breakfast.
4 A: Was Tracey at work today?
B: No, she .... (not/go) to work. She was ill.
5 A: How fast .... (you/drive) when the police
.... (stop) you?
B: I'm not sure, but I .... (not/drive) very fast.
6 A: .... (your team / win) the football match yesterday?
B: The weather was very bad, so we .... (not/play).
7 A: How .... (you/break) the window?
B: We .... (play) football. I .... (kick) the ball and
it .... (hit) the window.
8 A: .... (you/see) Jessica last night?
B: Yes, she .... (wear) a very nice jacket.
9 A: What .... (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
B: I was asleep.
10 A: I .... (lose) my key last night.
B: How .... (you/get) into your room?
A: I .... (climb) in through a window.

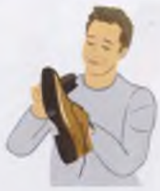
→ **Additional exercises 14–15** (pages 257–58)

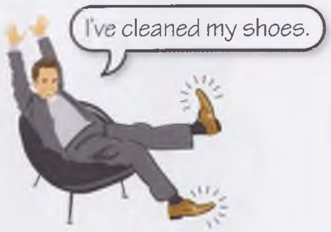
Unit
15

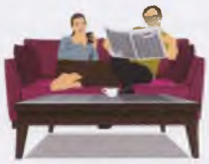
I have done (present perfect 1)

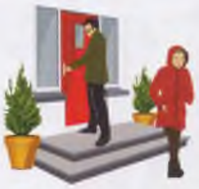
A

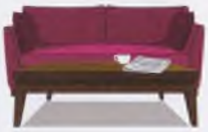

His shoes are dirty.


He is cleaning his shoes.


I've cleaned my shoes.
He **has cleaned** his shoes.
(= his shoes are clean *now*)


They are at home.


They are going out.


They **have gone** out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

has cleaned / **have gone** etc. is the *present perfect* (**have** + *past participle*):

I we you they	**have** (**'ve**) **have not** (**haven't**)	**cleaned** **finished** **started** **lost** **done** **been** **gone**
he she it	**has** (**'s**) **has not** (**hasn't**)	

↑
past participle

have	I we you they	**cleaned?** **finished?** **started?** **lost?** **done?** **been?** **gone?**
has	he she it	

regular verbs (cleaned? finished? started?)
irregular verbs (lost? done? been? gone?)

Regular verbs The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the past simple):

clean → I have clean**ed** finish → we have finish**ed** start → she has start**ed**

Irregular verbs The past participle is not **-ed**.
Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

buy → I **bought** / I have **bought** have → he **had** / he has **had**

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

break → I **broke** / I have **broken** see → you **saw** / you have **seen**
fall → it **fell** / it has **fallen** go → they **went** / they have **gone**

C

We use the present perfect for *an action in the past* with a result *now*:

☐ **I've lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
☐ 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She**'s gone** to bed.' (= she is in bed *now*)
☐ We**'ve bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
☐ It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I **haven't bought** her a present. (= I don't have a present for her *now*)
☐ 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where **has** he **gone**?' (= where is he *now*?)
☐ Can I take this newspaper? **Have** you **finished** with it? (= do you need it *now*?)

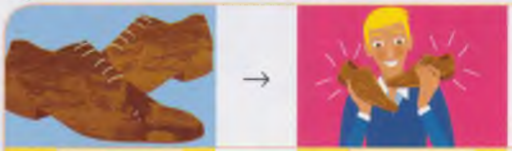
present perfect ➜ **Units 16–19** present perfect and past simple ➜ **Unit 20**
irregular verbs ➜ **Unit 24, Appendix 2–3**

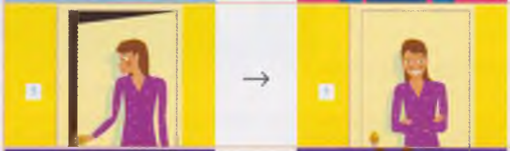
Exercises

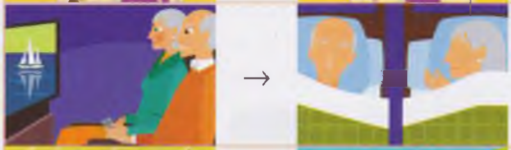
15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

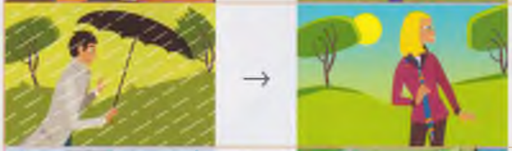
go to bed **~~clean his shoes~~** **stop raining**
close the door **fall down** **have a shower**

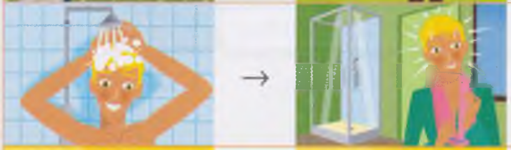
before *now*

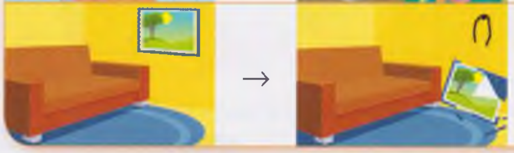
1  He has cleaned his shoes.

2  She ....

3  They ....

4  It ....

5  He ....

6  The ....

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break **buy** **decide** **finish** **forget** **go** **go**
invite **~~lose~~** **see** **not/see** **take** **tell** **not/tell**

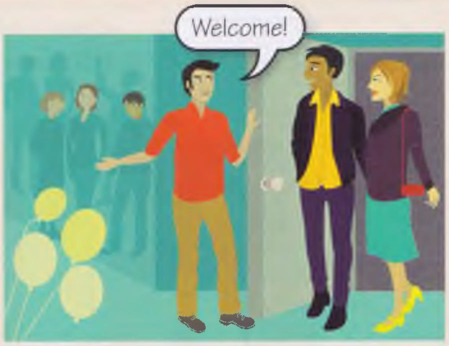
1 I 've lost my keys. I don't know where they are.
2 I .... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3 'Where is Helen?' 'She's not here. She .... out.'
4 I'm looking for Paula. .... you .... her?
5 Look! Somebody .... that window.
6 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I .... her.'
7 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody .... it.
8 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I .... them.'
9 I'm looking for Sarah. Where .... she .... ?
10 I know that woman, but I .... her name.
11 Sue is having a party tonight. She .... a lot of people.
12 What are you going to do? .... you .... ?
13 A: Does Ben know about the meeting tomorrow?
B: I don't think so. I .... him.
14 I .... with this magazine. Do you want it?

Unit
16

I've just … I've already … I haven't … yet (present perfect 2)

A

I've just …



They **have just arrived**.

just = a short time ago

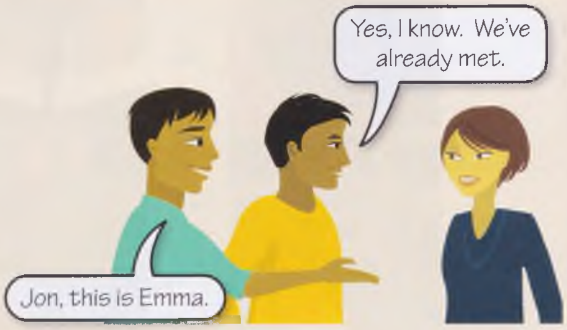
○ A: Are Laura and Paul here?
B: Yes, they**'ve just arrived**.

○ A: Are you hungry?
B: No, I**'ve just had** dinner.

○ A: Is Tom here?
B: No, I'm afraid he**'s just gone**.
(= he **has** just gone)

B

I've already …


Yes, I know. We've already met.
Jon, this is Emma.

already = before you expected / before I expected

○ A: What time are Laura and Paul coming?
B: They**'ve already arrived**.
(= before you expected)

○ It's only 9 o'clock and Anna **has already gone** to bed. (= before I expected)

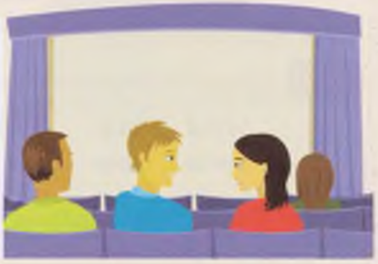
○ A: Jon, this is Emma.
B: Yes, I know. We**'ve already met**.

C

I haven't … yet / Have you … yet?

yet = until now
We use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually at the end.

yet in negative sentences (**I haven't** … **yet**)



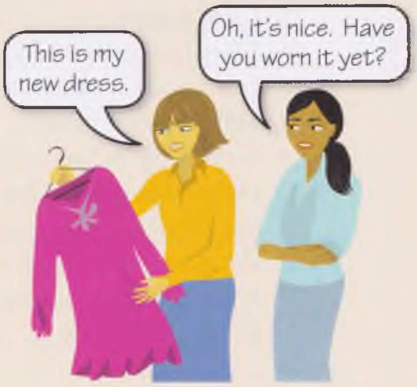
The film **hasn't started yet**.

○ A: Are Laura and Paul here?
B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**.
(but B expects Laura and Paul to arrive soon)

○ A: Does James know that you're going away?
B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet**.
(but B is going to tell him soon)

○ Silvia has bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet**.

yet in questions (**Have** you … **yet**?)


This is my new dress.
Oh, it's nice. Have you worn it yet?

○ A: **Have** Laura and Paul **arrived yet**?
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.

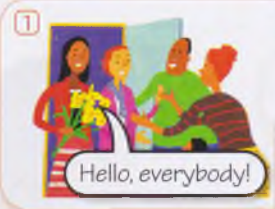
○ A: **Has** Nicola **started** her new job **yet**?
B: No, she starts next week.

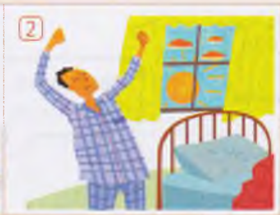
○ A: This is my new dress.
B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn** it **yet**?

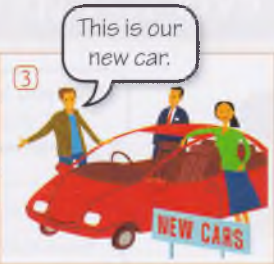
present perfect ➜ Units 15, 17–20 word order ➜ Unit 94 **still**, **yet** and **already** ➜ Unit 95

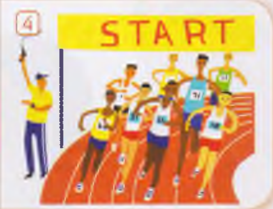
Exercises

16.1 Write a sentence with **just** for each picture.


1
Hello, everybody!




3
This is our new car.
NEW CARS

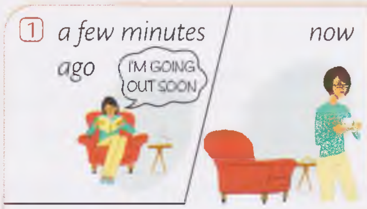


1 They've just arrived.
2 He
3 They
4 The race

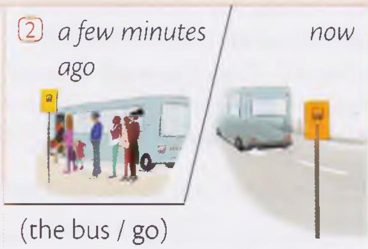
16.2 Complete the sentences. Use **already** + present perfect.

1 What time is Paul arriving? — He's already arrived.
2 Do your friends want to see the film? — No, they .... it.
3 Don't forget to phone Tom. — I ....
4 When is Mark going away? — He ....
5 Do you want to read the newspaper? — I ....
6 When does Sarah start her new job? — She ....

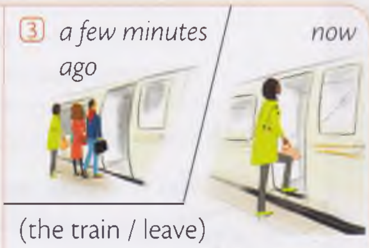
16.3 Write a sentence with **just** (**They've just ...** / **She's just ...** etc.) or a negative sentence with **yet** (**They haven't ... yet** / **She hasn't ... yet** etc.).


1
a few minutes ago
I'M GOING OUT SOON
now

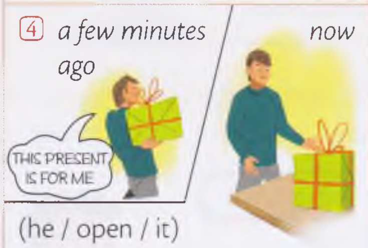
(she / go / out)
She hasn't gone out yet.


2
a few minutes ago
now

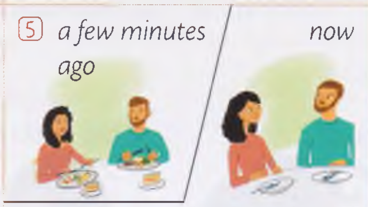
(the bus / go)
The bus


3
a few minutes ago
now

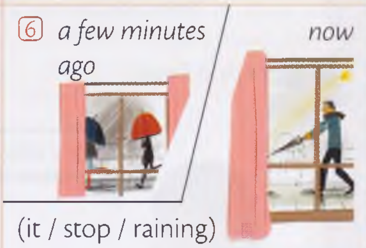
(the train / leave)


4
a few minutes ago
THIS PRESENT IS FOR ME
now

(he / open / it)


5
a few minutes ago
now

(they / finish / their dinner)


6
a few minutes ago
now

(it / stop / raining)

16.4 Write questions with **yet**.

1 Your friend has a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
Have you started your new job yet?

2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
.... you ....

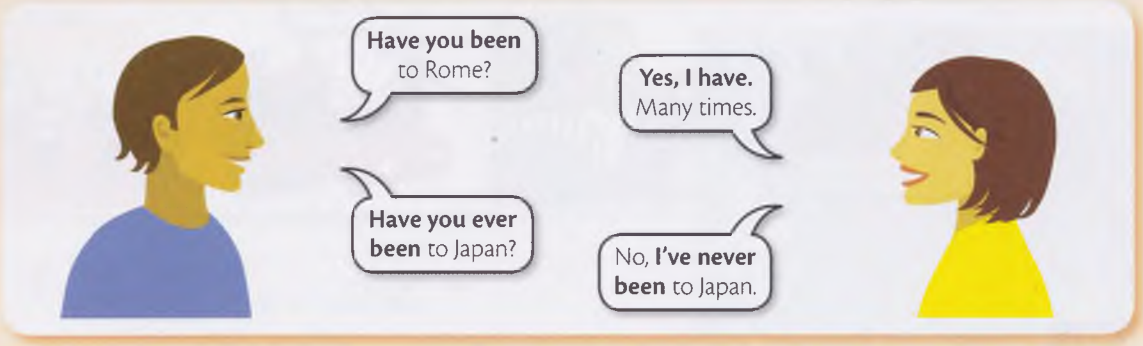
3 Your friend has to pay her electricity bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:

4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:

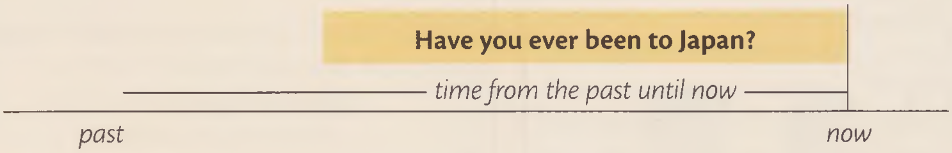
Unit
17

Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

A


Have you been to Rome?
Yes, I have. Many times.
Have you ever been to Japan?
No, I've never been to Japan.

We use the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have had** / **have played** etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:


Have you ever been to Japan?
time from the past until now
past
now

- '**Have** you **been** to France?' 'No, I **haven't**.'
- I'**ve been** to Canada, but I **haven't been** to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- I'**ve seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- '**Have** you **read** this book?' 'Yes, I'**ve read** it twice.' (**twice** = two times)

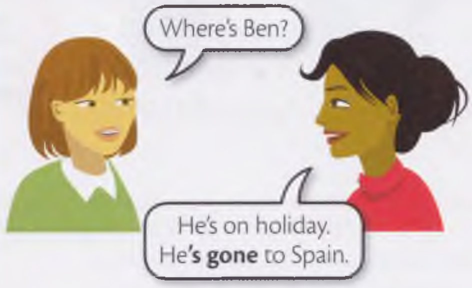
B

present perfect + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:

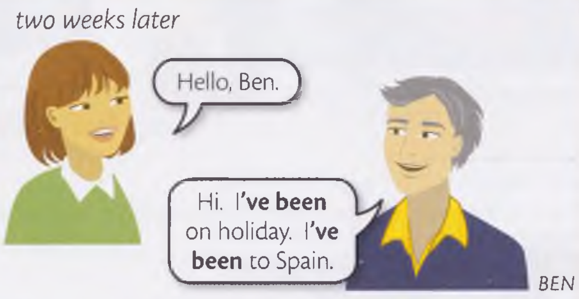
- '**Has** Ann **ever been** to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (**once** = one time)
- '**Have** you **ever played** golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
- My sister **has never travelled** by plane.
- I'**ve never ridden** a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I'**ve never seen** him before.'

C

gone and **been**


Where's Ben?
He's on holiday. He's gone to Spain.

Ben **has gone** to Spain.
(= he is in Spain *now*)


two weeks later
Hello, Ben.
Hi. I've been on holiday. I've been to Spain.
BEN

Ben **has been** to Spain.
(= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where **has** she **gone?** (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where **have** you **been**?

present perfect → **Units 15–16, 18** present perfect and past simple → **Unit 20**

Exercises

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning **Have you ever ... ?** Write the questions.

Helen

1 (be / London?)	Have you ever been to London?	No, never.
2 (play / golf?)	Have you ever played golf?	Yes, many times.
3 (be / Australia?)	Have	Yes, once.
4 (lose / your passport?)	....	No, never.
5 (fly / in a helicopter?)	....	Yes, a few times.
6 (win / a race?)	....	No, never.
7 (be / New York?)	....	Yes, twice.
8 (drive / a bus?)	....	No, never.
9 (break / your leg?)	....	Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (be / New York) She's been to New York twice.
2 (be / Australia) She ....
3 (win / a race) ....
4 (fly / in a helicopter) ....

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (be / New York) I ....
6 (play / tennis) ....
7 (drive / a lorry) ....
8 (be / late for work or school) ....

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary

~~have~~	**be**
do	**write**
travel	**meet**

all over the world	**a lot of interesting things**
~~many different jobs~~	**a lot of interesting people**
ten books	**married three times**

1 She has had many different jobs.
2 She ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

17.4 Write **gone** or **been**.

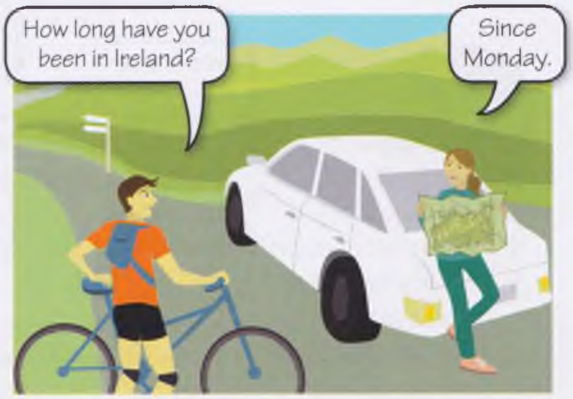
1 Ben is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
2 'Have you ever .... to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
3 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've .... out.
4 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you .... to it?
5 Rebecca loves Paris. She's .... there many times.
6 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's .... now.
7 'Where's Jessica?' 'She's not in the office. I think she's .... home.'
8 Hello, Sue. I was looking for you. Where have you .... ?

→ **Additional exercises 16, 18** (pages 258–60)

Unit
18

How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)

A


How long have you been in Ireland?
Since Monday.

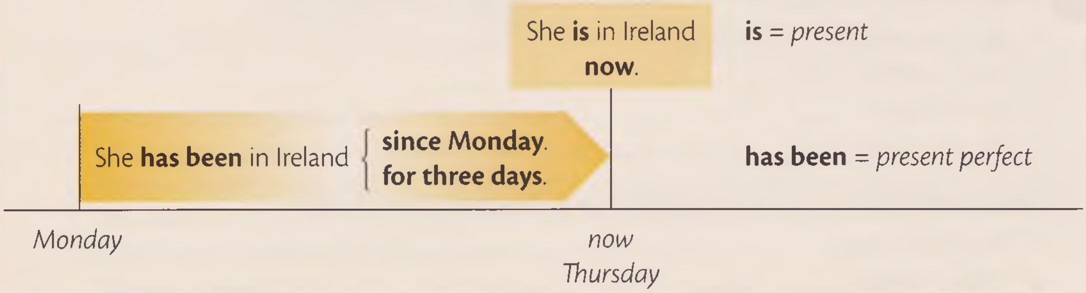
Helen is on holiday in Ireland.
She is there now.

She arrived in Ireland on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in Ireland?

She **has been** in Ireland { **since Monday**. / **for three days**.

Compare **is** and **has been**:


She **is** in Ireland **now**.
is = *present*
She **has been** in Ireland { **since Monday**. **for three days**.
has been = *present perfect*
Monday
now
Thursday

B

Compare:

present simple	*present perfect simple* (**have been** / **have lived** / **have known** etc.)
Dan and Kate **are** married.	They **have been** married **for five years**. (*not* They are married for five years.)
Are you married?	**How long have** you **been** married? (*not* How long are you married?)
Do you **know** Lisa?	**How long have** you **known** her? (*not* How long do you know her?)
I **know** Lisa.	I**'ve known** her **for a long time**. (*not* I know her for ...)
Vicky **lives** in London.	**How long has** she **lived** in London? She **has lived** there **all her life**.
I **have** a car.	**How long have** you **had** your car? I**'ve had** it **since April**.

present continuous	*present perfect continuous* (**have been** + **-ing**)
I**'m learning** German.	**How long have** you **been learning** German? (*not* How long are you learning German?) I**'ve been learning** German **for two years**.
David **is watching** TV.	**How long has** he **been watching** TV? He**'s been** (= He **has been**) **watching** TV **since 5 o'clock**.
It**'s raining**.	It**'s been** (= It **has been**) **raining all day**.

for and **since** ➜ Units 19, 104

Exercises

18.1 Complete these sentences.

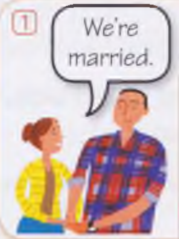
1 Helen is in Ireland. She ...has been... in Ireland since Monday.
2 I know Lisa. I ...have known... her for a long time.
3 Sarah and Andy are married. They .... married since 2005.
4 Ben is ill. He .... ill for the last few days.
5 We live in Scott Road. We .... there for a long time.
6 Catherine works in a bank. She .... there for five years.
7 Alan has a headache. He .... a headache since he got up this morning.
8 I'm learning English. I .... English for six months.

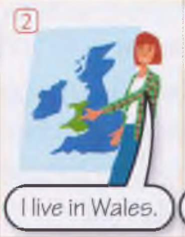
18.2 Make questions with **How long ... ?**

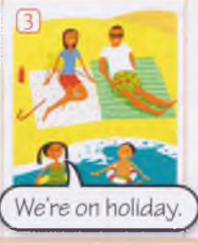
1	Helen is on holiday.	How long has she been on holiday ....?
2	Steve and Nadia are in Brazil.	How long ....?
3	I know Amy.	How long .... you ....?
4	Emily is learning Italian.	....?
5	My brother lives in Canada.	....?
6	I'm a teacher.	....?
7	It is raining.	....?

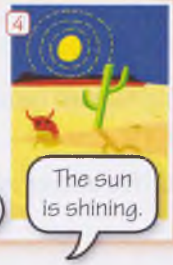
18.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

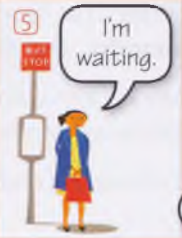
for ten minutes **all day** **all her life**
~~for ten years~~ **since he was 20** **since Sunday**

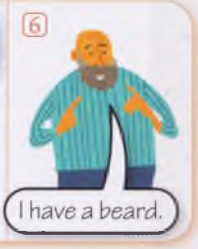












1 ...They have been married for ten years.......................
2 She ....
3 They ....
4 The sun ....
5 She ....
6 He ....

18.4 Which is right?

1 Mark ~~lives~~ / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived *is right*)
2 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting/ have you been waiting?
B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5 Luke works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6 Ruth is reading a newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

Unit
19

for since ago

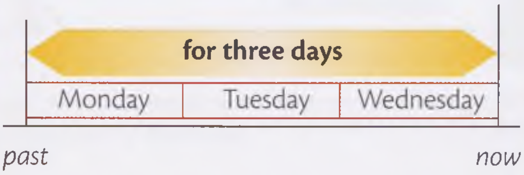
A

for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

- Helen is in Ireland. She **has been** there { **for three days**. / **since Monday**.

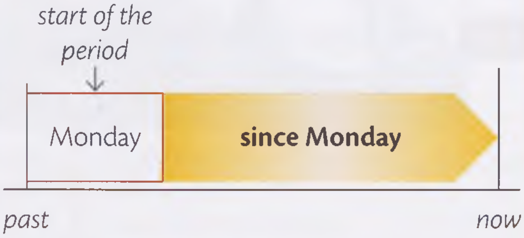
We use **for** + a period of time (**three days** / **two years** etc.):



for	
three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months**. (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours**. (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in London **for a long time**.

We use **since** + the start of the period (**Monday** / **9 o'clock** etc.):



since	
Monday	Wednesday
9 o'clock	12.30
24 July	Christmas
January	I was ten years old
1985	we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **since January**. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock**. (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in London **since I was ten years old**.

B

ago

ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job **three weeks ago**. (= three weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' **'Ten minutes ago.'** (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago**.
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the *past* (**started**/**did**/**had**/**was** etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did** Helen **arrive** in Ireland?
  She **arrived** in Ireland **three days ago**.
- **How long has** she **been** in Ireland?
  She **has been** in Ireland **for three days**.

present perfect + **for**/**since** ➔ Unit 18 **from**/**until**/**since**/**for** ➔ Unit 104 **for** and **during** ➔ Unit 105

Exercises

19.1 Write **for** or **since**.

1 Helen has been in Ireland ......since...... Monday.
2 Helen has been in Ireland ......for...... three days.
3 My aunt has lived in Australia .... 15 years.
4 Tina is in her office. She has been there .... 7 o'clock.
5 India has been an independent country .... 1947.
6 The bus is late. We've been waiting .... 20 minutes.
7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty .... many years.
8 Michael has been ill .... a long time. He has been in hospital .... October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use **ago**.

1 When was your last meal? ......Three hours ago.......
2 When was the last time you were ill? ....
3 When did you last go to the cinema? ....
4 When was the last time you were in a car? ....
5 When was the last time you went on holiday? ....

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use **for** or **ago** with these words.

1 Helen arrived in Ireland ......three days ago....... (three days)
2 Helen has been in Ireland ......for three days....... (three days)
3 Lynn and Mark have been married .... (20 years)
4 Lynn and Mark got married .... (20 years)
5 Dan arrived .... (an hour)
6 I bought these shoes .... (a few days)
7 Silvia has been learning English .... (six months)
8 Have you known Lisa ....? (a long time)

19.4 Complete the sentences with **for** or **since**.

1 (Helen is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)
......Helen has been in Ireland for three days.......
2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
Jack has ....
3 (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
It's been ....
4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2008)
I've ....
5 (Claire and Matt are married – they got married six months ago)
Claire and Matt have ....
6 (Laura is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)
Laura has ....
7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
David has ....

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

I've lived ... **I've been ...** **I've been learning ...** **I've known ...** **I've had ...**

1 ......I've lived in this town for three years.......
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

→ **Additional exercises 16–18** (pages 258–60)

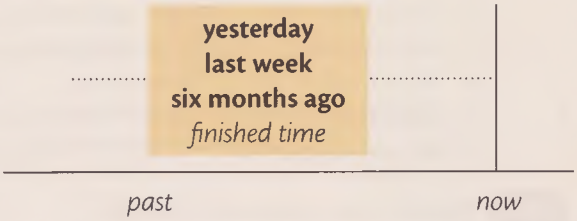
Unit
20

I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

A

With a *finished time* (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.), we use the past (**arrived**/**saw**/**was** etc.):

past	+ *finished time*
We **arrived**	yesterday. last week. at 3 o'clock. in 2002. six months ago.



Do *not* use the present perfect (**have arrived** / **have done** / **have been** etc.) with a finished time:

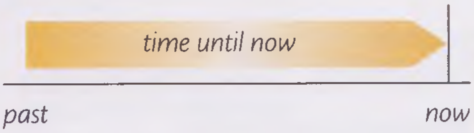
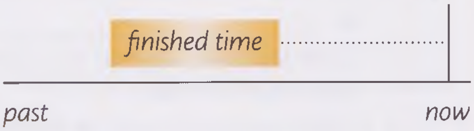
- I **saw** Paula **yesterday**.
  (*not* I have seen)
- Where **were** you **on Sunday afternoon**?
  (*not* Where have you been)
- We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**.
  (*not* We haven't had)
- 'What **did** you **do last night**?' 'I **stayed** at home.'
- William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask **When** … **?** or **What time** … **?**:

- **When did** you **buy** your computer? (*not* When have you bought)
- **What time did** Andy **go** out? (*not* What time has Andy gone out)

B

Compare:

present perfect	*past*
I **have lost** my key. (= I can't find it *now*)	I **lost** my key **last week**.
Ben **has gone** home. (= he isn't here *now*)	Ben **went** home **ten minutes ago**.
Have you **seen** Kate? (= where is she *now*?)	**Did** you **see** Kate **on Saturday**?
	
Have you **ever been** to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)	**Did** you **go** to Spain **last year**?
My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.	Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
Sam **hasn't phoned** me yet.	Sam **didn't phone** me yesterday.
We**'ve lived** in Singapore for six years. (= we live there *now*)	We **lived** in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.

past simple → Units 11–12 present perfect → Units 15–18

Exercises

20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1	Have you seen Kate?	Yes, I saw her .... five minutes ago.
2	Have you started your new job?	Yes, I .... last week.
3	Have your friends arrived?	Yes, they .... at 5 o'clock.
4	Has Sarah gone away?	Yes, ... on Friday.
5	Have you worn your new suit?	Yes, ... yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1 I've lost my key. I can't find it. OK ....
2 Have you seen Kate yesterday? Did you see ....
3 I've finished my work at 2 o'clock. ....
4 I'm ready now. I've finished my work. ....
5 What time have you finished your work? ....
6 Sue isn't here. She's gone out. ....
7 Steve's grandmother has died two years ago. ....
8 Where have you been last night? ....

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1 My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
2 We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last year.
3 I .... (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4 What time .... (you/go) to bed last night?
5 .... (you ever meet) a famous person?
6 The weather .... (not/be) very good yesterday.
7 Kathy travels a lot. She .... (visit) many countries.
8 I .... (switch) off the light before going out this morning.
9 I live in New York now, but I .... (live) in Mexico for many years.
10 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?' 'I don't know. I .... (not/be) there.'

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1 A: Have you ever been .... (you/ever/be) to Florida?
B: Yes, we went .... (go) there on holiday two years ago.
A: .... (you/have) a good time?
B: Yes, it .... (be) great.

2 A: Where's Alan? .... (you/see) him?
B: Yes, he .... (go) out a few minutes ago.
A: And Rachel?
B: I don't know. I .... (not/see) her.

3 Rose works in a factory. She .... (work) there for six months. Before that she .... (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She .... (work) there for two years, but she .... (not/enjoy) it very much.

4 A: Do you know Mark's sister?
B: I .... (see) her a few times, but I .... (never/speak) to her. .... (you/ever/speak) to her?
A: Yes. I .... (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

→ Additional exercises 19–23, 29–31 (pages 260–62, 265–67)

is done was done (passive 1)

A

The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day.	*(active)*
The office **is cleaned** every day.	*(passive)*
Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday.	*(active)*
The office **was cleaned** yesterday.	*(passive)*

B

The passive is:

				past participle	
present simple	**am/is/are**	(not)	+	**cleaned**	**done**
past simple	**was/were**			**invented**	**built**
				injured	**taken** etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed** etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken** etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

○ Butter **is made** from milk.
○ Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
○ How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
○ I **am** never **invited** to parties.

○ This house **was built** 100 years ago.
○ These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
○ When **was** the telephone **invented**?
○ We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
○ '**Was** anybody **injured** in the accident?' 'Yes, two people **were taken** to hospital.'

C

was/were born

○ I **was born** in Berlin in 1993. (*not* I am born)
○ 'Where **were** you **born**?' 'In Cairo.'

D

passive + **by** ...

○ The telephone was invented **by Alexander Bell** in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
○ I was bitten **by a dog** a few days ago.
○ Do you like these paintings? They were painted **by a friend of mine**.

is being done / has been done ➜ **Unit 22** irregular verbs ➜ **Unit 24, Appendix 2–3** **by** ➜ **Unit 111**
active and passive ➜ **Appendix 1**

Exercises

21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.
Sentences 1–7 are present.

1 (the office / clean / every day) The office is cleaned every day.
2 (how often / these rooms / clean?) How often are these rooms cleaned?
3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass ……
4 (the windows / clean / every two weeks) ……
5 (this room / not / use / very much) ……
6 (we / allow / to park here?) ……
7 (how / this word / pronounce?) ……

Sentences 8–15 are past.

8 (the office / clean / yesterday) The office was cleaned yesterday.
9 (the house / paint / last month) The house ……
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago) ……
11 (three people / injure / in the accident) ……
12 (when / this bridge / build?) ……
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) ……
14 (how / these windows / break?) ……
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?) ……

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1 This house built 100 years ago. This house was built
2 Football plays in most countries of the world. ……
3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address? ……
4 A film studio is a place where films make. ……
5 Where are you born? ……
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? ……
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. ……
8 When was invented the bicycle? ……

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal ~~take~~

1 The room is cleaned every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital.
3 Paper …… from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms …… .
5 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It …… to me by a friend of mine.'
6 Many American programmes …… on British TV.
7 'Did James and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No. They ……, but they didn't go.'
8 'How old is this film?' 'It …… in 1985.'
9 My car …… last week, but the next day it …… by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?

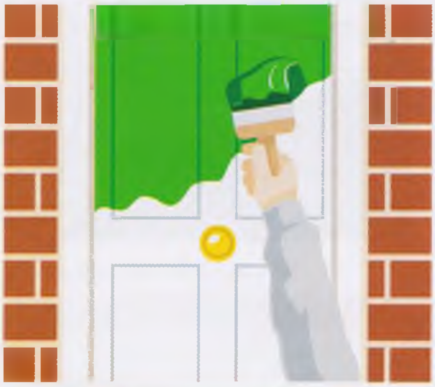
1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sarah / Manchester) Sarah ……
3 (her parents / Ireland) Her ……
4 (you / ???) I ……
5 (your mother / ???) ……

Unit
22

is being done has been done (passive 2)

A

is/are being ... *(present continuous passive)*



Somebody **is painting** the door . *(active)*
The door **is being painted**. *(passive)*

- My car is at the garage. It **is being repaired**. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses **are being built** opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

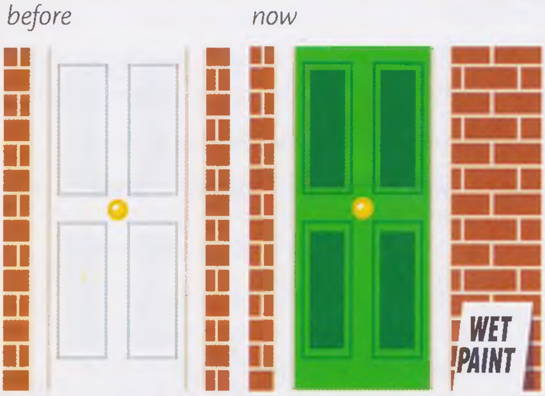
Compare the present continuous and present simple:

- The office **is being cleaned** at the moment. *(continuous)*
  The office **is cleaned** every day. *(simple)*
- Football matches **are** often **played** at the weekend, but no matches **are being played** next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

B

has/have been ... *(present perfect passive)*



Somebody **has painted** the door . *(active)*
The door **has been painted**. *(passive)*

- My key **has been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys **have been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited**. (= nobody has invited me)
- **Has** this shirt **been washed**? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:

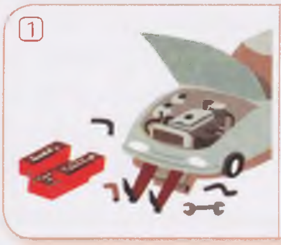
- The room isn't dirty any more. It **has been cleaned**. *(present perfect)*
  The room **was cleaned** yesterday. *(past simple)*
- I can't find my keys. I think they**'ve been stolen**. *(present perfect)*
  My keys **were stolen** last week. *(past simple)*

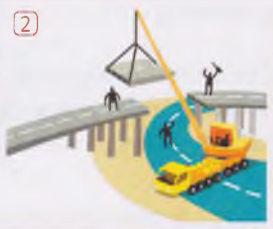
For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

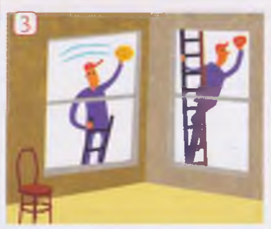
is done / **was done** ➔ **Unit 21** active and passive ➔ **Appendix 1**

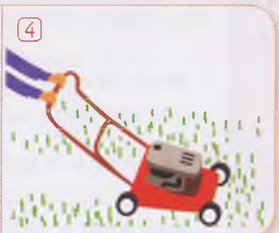
Exercises

22.1 What's happening?



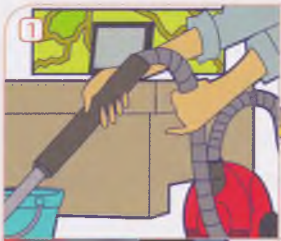


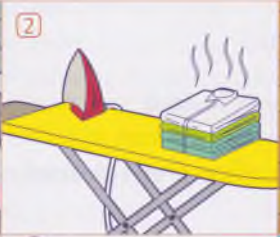


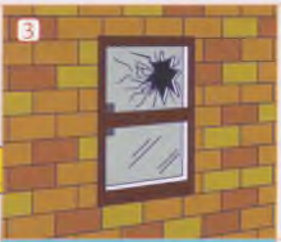


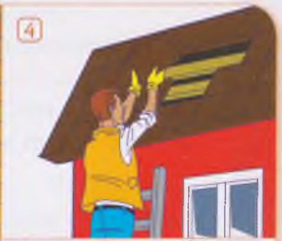
1 The car is being repaired.
2 A bridge ....
3 The windows ....
4 The grass ....

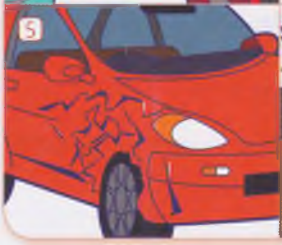
22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (**is/are being ...**) or the present perfect (**has/have been ...**).

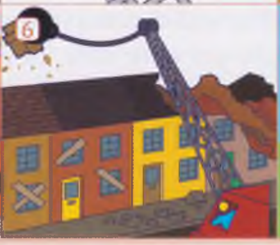


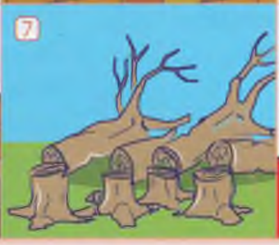


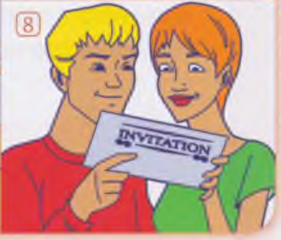












1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
3 (the window / break) The window ....
4 (the roof / repair) The roof ....
5 (the car / damage) ....
6 (the houses / knock / down) ....
7 (the trees / cut / down) ....
8 (they / invite / to a party) ....

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited (not/invite).
3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It .... (repair).
4 The washing machine .... (repair) yesterday afternoon.
5 A factory is a place where things .... (make).
6 How old are these houses? When .... (they/build)?
7 A: .... (the photocopier / use) at the moment?
B: No, you can go ahead and use it.
8 I've never seen these flowers before. What .... (they/call)?
9 My sunglasses .... (steal) at the beach yesterday.
10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It .... (damage) last week and it .... (not/repair) yet.

→ **Additional exercises 24–27** (pages 263–64)

Unit
23

be/have/do in present and past tenses

A

be (= **am**/**is**/**are**/**was**/**were**) + **-ing** (**cleaning**/**working** etc.)

am/**is**/**are** + -ing *(present continuous)* → Units 3–4 and 25	○ Please be quiet. I'**m working**. ○ It **isn't raining** at the moment. ○ What **are** you **doing** this evening?
was/**were** + -ing *(past continuous)* → Unit 13	○ I **was working** when she arrived. ○ It **wasn't raining**, so we didn't need an umbrella. ○ What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

B

be + *past participle* (**cleaned**/**made**/**eaten** etc.)

am/**is**/**are** + *past participle* *(passive present simple)* → Unit 21	○ I'**m** never **invited** to parties. ○ Butter **is made** from milk. ○ These offices **aren't cleaned** every day.
was/**were** + *past participle* *(passive past simple)* → Unit 21	○ The office **was cleaned** yesterday. ○ These houses **were built** 100 years ago. ○ How **was** the window **broken**? ○ Where **were** you **born**?

C

have/**has** + *past participle* (**cleaned**/**lost**/**eaten**/**been** etc.)

have/**has** + *past participle* *(present perfect)* → Units 15–18	○ I'**ve cleaned** my room. ○ Tom **has lost** his passport. ○ Kate **hasn't been** to Canada. ○ Where **have** Paul and Emma **gone**?

D

do/**does**/**did** + *infinitive* (**clean**/**like**/**eat**/**go** etc.)

do/**does** + *infinitive* *(present simple negative and questions)* → Units 6–7	○ I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea. ○ Chris **doesn't go** out very often. ○ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends? ○ **Does** Sam **live** alone?
did + *infinitive* *(past simple negative and questions)* → Unit 12	○ I **didn't watch** TV yesterday. ○ It **didn't rain** last week. ○ What time **did** Paul and Emma **go** out?

irregular verbs → **Unit 24, Appendix 2–3**

Exercises

23.1 Write **is/are** or **do/does.**

1 ....Do........ you work in the evenings?
2 Where ....are........ they going?
3 Why .... you looking at me?
4 .... Ben live near you?
5 .... you like cooking?
6 .... the sun shining?
7 What time .... the shops close?
8 .... Maria working today?
9 What .... this word mean?
10 .... you feeling all right?

23.2 Write **am not/isn't/aren't** or **don't/doesn't.** All these sentences are negative.

1 Tom ....doesn't........ work at weekends.
2 I'm very tired. I .... want to go out this evening.
3 I'm very tired. I .... going out this evening.
4 Gary .... working this week. He's on holiday.
5 My parents are usually at home. They .... go out very often.
6 Nicola has travelled a lot, but she .... speak any foreign languages.
7 You can turn off the television. I .... watching it.
8 Lisa has invited us to her party next week, but we .... going.

23.3 Write **was/were/did/have/has.**

1 Where ....were........ your shoes made?
2 .... you go out last night?
3 What .... you doing at 10.30?
4 Where .... your mother born?
5 .... Laura gone home?
6 What time .... she go?
7 When .... these houses built?
8 .... Steve arrived yet?
9 Why .... you go home early?
10 How long .... they been married?

23.4 Write **is/are/was/were/have/has.**

1 Joe ....has........ lost his passport.
2 This bridge .... built ten years ago.
3 .... you finished your work yet?
4 This town is always clean. The streets .... cleaned every day.
5 Where .... you born?
6 I .... just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7 Glass .... made from sand.
8 This is a very old photograph. It .... taken a long time ago.
9 David .... bought a new car.

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage **~~rain~~** **enjoy** **~~go~~** **pronounce** **eat**
listen **use** **open** **go** **understand**

1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's ....raining........ .
2 Why are you so tired? Did you ......go...... to bed late last night?
3 Where are the chocolates? Have you .... them all?
4 How is your new job? Are you .... it?
5 My car was badly .... in the accident, but I was OK.
6 Kate has got a car, but she doesn't .... it very often.
7 Lisa isn't at home. She has .... away for a few days.
8 I don't .... the problem. Can you explain it again?
9 Mark is in his room. He's .... to music.
10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it .... ?
11 How do you .... this window? Can you show me?

Unit 24

Regular and irregular verbs

A

Regular verbs

The *past simple* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**:

clean → clean**ed** live → liv**ed** paint → paint**ed** study → studi**ed**

Past simple (→ Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Chris **studied** engineering at university.

Past participle

have/**has** + *past participle* (present perfect → Units 15–18):

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tina **has lived** in London for ten years.

be (**is**/**are**/**were**/**has been** etc.) + *past participle* (passive → Units 21–22):

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired**.

B

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do *not* end in **-ed**:

	make	break	cut
past simple	**made**	**broke**	**cut**
past participle	**made**	**broken**	**cut**

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
past simple *past participle*	**made**	**found**	**bought**	**cut**

- I **made** a cake yesterday. *(past simple)*
- I **have made** some coffee. *(past participle – present perfect)*
- Butter **is made** from milk. *(past participle – passive present)*

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
past simple	**broke**	**knew**	**began**	**went**
past participle	**broken**	**known**	**begun**	**gone**

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. *(past simple)*
- Somebody **has broken** this window. *(past participle – present perfect)*
- This window **was broken** last night. *(past participle – passive past)*

irregular verbs → **Appendix 2–3** spelling (regular verbs) → **Appendix 5**

Exercises

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make ....made....
2 cut ....cut....
3 get ....
4 bring ....
5 pay ....
6 enjoy ....
7 buy ....
8 sit ....
9 leave ....
10 happen ....
11 hear ....
12 put ....
13 catch ....
14 watch ....
15 understand ....

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break ....broke.... ....broken....
2 begin ....
3 eat ....
4 drink ....
5 drive ....
6 speak ....
7 write ....
8 come ....
9 know ....
10 take ....
11 go ....
12 give ....
13 throw ....
14 forget ....

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1 I ....washed.... my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2 Somebody has ....broken.... this window. (break)
3 I feel good. I .... very well last night. (sleep)
4 We .... a really good film yesterday. (see)
5 It .... a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6 I've .... my bag. Have you .... it? (lose / see)
7 Rosa's bicycle was .... last week. (steal)
8 I .... to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9 Have you .... your work yet? (finish)
10 The shopping centre was .... about 20 years ago. (build)
11 Anna .... to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12 I've never .... a horse. (ride)
13 Jessica is a good friend of mine. I've .... her for a long time. (know)
14 Yesterday I .... and .... my leg. (fall / hurt)
15 My brother .... in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever .... in a marathon? (run / run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

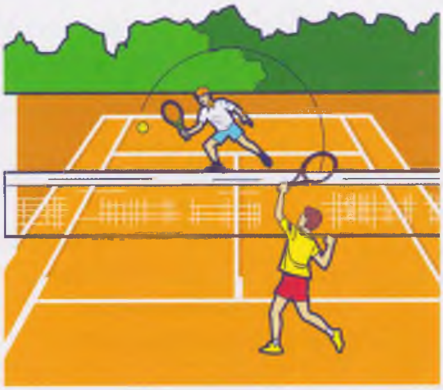
cost **drive** **fly** ~~**make**~~ **meet** **sell**
speak **swim** **tell** **think** **wake up** **win**

1 I have ....made.... some coffee. Would you like some?
2 Have you .... John about your new job?
3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we .... the game.
4 I know Gary, but I've never .... his wife.
5 We were .... by loud music in the middle of the night.
6 Stephanie jumped into the river and .... to the other side.
7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I .... it was very good.'
8 Many different languages are .... in the Philippines.
9 Our holiday .... a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10 Have you ever .... a very fast car?
11 All the tickets for the concert were .... very quickly.
12 A bird .... in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

Unit
25

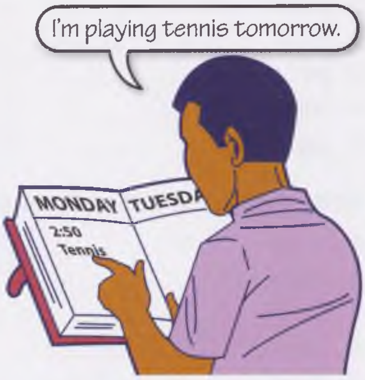
What are you doing tomorrow?

A



They **are playing** tennis (**now**).

today is Sunday



He **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.

We use **am**/**is**/**are** + **-ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now:

- 'Where are Tina and Helen?' 'They**'re playing** tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I**'m working**.

We also use **am**/**is**/**are** + **-ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

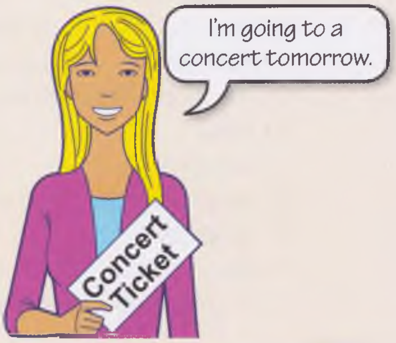
- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I**'m** not **working** next week.

B

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We**'re having** a party next weekend.
- **Are** you **meeting** your friends tonight?
- What **are** you **doing** tomorrow evening?
- I**'m** not **going** out tonight. I**'m staying** at home.

You can also say 'I**'m going to** do something' (→ Unit 26).


I'm going to a concert tomorrow.
Concert Ticket

C

We use the present continuous (**I'm staying** / **are you coming** etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I**'m staying** at home this evening. (*not* I stay)
- **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Lisa **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Lisa doesn't come)

But we use the present simple (**start**, **arrives** etc.) for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc. :

- The train **arrives** at 7.30.
- What time **does** the film **finish**?

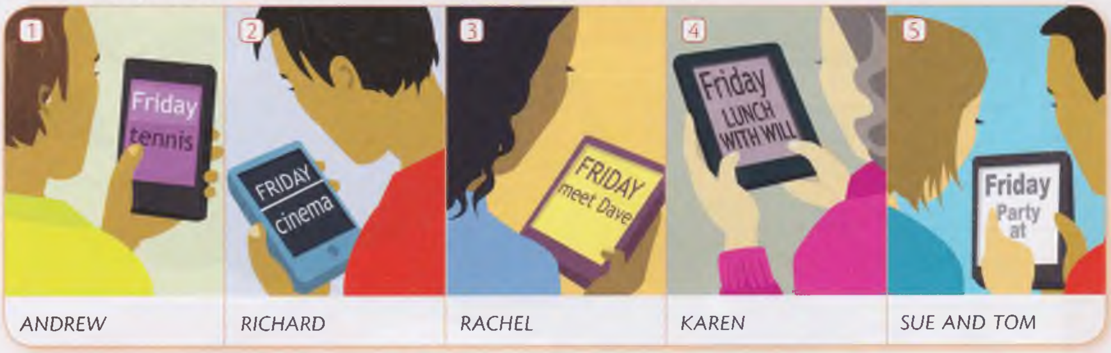
Compare:

present continuous (usually for people)	*present simple* (for timetables, programmes etc.)
I**'m going** to a concert tomorrow.	The concert **starts** at 7.30.
What time **are** you **leaving**?	What time **does** your train **leave**?

present continuous → **Units 3–4** present simple → **Units 5–7** **I'm going to** ... → **Unit 26**

Exercises

25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



1 ......Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.......
2 Richard .... to the cinema.
3 Rachel ....
4 .... lunch with Will.
5 ....

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1 (you / go / out / tonight?) ......Are you going out tonight?......
2 (you / work / next week?) ....
3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?) ....
4 (what time / your friends / come?) ....
5 (when / Lisa / go / on holiday?) ....

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1 ......I'm staying at home tonight.......
2 ......I'm going to the theatre on Monday.......
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (**he is leaving** etc.) or present simple (**the train leaves** etc.).

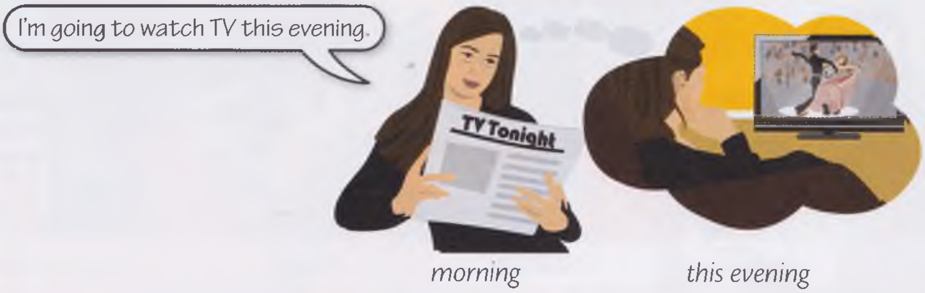
1 '......Are you going...... (you/go) out tonight?' 'No, I'm too tired.'
2 ......We're going...... (we/go) to a concert tonight. ......It starts...... (it/start) at 7.30.
3 Do you know about Sarah? .... (she/get) married next month!
4 A: My parents .... (go) on holiday next week.
B: Oh, that's nice. Where .... (they/go)?
5 Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course .... (finish) on Friday.
6 There's a party tomorrow night, but .... (I/not/go).
7 .... (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? .... (we/meet) at the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
8 A: How .... (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus .... (leave) at midnight.
9 A: .... (you/come) with us to the cinema tonight?
B: Yes, what time .... (the film / begin)?
10 A: What .... (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?
B: .... (I/work).

Unit
26

I'm going to ...

A

I'm going to do something


I'm going to watch TV this evening.
TV Tonight
morning
this evening

She **is going to watch** TV this evening.

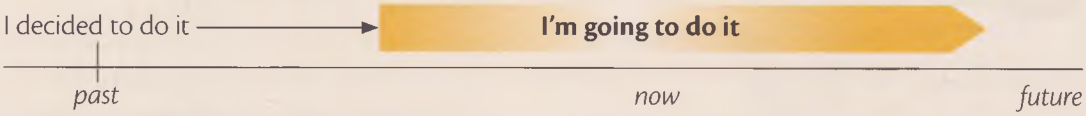
We use **am/is/are going to** ... for the *future:*

I	**am**	(not) **going to**	do ...
he/she/it	**is**		drink ...
we/you/they	**are**		watch ...

am	I	**going to**	buy ... ?
is	he/she/it		eat ... ?
are	we/you/they		wear ... ?

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:


I decided to do it
I'm going to do it
past
now
future

- I'**m going to buy** some books tomorrow.
- Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- **I'm not going to have** breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What **are** you **going to wear** to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'**m going to wash** them.'
- **Are** you **going to invite** Mark to your party?

We also use the present continuous (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):

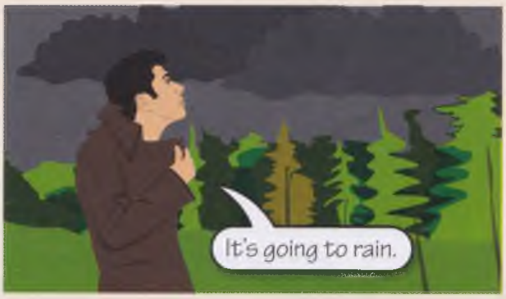
- I **am playing** tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

Something **is going to happen**

Something **is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

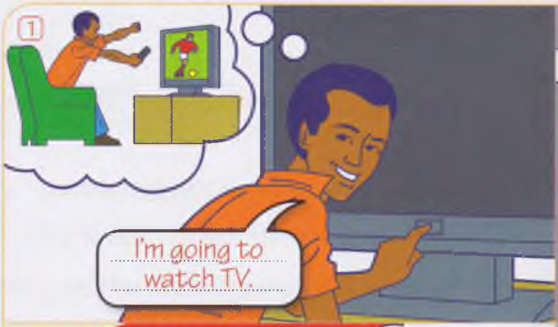
- Look at the sky! It'**s going to rain**.
  (black clouds *now* → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
  I'**m going to be** late.
  (9 o'clock *now* and not ready → late)

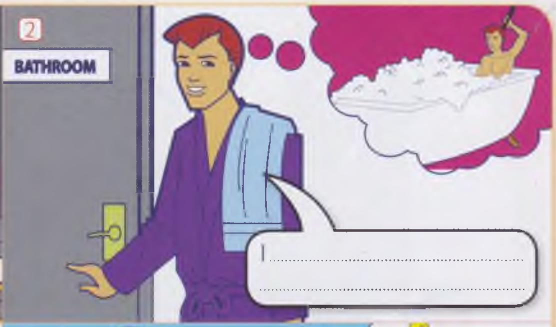

It's going to rain.

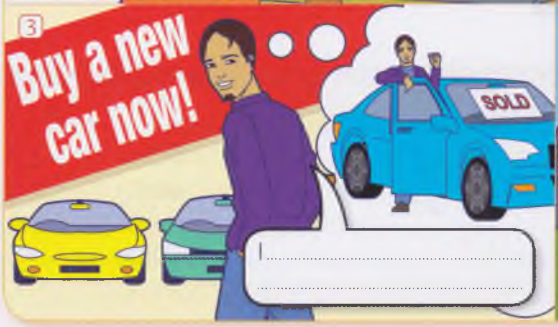
present for the future ➜ **Unit 25** **will** ➜ **Units 27–28**

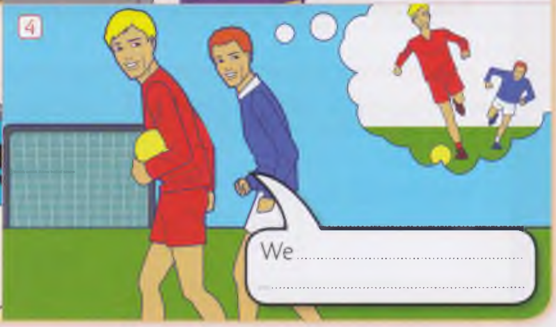
Exercises

26.1 What are these people saying?


1
I'm going to watch TV.




3
Buy a new car now!
SOLD
I ......

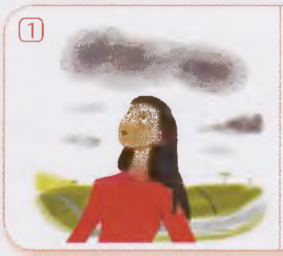


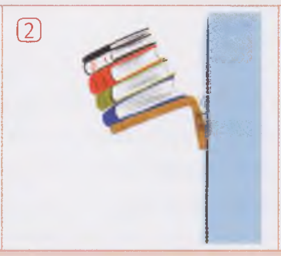
26.2 Complete the sentences. Use **going to** + these verbs:

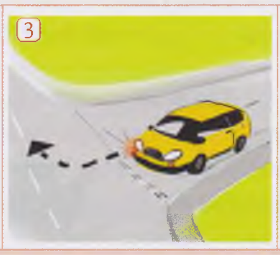
do **eat** **give** **lie down** **stay** **walk** ~~**wash**~~ **watch** ~~**wear**~~

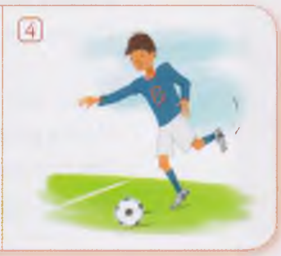
1 My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2 What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3 It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I ......
4 Steve is going to London next week. He ...... with some friends.
5 I'm hungry. I ...... this sandwich.
6 It's Sarah's birthday next week. We ...... her a present.
7 Sue says she's feeling very tired. She ...... for an hour.
8 Your favourite programme is on TV tonight. ...... you ...... it?
9 What ...... Rachel ...... when she leaves school?

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?









1 It's going to rain.
2 The shelf ......
3 The car ......
4 He ......

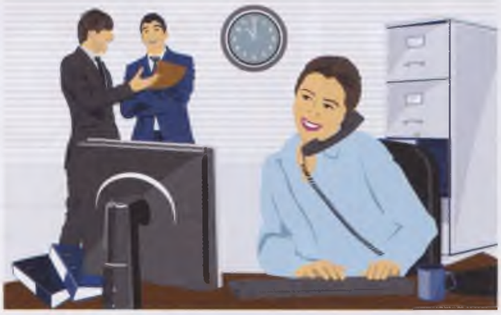
26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1 I'm ......
2 ......
3 ......

Unit
27

will/shall 1

A



SARAH

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah **is** at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + *infinitive* (**will be** / **will win** / **will come** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**will** ('**ll**) **will not** (**won't**)	**be** **win** **eat** **come** etc.

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**be?** **win?** **eat?** **come?** etc.

'll = **will**: I'**ll** (I will) / you'**ll** / she'**ll** etc.
won't = **will not**: I **won't** (= I will not) / you **won't** / she **won't** etc.

B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

○ Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'**ll be** in Rome. Next week she'**ll be** in Tokyo.
○ You can call me this evening. I'**ll be** at home.
○ Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds **will eat** it.
○ We'**ll** probably **go** out this evening.
○ **Will** you **be** at home this evening?

○ I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
○ Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think** ... **will** ... :

○ **I think** Kelly **will pass** the exam.
○ **I don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.
○ **Do you think** the exam **will be** difficult?

C

We do *not* use **will** for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

○ We'**re going** to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (*not* We will go)
○ I'**m** not **working** tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
○ **Are** you **going to do** the exam? (*not* Will you do)

D

shall

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

○ **I shall be** late tomorrow. *or* **I will** (**I'll**) **be** late tomorrow.
○ I think **we shall win**. *or* I think **we will** (**we'll**) **win**.

But *do not* use **shall** with **you/they/he/she/it**:

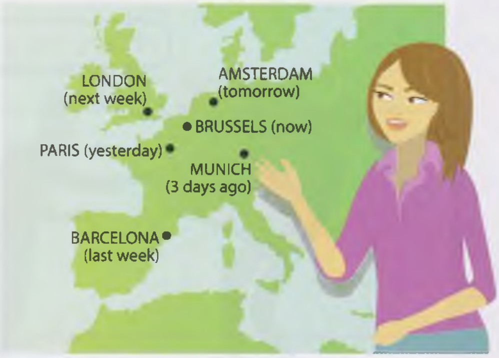
○ **Tom will** be late. (*not* Tom shall be)

What are you doing tomorrow? ➜ **Unit 25** **I'm going to** ... ➜ **Unit 26** **will/shall 2** ➜ **Unit 28**

Exercises

27.1 Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with **she was, she's** or **she'll be**.

1. Yesterday ……she was…… in Paris.
2. Tomorrow ………………………… in Amsterdam.
3. Last week ………………………… in Barcelona.
4. Next week ………………………… in London.
5. At the moment ………………………… in Brussels.
6. Three days ago ………………………… in Munich.
7. At the end of her trip ………………………… very tired.



Helen

27.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be … or **I'll probably be …** or **I don't know where I'll be.**

1. (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) ……I'll probably be on the beach.……
2. (one hour from now) …………………………………………
3. (at midnight tonight) …………………………………………
4. (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon) …………………………………………
5. (two years from now) …………………………………………

27.3 Put in **will** (**'ll**) or **won't**.

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You ……won't…… sleep.
2. 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I ………………………… be ready in five minutes.'
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I ………………………… be at home tomorrow.
4. It ………………………… rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. A: I don't feel very well this evening.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you ………………………… feel better in the morning.
6. It's Ben's birthday next Monday. He ………………………… be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It ………………………… happen again.

27.4 Write sentences with **I think …** or **I don't think … .**

1. (Kelly will pass the exam) ……I think Kelly will pass the exam.……
2. (Kelly won't pass the exam) ……I don't think Kelly will pass the exam.……
3. (we'll win the game) I …………………………………………
4. (I won't be here tomorrow) …………………………………………
5. (Sue will like her present) …………………………………………
6. (they won't get married) …………………………………………
7. (you won't enjoy the film) …………………………………………

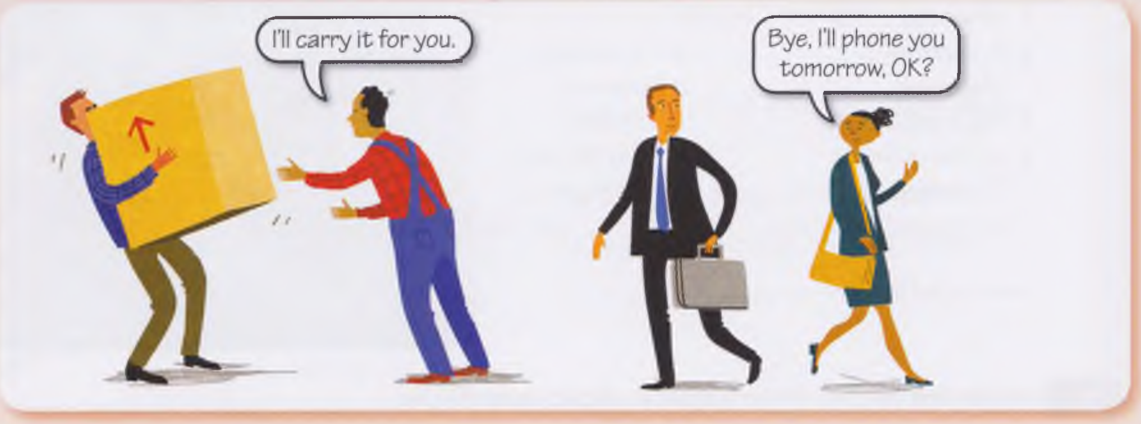
27.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

1. ~~We'll go~~ / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going *is right*)
2. 'What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
3. They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
4. I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
6. Do you think Clare will phone / is phoning us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
8. Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
9. A: What are your plans for the weekend?
   B: Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.

Unit 28

will/shall 2

A


I'll carry it for you.
Bye, I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?

You can use **I'll** ... (**I will**) when you offer something or decide to do something:

- 'My bag is very heavy.' **'I'll carry** it for you.'
- **'I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.'

We often say **I think I'll** ... / **I don't think I'll** ... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do *not* use the present simple (**I go** / **I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- **I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK? (*not* I phone you)
- I think I**'ll go** to bed early. (*not* I go to bed)

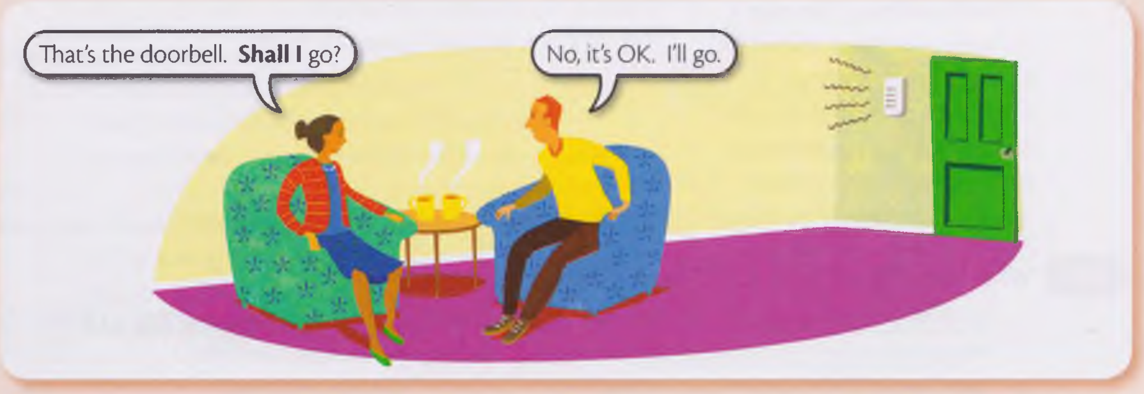
B

Do *not* use **I'll** ... for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):

- **I'm working** tomorrow. (*not* I'll work)
- I don't want my car any more. **I'm going to sell** it. (*not* I'll sell)
- What **are** you **doing** at the weekend? (*not* What will you do)

C

Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?


That's the doorbell. **Shall I** go?
No, it's OK. I'll go.

Shall I / **Shall we** ... ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's very warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- '**Shall I phone** you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What **shall I wear**?

- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
- Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'OK, what time **shall we meet**?'

What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25 **I'm going to** ... → Unit 26 **will/shall** 1 → Unit 27
Let's → Units 35, 53

Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use **I'll** (**I will**) + these verbs:

~~**carry**~~ **do** **eat** **show** **sit** **stay**

1 My bag is very heavy. *I'll carry* ...... it for you.
2 I don't want this banana. Well, I'm hungry. ...... it.
3 Do you want a chair? No, it's OK. ...... on the floor.
4 Did you phone Sophie? Oh no, I forgot. ...... it now.
5 Are you coming with me? No, I don't think so. ...... here.
6 How do you use this camera? Give it to me and ...... you.

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I think I'll ...** or **I don't think I'll ...** + these verbs:

buy **buy** ~~**go**~~ **have** **play**

1 It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* ...... out.
2 I'm hungry. I ...... something to eat.
3 I feel very tired. ...... tennis.
4 I like this hat. ...... it.
5 This camera is too expensive. ...... it.

28.3 Which is right?

1 ~~I phone~~ / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll phone is right*)
2 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3 I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4 I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5 Carl is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6 'This book belongs to Tina.' 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.'
7 A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8 I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

28.4 Write sentences with **Shall I ... ?** Choose from the two boxes.

make **turn off** ~~**open**~~ **turn on**

some sandwiches **the TV** **the light** ~~**the window**~~

1 It's very warm in this room. *Shall I open the window?*
2 This programme isn't very good. ......
3 I'm hungry. ......
4 It's dark in this room. ......

28.5 Write sentences with **Shall we ... ?** Choose from the two boxes.

what **where** ~~**what time**~~ **who**

buy **invite** **go** ~~**meet**~~

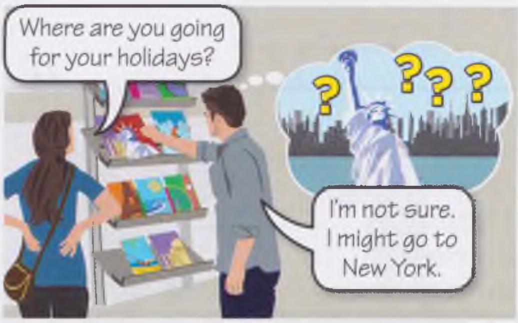
1 Let's go out tonight. OK, *what time shall we meet?*
2 Let's have a holiday. OK, ...
3 Let's spend some money. OK, ...
4 Let's have a party. OK, ...

→ **Additional exercises 28–31** (pages 264–67)

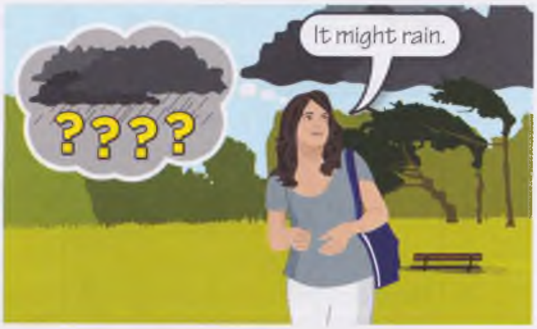
Unit 29

might

A


Where are you going for your holidays?
I'm not sure. I might go to New York.
? ? ? ?

He **might go** to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)



It **might rain**.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + *infinitive* (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**might** (not)	**be** **go** **play** **come** etc.

B

I might = it is possible that I will:

☐ I **might go** to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)

☐ A: When is Rebecca going to phone you?
B: I don't know. She **might phone** this afternoon.

☐ Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.

☐ Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)

☐ A: Are you going out tonight?
B: **I might**. (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

☐ **I'm playing** tennis tomorrow. *(sure)*
I **might play** tennis tomorrow. *(possible)*

☐ Rebecca **is going to phone** later. *(sure)*
Rebecca **might phone** later. *(possible)*

C

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

☐ I **might not go** to work tomorrow.
(= it is possible that I will not go)

☐ Sue **might not come** to the party.
(= it is possible that she will not come)

D

may

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may** = **I might**:

☐ I **may go** to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)

☐ Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I … **?** = Is it OK to … ? / Can I … ?:

☐ **May I** ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)

☐ '**May I** sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

will ➔ Units 27–28 **can** ➔ Unit 30

Exercises

29.1 Write sentences with **might**.

1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema) I might go to the cinema.
2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I ....
3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to phone) ....
4 (it's possible that it will snow today) ....
5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) ....

Write sentences with **might not**.

6 (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week) ....
7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out) ....

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.

fish **go away** ~~**Italy**~~ **Monday** **a new car** **taxi**

1	Where are you going for your holidays?	I'm not sure. I might go to Italy.
2	What are you doing at the weekend?	I don't know. I ....
3	When will you see Kate again?	I'm not sure. ....
4	What are you going to have for dinner?	I don't know. ....
5	How are you going to get home tonight?	I'm not sure. ....
6	I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?	I haven't decided yet. ....

29.3 You ask Ben questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1	Are you playing tennis tomorrow?	Yes, in the afternoon.
2	Are you going out tomorrow evening?	Possibly.
3	Are you going to get up early?	Perhaps.
4	Are you working tomorrow?	No, I'm not.
5	Will you be at home tomorrow morning?	Maybe.
6	Are you going to watch TV?	I might.
7	Are you going out in the afternoon?	Yes, I am.
8	Are you going shopping?	Perhaps.

Ben

Now write about Ben. Use **might** where necessary.

1 He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
2 He might go out tomorrow evening.
3 He ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

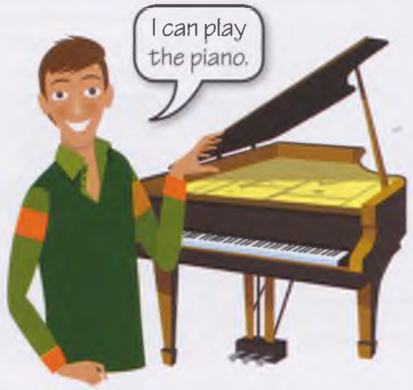
29.4 Write three things that you **might** do tomorrow.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....

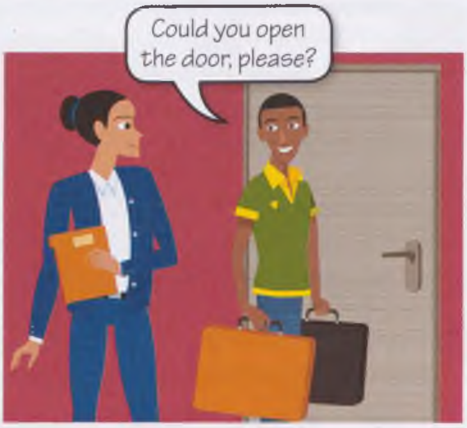
Unit
30

can and could

A


I can play the piano.

He **can play** the piano.


Could you open the door, please?

can + *infinitive* (**can do** / **can play** / **can come** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**can** **can't** (**cannot**)	**do** **play** **see** **come** etc.

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**do?** **play?** **see?** **come?** etc.

B

I can do something = I *know how* to do it, or *it is possible* for me to do it:

- ☐ I **can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano too.
- ☐ Sarah **can speak** Italian, but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- ☐ A: **Can** you **swim**?
  B: Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- ☐ A: **Can** you **change** twenty pounds?
  B: I'm sorry, **I can't**.
- ☐ I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel **can't come**.

C

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **could**/**couldn't**:

- ☐ When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
- ☐ Before Maria came to Britain, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- ☐ I was tired last night, but I **couldn't sleep**.
- ☐ I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel **couldn't come**.

D

Can you … ? Could you … ? Can I … ? Could I … ?

We use **Can you** … **?** or **Could you** … **?** when we ask people to do things:

- ☐ **Can you** open the door, please? *or* **Could you** open the door, please?
- ☐ **Can you** wait a moment, please? *or* **Could you** wait … ?

We use **Can I have** … **?** or **Can I get** … **?** to ask for something:

- ☐ **Can I have** a glass of water, please? *or* **Can I get** … ?

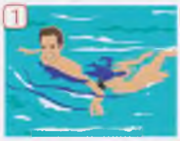
Can I … **?** or **Could I** … **?** = is it OK to do something?:

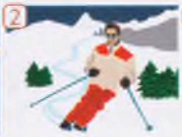
- ☐ **Can I** sit here?
- ☐ Tom, **could I** borrow your umbrella?

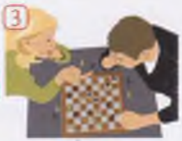
May I … ? ➜ **Unit 29**

Exercises

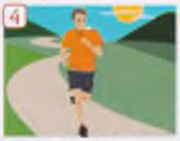
30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

1 

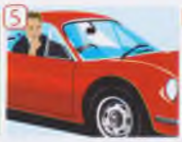
2 

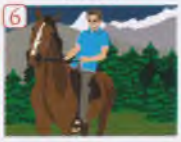
3 

chess

4 

10 kilometres

5 

6 

You — Steve

1 *Can you swim?*
2 ……
3 ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use **I can** or **I can't**.

7 I ……
8 ……
9 ……
10 ……
11 ……
12 ……

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use **can** or **can't** + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

1 I'm sorry, but we *can't come* to your party next Saturday.
2 I like this hotel room. You …… the mountains from the window.
3 You are speaking very quietly. I …… you.
4 Have you seen my bag? I …… it.
5 Catherine got the job because she …… five languages.

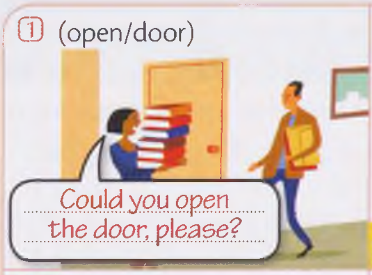
30.3 Complete these sentences. Use **can't** or **couldn't** + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go ~~sleep~~

1 I was tired, but I *couldn't sleep* .
2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I …… my dinner.
3 Kate doesn't know what to do. She …… .
4 I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I …… him.
5 James …… to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6 Paula …… to the meeting last week. She was ill.

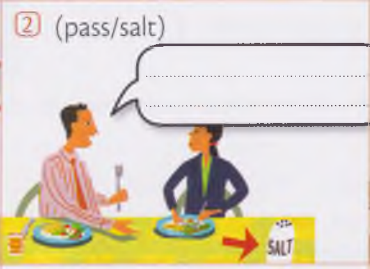
30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use **can** or **could**.

① (open/door)

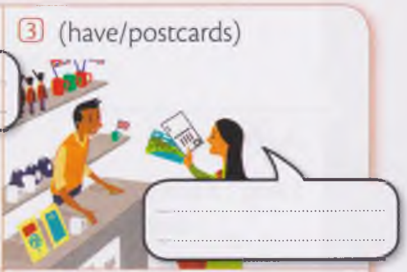


Could you open the door, please?

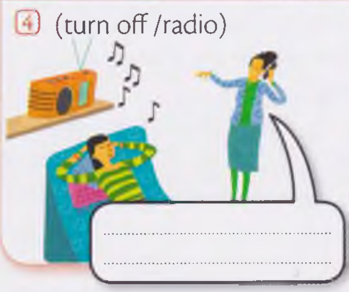
② (pass/salt)



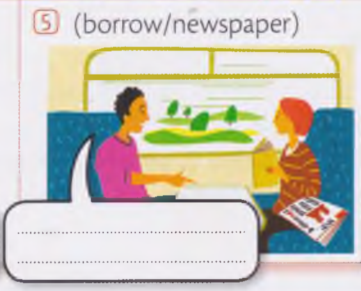
③ (have/postcards)



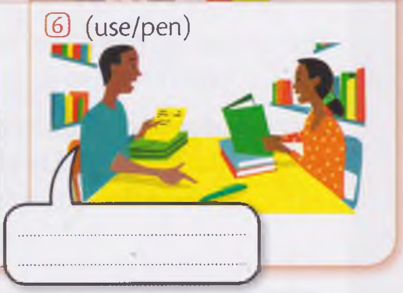
④ (turn off /radio)



⑤ (borrow/newspaper)



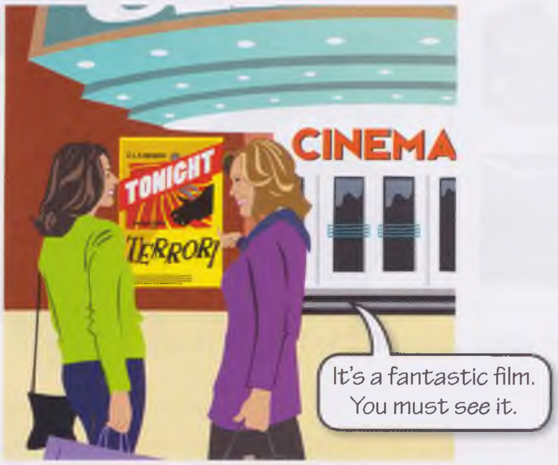
⑥ (use/pen)



Unit 31

must mustn't don't need to

A


CINEMA
TONIGHT
TERROR!
It's a fantastic film. You must see it.

must + *infinitive* (**must do** / **must work** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**must**	**do** **go** **see** **eat** etc.

B

I must (do something) = I need to do it:

- I'm very hungry. I **must eat** something.
- It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
- The windows are very dirty. We **must clean** them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to** ... (*not* must):

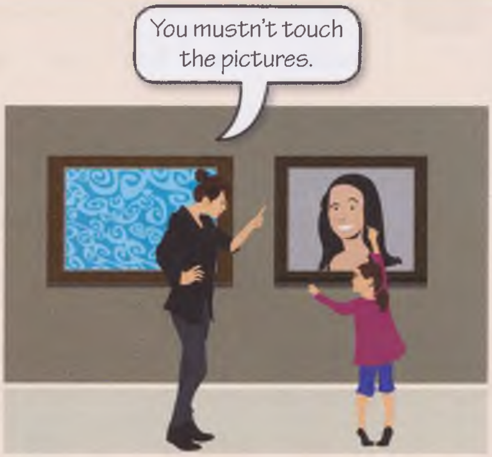
- I was very hungry. I **had to eat** something. (*not* I must eat)
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses. (*not* We must walk)

C

mustn't (= must not)

I mustn't (do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- I **must go**. I **mustn't be** late.
- I **mustn't forget** to phone Chris.
  (= I **must remember** to phone her)
- Be happy! You **mustn't be** sad. (= don't be sad)
- You **mustn't touch** the pictures.
  (= don't touch the pictures)


You mustn't touch the pictures.

D

don't need to

I don't need (to do something) = it is not necessary:

- I **don't need to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.
- You **don't need to shout**. I can hear you OK.

You can also say **don't have to** ... :

- I **don't have to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare **don't need to** and **mustn't**:

- You **don't need to** go. You can stay here if you want.
- You **mustn't** go. You must stay here.

I have to ... ➜ **Unit 33**

Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + these verbs:

be **~~eat~~** **go** **learn** **meet** **wash** **win**

1 I'm very hungry. I ....must eat.... something.
2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. You .... her.
3 My hands are dirty. I .... them.
4 You .... to drive. It will be very useful.
5 I .... shopping. I need to buy some food.
6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We ....
7 You can't always have things immediately. You .... patient.

31.2 Write **I must** or **I had to**.

1 ....I had to.... walk home last night. There were no buses.
2 It's late. .... go now.
3 I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday .... work.
4 .... get up early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.
5 I came here by train. The train was full and .... stand all the way.
6 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. .... run to get there on time.
7 I forgot to phone David yesterday. .... phone him later today.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't** or **don't need to** + these verbs:

forget **~~go~~** **lose** **phone** **rush** **wait**

1 I ....don't need to go.... home yet. I can stay a little longer.
2 We have a lot of time. We ....
3 Keep these papers in a safe place. You .... them.
4 I'm not ready yet, but you .... for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5 We .... to turn off the lights before we leave.
6 I must contact David, but I .... him – I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

1 We can leave the meeting early.
2 We must leave the meeting early.
3 We mustn't leave the meeting early.
4 We had to leave the meeting early.
5 We don't need to leave the meeting early.

A We must stay until the end.
B We couldn't stay until the end.
C We can't stay until the end.
D We can stay until the end.
E We don't need to stay until the end.

1 ....E....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....

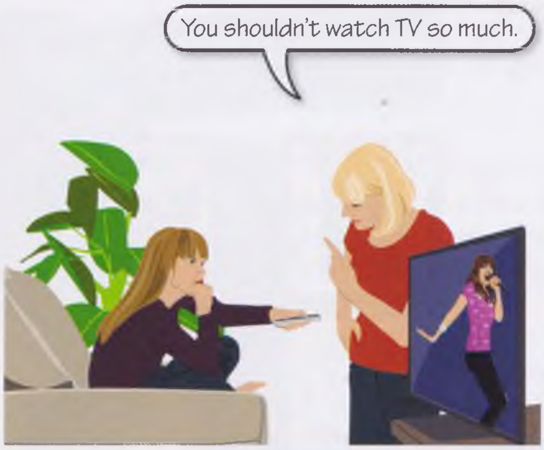
31.5 Write **must** / **mustn't** / **had to** / **don't need to**.

1 You ....don't need to.... go. You can stay here if you want.
2 It's a fantastic film. You ....must.... see it.
3 The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We .... reserve a table.
4 I was very busy last week. I .... work every evening.
5 I want to know what happened. You .... tell me.
6 I don't want Sue to know what happened. You .... tell her.
7 I .... go now or I'll be late for my appointment.
8 'Why were you so late?' 'I .... wait half an hour for a bus.'
9 We .... decide now. We can decide later.
10 It's Lisa's birthday next week. I .... forget to buy her a present.

Unit
32

should

A


You shouldn't watch TV so much.

should + *infinitive*
(**should do** / **should watch** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**should** **shouldn't**	**do** **stop** **go** **watch** etc.

B

You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:

- Tom doesn't study enough. He **should study** harder.
- It's a good film. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

C

You **shouldn't** do something = it is not a good thing to do.
Shouldn't = should not:

- Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

D

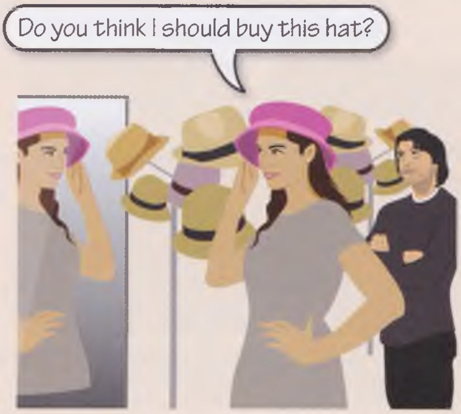
We often say **I think** … **should** …

I think … **should** … :

- **I think** Lisa **should buy** some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. **I think** I **should go** home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, **I think** you **should**.

I don't think … **should** … :

- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
  (= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- **I don't think** we **should go** yet. It's too early.


Do you think I should buy this hat?

Do you think … **should** … ?:

- **Do you think** I **should buy** this hat?
- What time **do you think** we **should go** home?

E

Must is stronger than **should**:

- It's a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It's a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

F

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:

- It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Lisa **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)

shall → Units 27–28 must → Unit 31

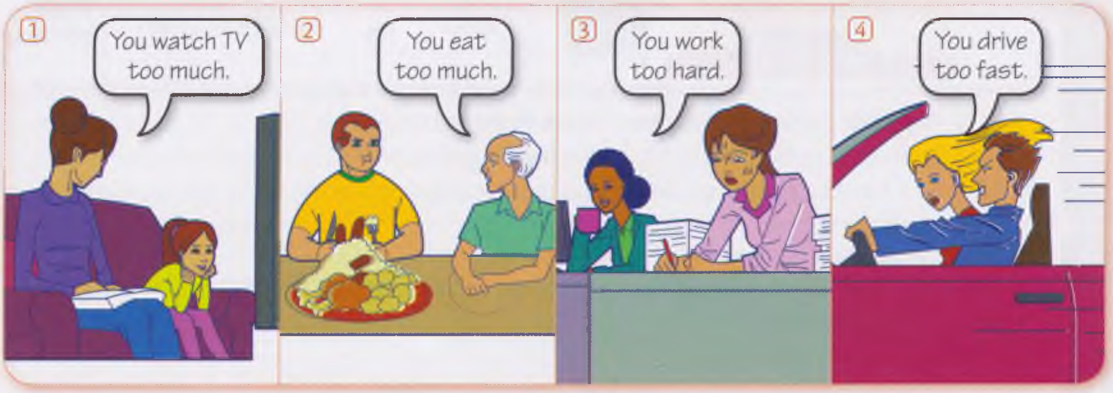
Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + these verbs:

eat go take visit ~~watch~~ wear

1 When you play tennis, ...you should watch.... the ball.
2 It's late and you're very tired. .... to bed.
3 .... plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4 If you have time, ... the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5 When you're driving, ... a seat belt.
6 It's too far to walk from here to the station. .... a taxi.

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't ... so ... .**


1
You watch TV too much.
2
You eat too much.
3
You work too hard.
4
You drive too fast.

1 ....She shouldn't watch TV so much.....
2 He ....
3 .... hard.
4 ....

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with **Do you think I should ... ?**

1 You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
You ask your friend: ....Do you think I should buy this jacket?....
2 You can't drive. (learn?)
You ask your friend: Do you think ....
3 You don't like your job. (get another job?)
You ask your friend: ....
4 You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
You ask your friend: ....

32.4 Write sentences with **I think ... should ...** and **I don't think ... should ... .**

1 We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) ....I think we should go home now....
2 That coat is too big for you. (buy it) ....I don't think you should buy it....
3 You don't need your car. (sell it) ....
4 Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday) ....
5 Sarah and Dan are too young. (get married) ....
6 You're not well this morning. (go to work) ....
7 James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) ....
8 The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) ....

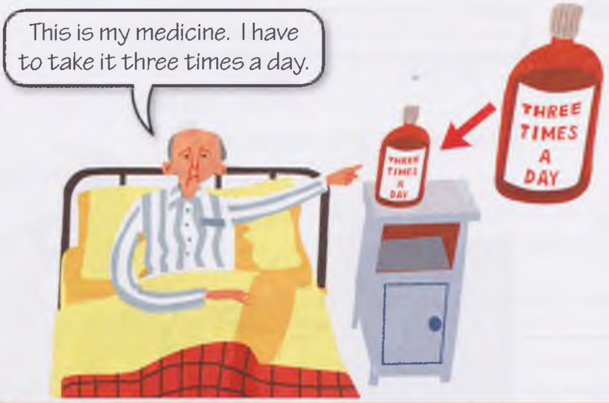
32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with **should**.

1 I think ....everybody should learn another language....
2 I think everybody ....
3 I think ....
4 I don't think ....
5 I think I should ....

Unit 33

I have to ...

A


This is my medicine. I have to take it three times a day.
THREE TIMES A DAY
THREE TIMES A DAY

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	**have**	**to do** **to work** **to go** **to wear** etc.
he/she/it	**has**	

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to get** up at 6.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driving licence.

B

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is **had to** ... :

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In questions and negatives we use **do/does** (present) and **did** (past):

present

do	I/we/you/they	**have to** ... ?
does	he/she/it	

I/we/you/they	**don't**	**have to** ...
he/she/it	**doesn't**	

past

did	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**have to** ... ?

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't have to** ...

- What time **do** you **have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- **Does** Jane **have to work** on Sundays?
- Why **did** they **have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get** up early.
- Ian **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

D

must and **have to**

You can use **must** or **have to** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you give *your* opinion:

- It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it. *or* You **have to** see it.

When you are *not* giving your personal opinion, use **have to** (*not* **must**). Compare:

- Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She **has to** go to the doctor.
  (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she **must** go.
  (this is my personal opinion)

must / mustn't / don't need to ➜ Unit 31

Exercises

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **has to** + these verbs:

do **hit** **read** **speak** **travel** ~~**wear**~~

1 My eyes are not very good. I ……have to wear…… glasses.
2 At the end of the course all the students …………………… a test.
3 Sarah is studying literature. She …………………… a lot of books.
4 Albert doesn't understand much English. You …………………… very slowly to him.
5 Kate is often away from home. She …………………… a lot in her job.
6 In tennis you …………………… the ball over the net.

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **had to** + these verbs:

answer **buy** **change** **go** ~~**walk**~~

1 We ……had to walk…… home last night. There were no buses.
2 It's late. I …………………… now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3 I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I …………………… some food.
4 This train doesn't go all the way to London. You …………………… at Bristol.
5 We did an exam yesterday. We …………………… six questions out of ten.

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1	I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time ……do you have to get up……?
2	George had to wait a long time.	How long ……………………?
3	Lisa has to go somewhere.	Where ……………………?
4	We had to pay a lot of money.	How much ……………………?
5	I have to do some work.	What exactly ……………………?

33.4 Write sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't have to ...** .

1 Why are you going out? You ……don't have to go out.……
2 Why is Sue waiting? She ……………………
3 Why did you get up early? You ……………………
4 Why is Paul working so hard? He ……………………
5 Why do you want to leave now? We ……………………

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes **must** and **have to** are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

1 It's a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. (*both are correct*)
2 Jessica won't be at work this afternoon. She ~~must go~~ / has to go to the doctor.
(has to go *is correct*)
3 You can't park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
4 I didn't have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
5 I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
6 Paul is in a hurry. He must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes.
7 What's wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1 (every day) ……I have to travel ten miles every day.……
2 (every day) ……………………
3 (yesterday) ……………………
4 (tomorrow) ……………………

Unit
34

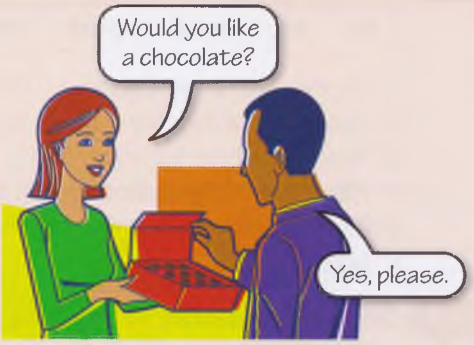
Would you like ... ? I'd like ...

A

Would you like ... **?** = Do you want ... ?

We use **Would you like** ... **?** to offer things:

- A: **Would you like** some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: **Would you like** a chocolate?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: What **would you like**, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.


Would you like a chocolate?
Yes, please.

We use **Would you like to** ... **?** to invite somebody:

- **Would you like to go** for a walk?
- A: **Would you like to eat** with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, **I'd love to**. (= I would love to eat with you)
- What **would you like to do** this evening?

B

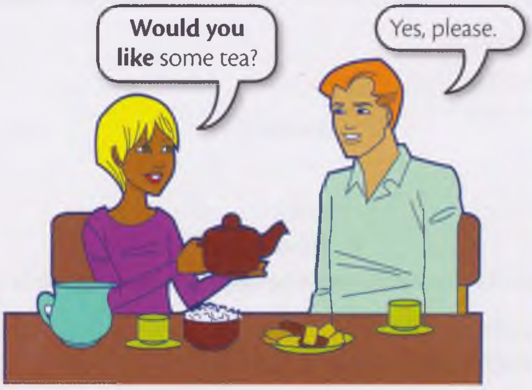
I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. **I'd** like = **I would** like:

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- *(in a tourist office)* **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. **I'd like to stay** at home this evening.

C

Would you like ... **?** and **Do you like** ... **?**

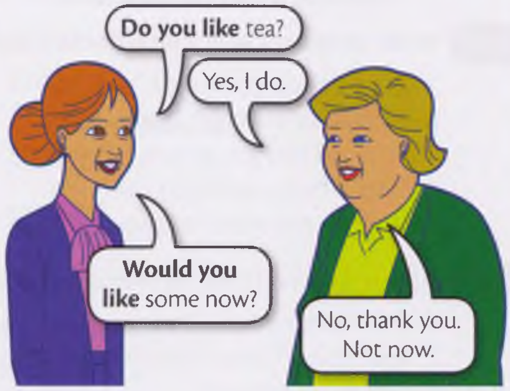
Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...


Would you like some tea?
Yes, please.

Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

- A: **Would you like** to go to the cinema tonight?
  (= do you want to go *tonight*?)
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- **I'd like** an orange, please.
  (= can I have an orange?)
- What **would you like** to do next weekend?

Do you like ... ? / I like ...


Do you like tea?
Yes, I do.
Would you like some now?
No, thank you. Not now.

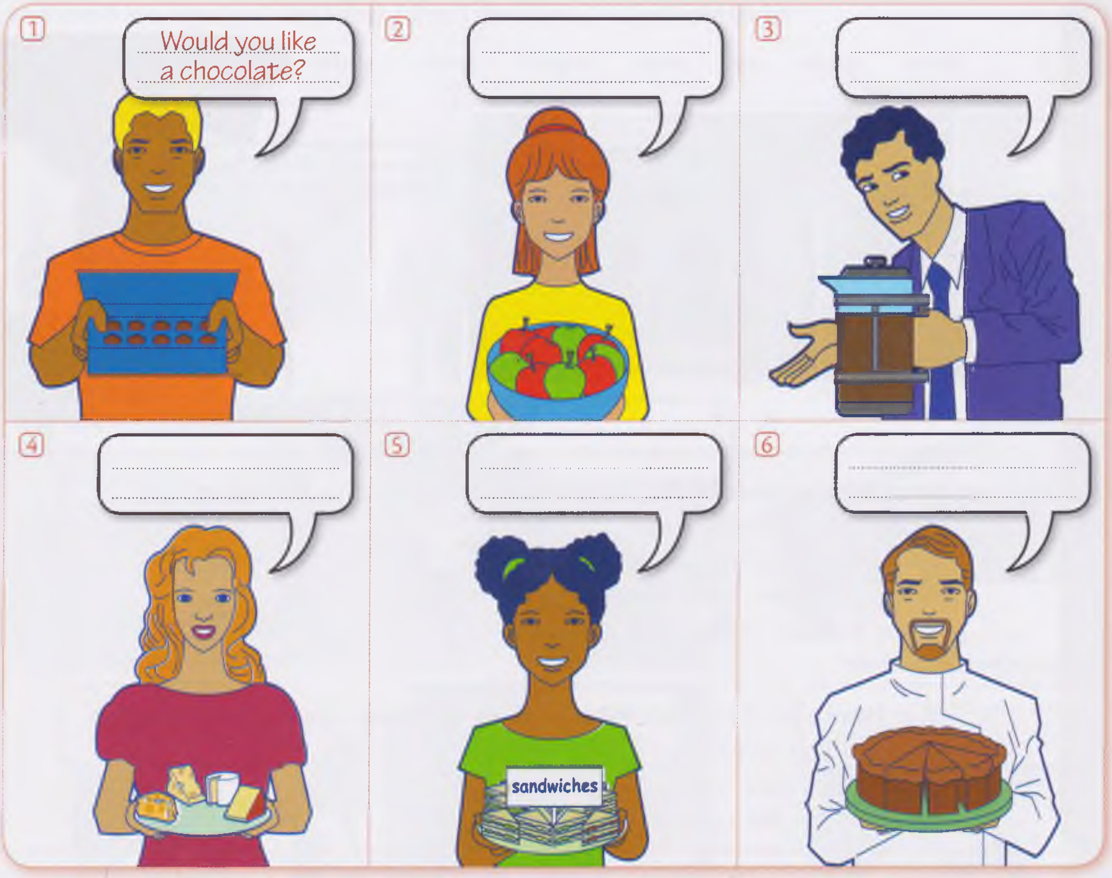
Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

- A: **Do you like** going to the cinema? *(in general)*
  B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- **I like** oranges. *(in general)*
- What **do you like** to do at weekends?

like to do and **like -ing** → Unit 52 **I would do** something **if** ... → Unit 100

Exercises

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use **Would you like ... ?**


1
Would you like a chocolate?
2
3
4
5
sandwiches
6

34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use **Would you like to ... ?**

1 You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
You say: ……

3 You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
You say: ……

4 It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
You say: ……

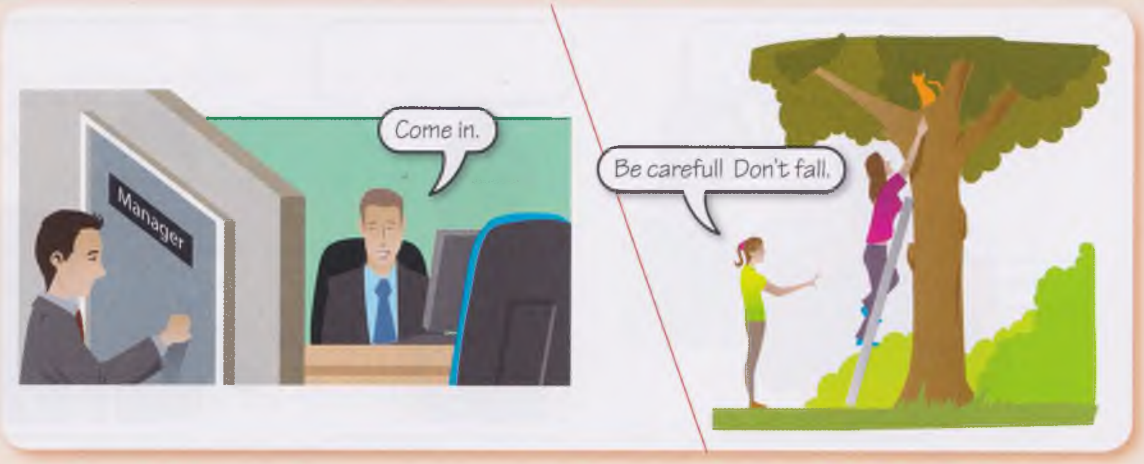
34.3 Which is right?

1 '~~Do you like~~ / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' (Would you like *is right*)
2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice cream?' 'No, thank you.'
4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
6 I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
11 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.' 'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
12 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?' 'All kinds.'

Unit
35

Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

A


Manager
Come in.
Be careful! Don't fall.

We use **come**/**look**/**go**/**wait**/**be** etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

☐ '**Come** here and **look** at this!' 'What is it?'
☐ I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
☐ I'm not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
☐ Please **be** quiet. I'm working.

also

☐ Bye! **Have** a good holiday! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun!
(= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
☐ '**Have** a chocolate.' 'Oh, thanks.'
(= would you like a chocolate?)

B

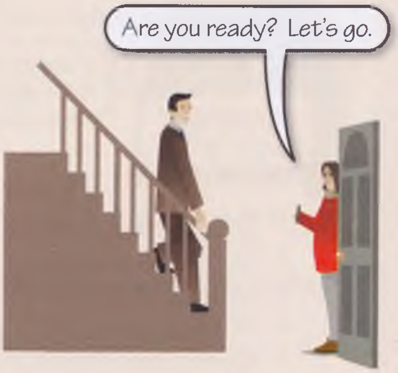
We use **don't** ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

☐ Be careful! **Don't fall**.
☐ Please **don't go**. Stay here with me.
☐ Be here on time. **Don't be** late.

C

You can say **Let's** ... when you want people to do things with you. **Let's** = Let us.

☐ It's a nice day. **Let's go** out.
(= *you and I* can go out)
☐ Come on! **Let's dance**.
(= *you and I* can dance)
☐ Are you ready? **Let's go**.
☐ **Let's have** fish for dinner tonight.
☐ A: Shall we go out tonight?
B: No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.


Are you ready? Let's go.

The negative is **Let's not** ... :

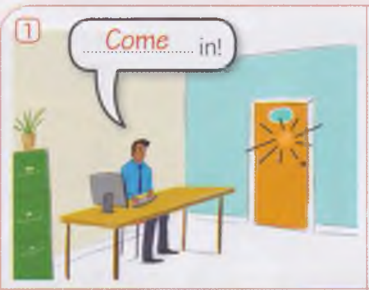
☐ It's cold. **Let's not** go out. Let's stay at home.
☐ **Let's not** have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.

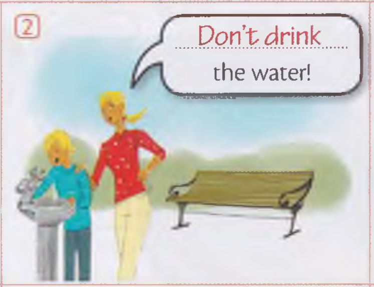
shall we ... ? → Unit 28

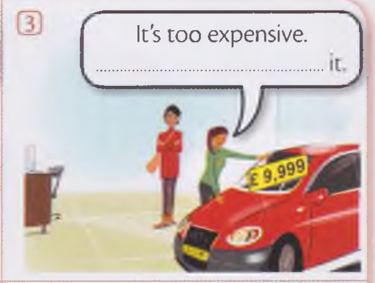
Exercises

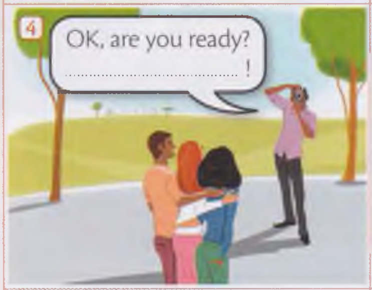
35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (**buy**/**come** etc.) and some are negative (**don't buy** / **don't come** etc.). Use these verbs:

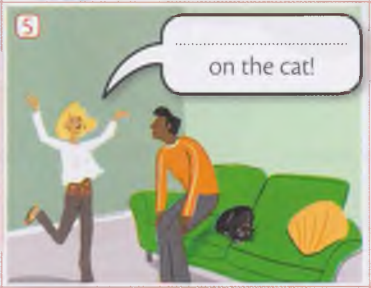
be **buy** ~~**come**~~ ~~**drink**~~ **drop** **forget** **have** **sit** **sleep** **smile**

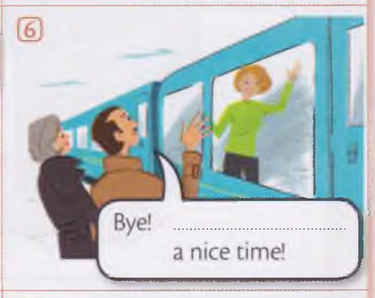


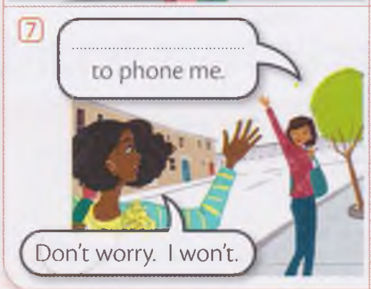

2
Don't drink the water!

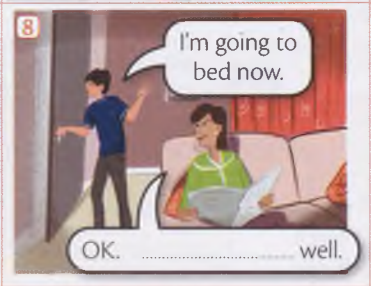

3
It's too expensive. .... it.
£9,999

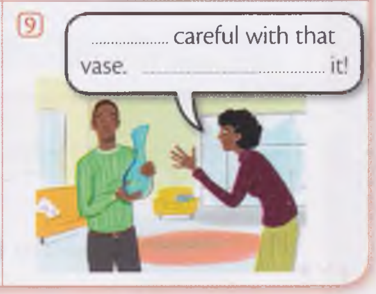

4
OK, are you ready? .... !




6
Bye! .... a nice time!


7
.... to phone me.
Don't worry. I won't.


8
I'm going to bed now.
OK. .... well.


9
.... careful with that vase. .... it!

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use **let's** with:

~~**go for a swim**~~ **go to a restaurant** **take a taxi** **wait a little** **watch TV**

1 Would you like to play tennis? No, let's go for a swim.
2 Do you want to walk home? No, ...
3 Shall I put a CD on? No, ...
4 Shall we eat at home? No, ...
5 Would you like to go now? No, ...

35.3 Answer with **No, don't ...** or **No, let's not ...** .

1 Shall I wait for you? No, don't wait for me.
2 Shall we go home now? No, let's not go home yet.
3 Shall we go out? ....
4 Do you want me to close the window? ....
5 Shall I phone you tonight? ....
6 Do you think we should wait for Andy? ....
7 Do you want me to turn on the light? ....
8 Shall we go by bus? ....

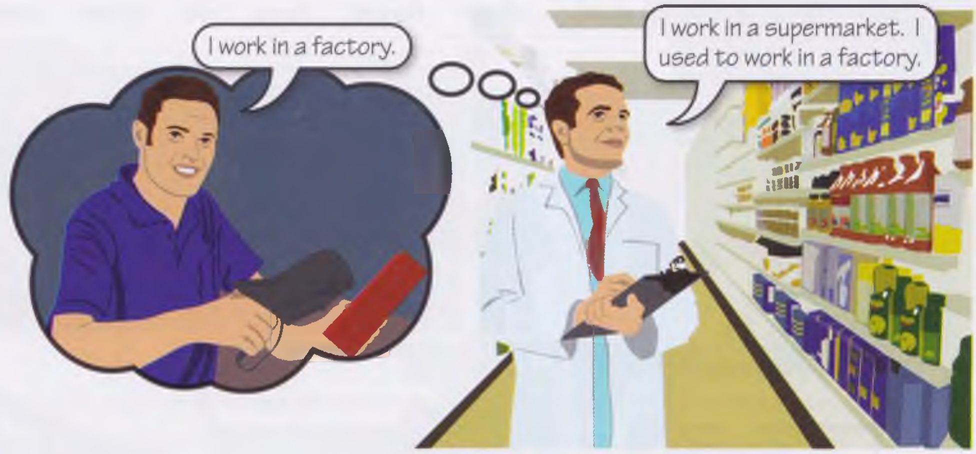
Unit 36

I used to ...

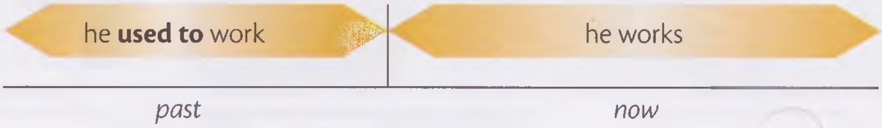
A

DAVE *a few years ago*

DAVE *today*


I work in a factory.
I work in a supermarket. I used to work in a factory.

Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.


he **used to** work
he works
past
now

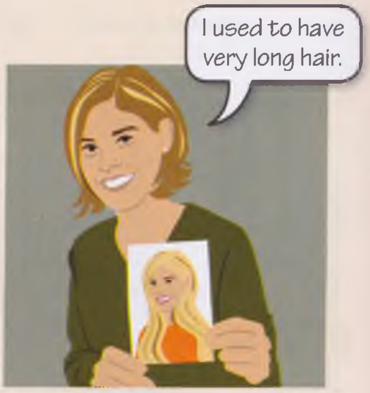
Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now.

B

You can say **I used to work** ... / **she used to have** ... / **they used to be** ... etc. :

I/you/we/they he/she/it	**used to**	**be** **work** **have** **play** etc.

- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Lisa has got short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** in the same street as us, so we **used to see** them a lot. But we don't see them much these days.
- Helen **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.


I used to have very long hair.

The negative is **I didn't use to** ... :

- When I was a child, I **didn't use to like** tomatoes.

The question is **did you use to** ... ?:

- Where **did** you **use to live** before you came here?

C

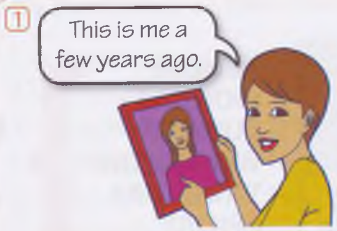
We use **used to** ... only for the past. You cannot say 'I use to ...' for the present:

- I **used to play** tennis. These days I **play** golf. (*not* I use to play golf)
- We usually **get** up early. (*not* We use to get up early)

Exercises

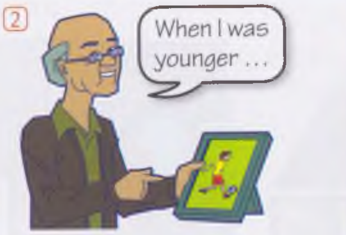
36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **used to ...** .

1


This is me a few years ago.

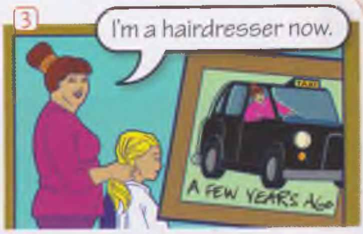
She used to have
long hair.

2


When I was younger ...

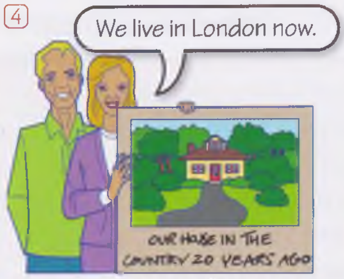
He ....
football.

3


I'm a hairdresser now.
TAXI
A FEW YEARS AGO

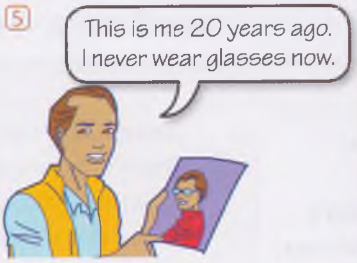
....
a taxi driver.

4


We live in London now.
OUR HOUSE IN THE COUNTRY 20 YEARS AGO

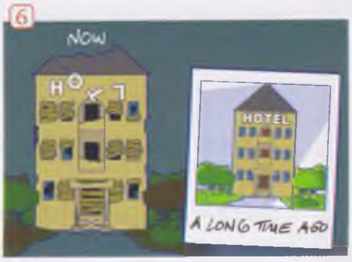
....
in the country.

5


This is me 20 years ago. I never wear glasses now.

....
....

6


NOW
HOTEL
HOTEL
A LONG TIME AGO

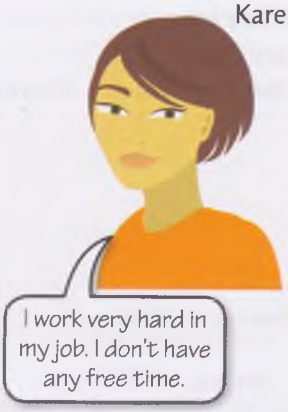
This building ....
....

36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago

Do you do any sport?	Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much?	Yes, most evenings.
Do you play a musical instrument?	Yes, the guitar.
Do you like reading?	Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much?	Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Karen now


I work very hard in my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with **used to ...** .

1 She used to swim every day.
2 She ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

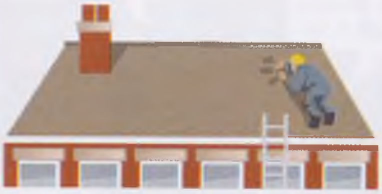
36.3 Complete these sentences. Use **used to** or the present simple (**I play / he lives** etc.).

1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play basketball.'
3 'Do you have a car?' 'No, I .... one, but I sold it.'
4 George .... a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I .... by train.'
6 When I was a child, I never .... meat, but I eat it now.
7 Mary loves watching TV. She .... TV every evening.
8 We .... near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I .... up very early.
10 What games .... you .... when you were a child?

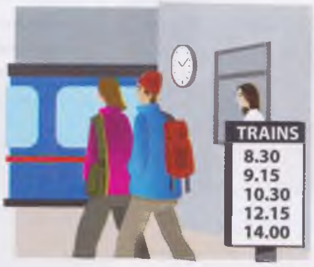
Unit 37

there is there are

A



There's a man on the roof.



There's a train at 10.30.

SUNDAY
MONDAY
TUESDAY
WEDNESDAY } **7**
THURSDAY
FRIDAY
SATURDAY

There are seven days in a week.

singular

there is ...	(**there's**)
is there ... ?	
there is not ...	(**there isn't** *or* **there's not**)

- **There's** a big tree in the garden.
- **There's** nothing on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, **there's** some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.
- We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

plural

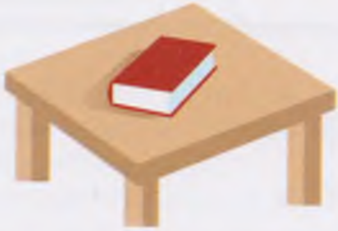
there are ...	
are there ... ?	
there are not ...	(**there aren't**)

- **There are** some big trees in the garden.
- **There are** a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: **Are there** any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.
- This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.
- How many players **are there** in a football team?
- **There are** 11 players in a football team.

B

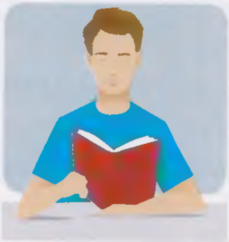
there is and it is

there is



There's a book on the table.
(*not* It's a book on the table.)

it is



I like this book. **It's** interesting.
(**It** = this book)

Compare:

- 'What's **that noise**?' '**It's** a train.' (**It** = that noise)
  There's a train at 10.30. **It's** a fast train. (**It** = *the 10.30 train*)
- **There's** a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like **this soup**. **It's** too salty. (**It** = this soup)

there was / were / has been etc. → **Unit 38** **it** and **there** → **Unit 39** **some** and **any** → **Unit 76**

Exercises

37.1 Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1	a castle?	No
2	any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3	a hospital?	Yes
4	a swimming pool?	No
5	any cinemas?	Yes (two)
6	a university?	No
7	any big hotels?	No

1 There isn't a castle.
2 There are a lot of restaurants.
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......
7 ......

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1 There are a few restaurants.
2 There's a big park.
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......

37.3 Write **there is** / **there isn't** / **is there** or **there are** / **there aren't** / **are there**.

1 Kentham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
2 Look! ...... a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
3 'Excuse me, ... a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
4 ...... five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5 'How many students ...... in the class?' 'Twenty.'
6 The road is usually very quiet. ...... much traffic.
7 '...... a bus from the city centre to the airport?' 'Yes, every 20 minutes.'
8 '...... any problems?' 'No, everything is OK.'
9 ...... nowhere to sit down. ...... any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with **There are ...** . Choose from the boxes.

~~seven~~
eight
fifteen
twenty-six
thirty
fifty

letters
players
planets
~~days~~
days
states

September
the USA
a rugby team
the solar system
~~a week~~
the English alphabet

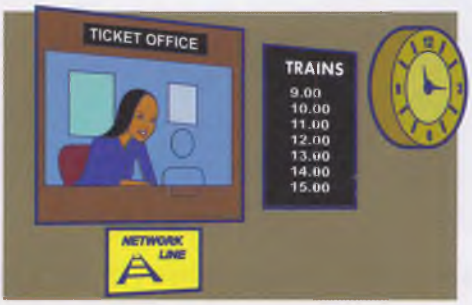
1 There are seven days in a week.
2 ......
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......

37.5 Write **there's** / **is there** or **it's** / **is it**.

1 'There's a train at 10.30.' 'Is it a fast train?'
2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. ...... too expensive.
3 'What's wrong?' '...... something in my eye.'
4 ...... a red car outside your house. ...... yours?
5 '...... anything good on TV tonight?' 'Yes, ... a programme I want to see at 8.15.'
6 'What's that building?' '...... a school.'
7 '...... a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

Unit 38 there was/were there has/have been there will be

A **there was** / **there were** *(past)*



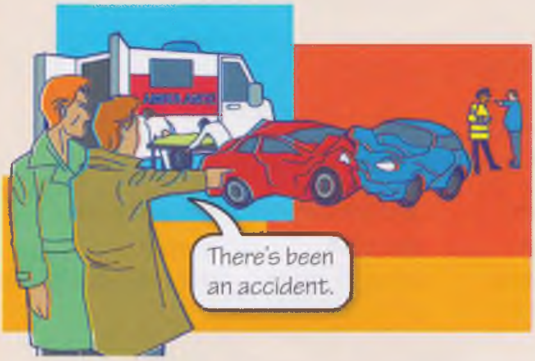
There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15.
There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are *(present)*	**there was/were** *(past)*
☐ **There is** nothing on TV tonight.	☐ **There was** nothing on TV last night.
☐ We are staying at a very big hotel. **There are** 550 rooms.	☐ We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 550 rooms.
☐ Is everything OK? **Are there** any problems?	☐ Was everything OK yesterday? **Were there** any problems?
☐ I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.	☐ I was hungry when I got home, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B **there has been** / **there have been** *(present perfect)*


There's been an accident.

☐ Look! **There's been** an accident.
(**there's been** = there **has** been)

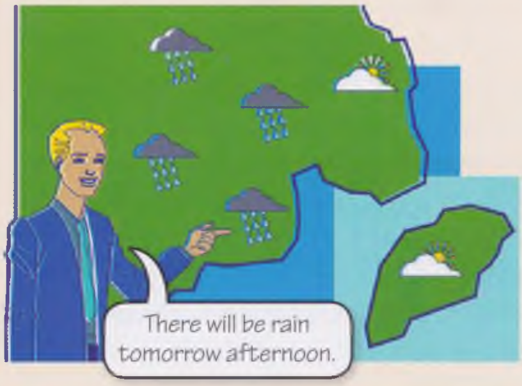
☐ This road is very dangerous. **There have been** many accidents.

Compare **there was** *(past)*:

☐ **There was** an accident **last night**.
(*not* There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

C **there will be**


There will be rain tomorrow afternoon.

☐ Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?

☐ The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.

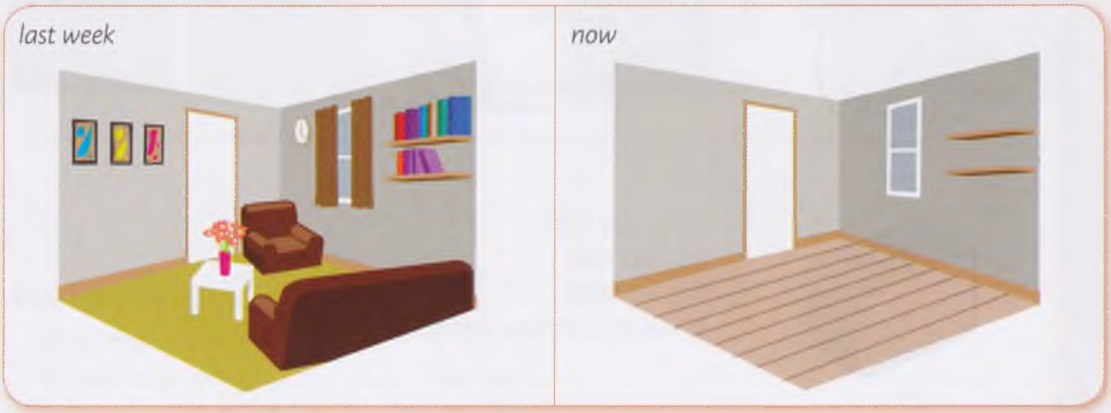
☐ I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because **there won't be** time tomorrow.
(**there won't be** = there **will not** be)

was/were → Unit 10 **has/have been** → Units 15–18 **will** → Unit 27 **there is/are** → Unit 37
there and **it** → Units 37, 39 **some** and **any** → Unit 76

Exercises

38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with **There was ...** or **There were ...** .

an armchair **a carpet** **some flowers** **a sofa**
some books ~~**a clock**~~ **three pictures** **a small table**



1 There was a clock. .... on the wall near the window.
2 .... on the floor.
3 .... on the wall near the door.
4 .... in the middle of the room.
5 .... on the table.
6 .... on the shelves.
7 .... in the corner near the door.
8 .... opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write **there was** / **there wasn't** / **was there** or **there were** / **there weren't** / **were there**.

1 I was hungry, but there wasn't anything to eat.
2 Was everything OK yesterday? Were there any problems?
3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. .... nothing in it.
4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Really? .... a swimming pool?'
5 'Did you buy any bananas?' 'No, ... any in the shop.'
6 The wallet was empty. .... any money in it.
7 '........................ many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
8 We didn't visit the museum. .... enough time.
9 I'm sorry I'm late. .... a lot of traffic.
10 Twenty years ago .... many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write **there** + **is** / **are** / **was** / **were** / **has been** / **have been** / **will be**.

1 There was a good film on TV last night.
2 .... 24 hours in a day.
3 .... a party at the club last Friday, but I didn't go.
4 'Where can I get something to eat?' '........................ a cafe at the end of the street.'
5 'Why are the police outside the bank?' '........................ a robbery.'
6 When we arrived at the theatre, ... a long queue outside.
7 When you arrive tomorrow, ... somebody at the station to meet you.
8 Ten years ago .... 500 children at the school. Now
.... more than a thousand.
9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now.
.... a lot of changes.
10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think .... any problems.

Unit 39

It ...

A

We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather:

time

- What time is **it**?
- **It**'s half past ten.
- **It**'s late.
- **It**'s time to go home.

day

THURS
MAR
16

- What day is **it**?
- **It**'s Thursday.
- **It**'s 16 March.
- **It** was my birthday yesterday.

distance

our house
3 kilometres
city centre

- **It**'s three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
- **It**'s a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. **It** isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far**?) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
In positive sentences, we use **a long way** (**it's a long way**).

weather

- **It**'s raining. **It** isn't raining. Is **it** snowing?
- **It** rains a lot here. **It** didn't rain yesterday. Does **it** snow very often?
- **It**'s warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- **It**'s a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It rains** a lot in winter.
  There is **a lot of rain** in winter.
- **It** was very **windy**.
  There was **a strong wind** yesterday.

B

It's nice to ... etc.

It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe / expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.	**to** ...

- **It**'s nice **to see you again**.
- **It**'s impossible **to understand her**.
- **It** wasn't easy **to find your house**.

C

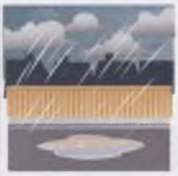
Don't forget **it**:

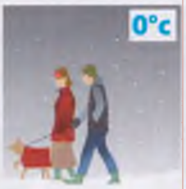
- **It**'s raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is **it** true that you're going away? (*not* Is true that ...)

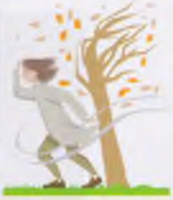
there is → Unit 37

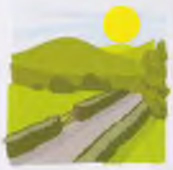
Exercises

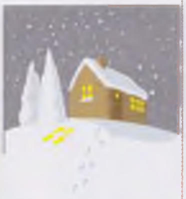
39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use **It's ...** .

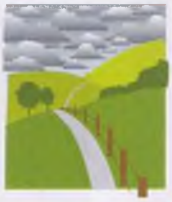
1


2


3


4


5


6


1 It's raining.
2 ......
3 ......
4 ......
5 ......
6 ......

39.2 Write **it is (it's)** or **is it**.

1 What time is it ?
2 We have to go now. ...... very late.
3 ...... true that Ben can fly a helicopter?
4 'What day ...... today? Tuesday?' 'No, ... Wednesday.'
5 ...... ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6 ...... OK to call you at your office?
7 'Do you want to walk to the hotel?' 'I don't know. How far ...... ?'
8 ...... Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
9 I don't believe it! ...... impossible.

39.3 Write questions with **How far ... ?**

1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2 (the hotel / the beach) How ......
3 (New York / Washington) ......
4 (your house / the airport) ......

39.4 Write **it** or **there**.

1 The weather isn't so nice today. It 's cloudy.
2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
3 ......'s hot in this room. Open a window.
4 ...... was a nice day yesterday. ...... was warm and sunny.
5 ...... was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6 I was afraid because ...... was very dark.
7 ......'s often cold here, but ...... isn't much rain.
8 ......'s a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

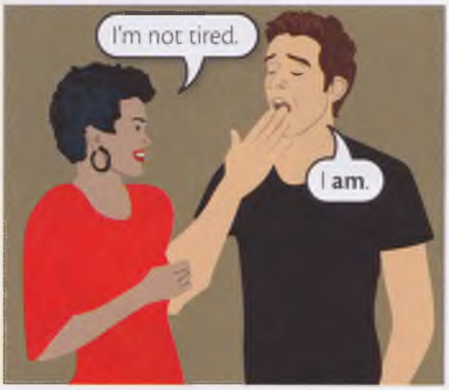
it's — **easy**, **~~difficult~~**, **impossible**, **dangerous**, **nice**, **interesting** — **to** — **work here**, **visit different places**, **see you again**, **~~get up early~~**, **go out alone**, **make friends**

1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2 Hello, Jane. .... How are you?
3 .... There is too much noise.
4 Everybody is very nice at work. ....
5 I like travelling. ....
6 Some cities are not safe. ...... at night.

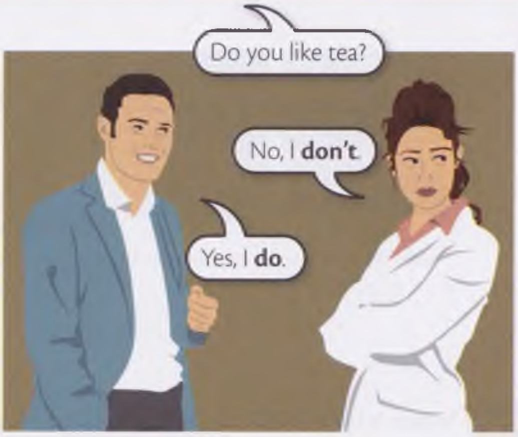
Unit
40

I am, I don't etc.

A


I'm not tired.
I am.

She isn't tired, but **he is**.
(**he is** = he is tired)



He likes tea, but **she doesn't**.
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ('he is *tired*', 'she doesn't *like tea*').

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
must

- I haven't got a car, but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- A: Please help me.
  B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you)
- A: Are you tired?
  B: I **was**, but I'**m not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)
- A: Do you think Laura will come and see us?
  B: She **might**. (= she might come)
- A: Are you going now?
  B: Yes, I'm afraid I **must**. (= I must go)

We don't use **'m**/**'s**/**'ve** etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am**/**is**/**have** etc. :

- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* but he's)

But you can use **isn't** / **haven't** / **won't** etc. (*negative* short forms):

- My sister has got a car, but I **haven't**.
- 'Are you and Jane working tomorrow?' 'I am, but Jane **isn't**.'

B

You can use **I am** / **I'm not** etc. after **Yes** and **No**:

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**. / No, I'**m not**.'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**.'
- 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**.'

C

We use **do**/**does** for the *present simple* (→ Units 6–7):

- I don't like hot weather, but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I **do**.'

We use **did** for the *past simple* (→ Unit 12):

- A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?
  B: I **did**, but Chris **didn't**. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn't enjoy it)
- 'I had a good time.' 'I **did** too.' (= I enjoyed it too)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**.'

have you? / **don't you?** etc. ➔ Unit 41   **so am I** / **neither am I** etc. ➔ Unit 42

Exercises

40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (**is/have/can** etc.) each time.

1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we ......were...... .
2 I'm not married, but my brother ....
3 Ben can't help you, but I ....
4 I haven't seen the film, but Tom ....
5 Karen won't be here, but Chris ....
6 You weren't late, but I ....

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/can't** etc.).

1 My sister can play the piano, but I ......can't...... .
2 Sam is working today, but I ....
3 I was working, but my friends ....
4 Mark has been to China, but I ....
5 I'm ready to go, but Tom ....
6 I've got a key, but Sarah ....

40.3 Complete these sentences with **do/does/did** or **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue ......does...... .
2 Sue likes hot weather, but I ......don't...... .
3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ....
4 You don't know Paul very well, but I ....
5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends ....
6 I don't watch TV much, but Peter ....
7 Kate lives in London, but her parents ....
8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ....

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1 I didn't ......go out last night, but my friends did.......................
2 I like ...., but ....
3 I don't ...., but ....
4 I'm ....
5 I haven't ....

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1 'Are you tired?' 'I ......was...... earlier, but I'm not now.'
2 Steve is happy today, but he .... yesterday.
3 The bank isn't open yet, but the shops ....
4 I haven't got a telescope, but I know somebody who ....
5 I would like to help you, but I'm afraid I ....
6 I don't usually go to work by car, but I .... yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
B: No, but Sandra .... She went there on holiday last year.
8 'Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?' 'I ...., but Chris doesn't.'
9 I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate ....
10 'Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?' 'Yes, I'm sure she ....'
11 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I .... I don't know for sure.'

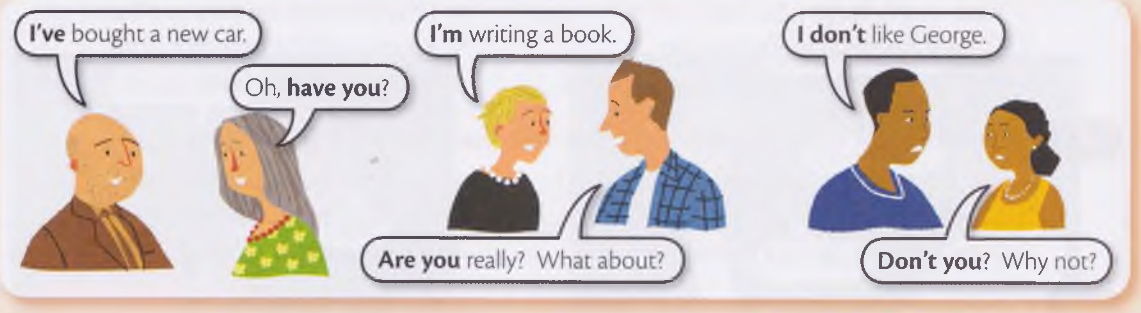
40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **Yes, I have. / No, I'm not.** etc.

1 Are you American? ......No, I'm not.......................
2 Have you got a car? ....
3 Do you feel OK? ....
4 Is it snowing? ....
5 Are you hungry? ....
6 Do you like classical music? ....
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? ....
8 Have you ever broken your arm? ....
9 Did you buy anything yesterday? ....
10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.? ....

Unit
41

Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

A


I've bought a new car.
Oh, **have you**?
I'm writing a book.
Are you really? What about?
I don't like George.
Don't you? Why not?

You can say **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- ☐ '**You're** late.' 'Oh, **am I?** I'm sorry.'
- ☐ '**I was** ill last week.' '**Were you?** I didn't know that.'
- ☐ '**It's** raining again.' '**Is it?** It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- ☐ '**There's** a problem with the car.' '**Is there?** What's wrong with it?'

- ☐ '**Bill can't** drive.' '**Can't he?** I didn't know that.'
- ☐ '**I'm not** hungry.' '**Aren't you?** I am.'
- ☐ '**Sue isn't** at work today.' '**Isn't she?** Is she ill?'

Use **do**/**does** for the *present simple*, and **did** for the *past simple*:

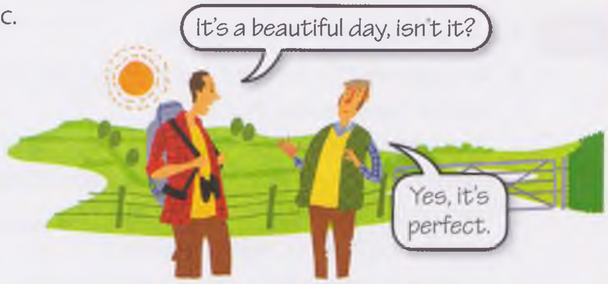
- ☐ '**I speak** four languages.' '**Do you?** Which ones?'
- ☐ '**Ben doesn't** eat meat.' '**Doesn't he?** Does he eat fish?'
- ☐ '**Nicola got** married last week.' '**Did she?** Really?'

B

Question tags

You can use **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are *question tags*.


It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
Yes, it's perfect.

positive sentence → *negative* question tag

It's a beautiful day,	**isn't it?**	Yes, it's perfect.
Kate lives in London,	**doesn't she?**	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window,	**didn't you?**	Yes, I think so.
Those shoes are nice,	**aren't they?**	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon,	**won't he?**	Yes, probably.

negative sentence → *positive* question tag

That isn't your car,	**is it?**	No, it's my mother's.
You haven't met my mother,	**have you?**	No, I haven't.
Helen doesn't go out much,	**does she?**	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late,	**will you?**	No, I'm never late.

I am / **I don't** etc. → **Unit 40**

Exercises

41.1 Answer with **Do you?** / **Doesn't she?** / **Did they?** etc.

1 I speak four languages. Do you? Which ones?
2 I work in a bank. ....? I work in a bank too.
3 I didn't go to work yesterday. ....? Were you ill?
4 Jane doesn't like me. ....? Why not?
5 You look tired. ....? I feel fine.
6 Kate phoned me last night. ....? What did she say?

41.2 Answer with **Have you?** / **Haven't you?** / **Did she?** / **Didn't she?** etc.

1 I've bought a new car. Have you? What make is it?
2 Tim doesn't eat meat. Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?
3 I've lost my key. ....? When did you last have it?
4 Sue can't drive. ....? She should learn.
5 I was born in Italy. ....? I didn't know that.
6 I didn't sleep well last night. ....? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7 There's a film on TV tonight. ....? Are you going to watch it?
8 I'm not happy. ....? Why not?
9 I saw Paula last week. ....? How is she?
10 Maria works in a factory. ....? What kind of factory?
11 I won't be here next week. ....? Where will you be?
12 The clock isn't working. ....? It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (**isn't it?** / **haven't you?** etc.).

1 It's a beautiful day, isn't it? Yes, it's perfect.
2 These flowers are nice, ...? Yes, what are they?
3 Jane was at the party, ...? Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4 You've been to Paris, ...? Yes, many times.
5 You speak German, ...? Yes, but not very well.
6 Martin looks tired, ...? Yes, he works very hard.
7 You'll help me, ...? Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (**is it?** / **do you?** etc.) or negative (**isn't it?** / **don't you?** etc.).

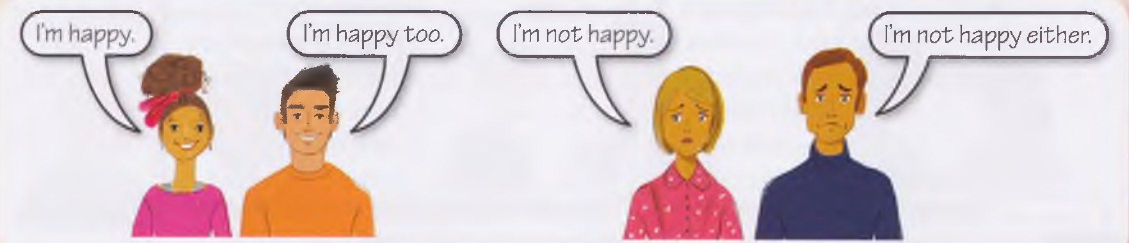
1 You haven't got a car, have you? No, I can't drive.
2 You aren't tired, ...? No, I feel fine.
3 Lisa is a very nice person, ...? Yes, everybody likes her.
4 You can play the piano, ...? Yes, but I'm not very good.
5 You don't know Mike's sister, ...? No, I've never met her.
6 Sarah went to university, ...? Yes, she studied psychology.
7 The film wasn't very good, ...? No, it was terrible.
8 Anna lives near you, ...? That's right. In the same street.
9 You won't tell anybody what I said, ...? No, of course not.

Unit
42

too/either so am I / neither do I etc.

A

too and **either**


I'm happy.
I'm happy too.
I'm not happy.
I'm not happy either.

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

○ A: I'm happy.
B: **I'm** happy **too**.

○ A: I enjoyed the film.
B: I **enjoyed** it **too**.

○ Jane is a doctor. Her husband **is** a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb:

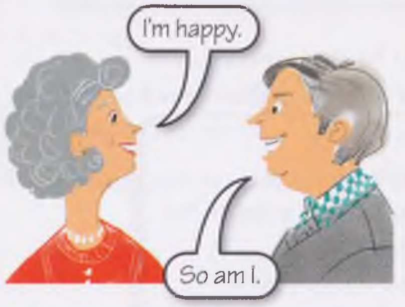
○ A: I'm not happy.
B: **I'm not** happy **either**.

○ A: I can't cook.
B: I **can't either**.

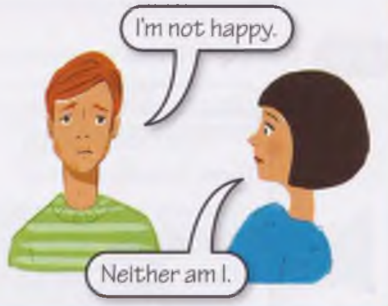
○ Ben doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers **either**.

B

so am I / **neither do I** etc.


I'm happy.
So am I.

	am/is/are …
	was/were …
so	**do/does** …
	did …
	have/has …
neither	**can** …
	will …
	would …


I'm not happy.
Neither am I.

so am I = I am too
so have I = I have too (etc.):

○ A: **I'm** working.
B: **So am I.** (= I'm working too)

○ A: **I was** late for work today.
B: **So was Sam.**

○ A: **I work** in a bank.
B: **So do I.**

○ A: **We went** to the cinema last night.
B: Did you? **So did we.**

○ A: **I'd** like to go to Australia.
B: **So would I.**

neither am I = I'm not either
neither can I = I can't either (etc.):

○ A: **I haven't** got a key.
B: **Neither have I.** (= I haven't either)

○ A: **Kate can't** cook.
B: **Neither can Tom.**

○ A: **I won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
B: **Neither will I.**

○ A: **I never go** to the cinema.
B: **Neither do I.**

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):

○ A: I'm not married.
B: **Nor am I.** *or* **Neither am I.**

Remember: So **am I** (*not* So I am), Neither **have I** (*not* Neither I have).

I am / I don't etc. ➜ **Unit 40**

Exercises

42.1 Write **too** or **either**.

1	I'm happy.	I'm happy too .
2	I'm not hungry.	I'm not hungry ………… .
3	I'm going out.	I'm going out ………… .
4	It rained on Saturday.	It rained on Sunday ………… .
5	Rachel can't drive a car.	She can't ride a bike ………… .
6	I don't like shopping.	I don't like shopping ………… .
7	Emma's mother is a teacher.	Her father is a teacher ………… .

42.2 Answer with **So … I** (**So am I** / **So do I** / **So can I** etc.).

1	I went to bed late last night.	So did I.
2	I'm thirsty.	…………
3	I've just eaten.	…………
4	I need a holiday.	…………
5	I'll be late tomorrow.	…………
6	I was very tired this morning.	…………

Answer with **Neither … I**.

7	I can't go to the party.	…………
8	I didn't phone Alex last night.	…………
9	I haven't got any money	…………
10	I'm not going out tomorrow.	…………
11	I don't know what to do.	…………

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use **So … I** or **Neither … I**. Look at these examples carefully:

I'm tired today. You can answer: So am I. or I'm not.

I don't work hard. You can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

	Maria	You
1	I'm learning English.	…………
2	I can ride a bike.	…………
3	I'm not American.	…………
4	I like cooking.	…………
5	I don't like cold weather.	…………
6	I slept well last night.	…………
7	I've never run a marathon.	…………
8	I don't use my phone much.	…………
9	I'm going out tomorrow evening.	…………
10	I haven't been to Scotland.	…………
11	I didn't watch TV last night.	…………
12	I go to the cinema a lot.	…………

Unit 43

isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

A

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences:

positive	→ *negative*	
am	**am not** (**'m not**)	☐ I**'m not** tired.
is	**is not** (**isn't** *or* **'s not**)	☐ It **isn't** (*or* It**'s not**) raining.
are	**are not** (**aren't** *or* **'re not**)	☐ They **aren't** (*or* They**'re not**) here.
was	**was not** (**wasn't**)	☐ Julian **wasn't** hungry.
were	**were not** (**weren't**)	☐ The shops **weren't** open.
have	**have not** (**haven't**)	☐ I **haven't** finished my work.
has	**has not** (**hasn't**)	☐ Sue **hasn't** got a car.
will	**will not** (**won't**)	☐ We **won't** be here tomorrow.
can	**cannot** (**can't**)	☐ George **can't** drive.
could	**could not** (**couldn't**)	☐ I **couldn't** sleep last night.
must	**must not** (**mustn't**)	☐ I **mustn't** forget to phone Jane.
should	**should not** (**shouldn't**)	☐ You **shouldn't** work so hard.
would	**would not** (**wouldn't**)	☐ I **wouldn't** like to be an actor.

B

don't/doesn't/didn't

present simple negative	I/we/you/they	**do not** (**don't**)	**work**/**live**/**go** etc.
	he/she/it	**does not** (**doesn't**)	
past simple negative	I/they/he/she etc.	**did not** (**didn't**)	

positive	→	*negative*
I **want** to go out.	→	I **don't want** to go out.
They **work** hard.	→	They **don't work** hard.
Lisa **plays** the guitar.	→	Lisa **doesn't play** the guitar.
My father **likes** his job.	→	My father **doesn't like** his job.
I **got** up early this morning.	→	I **didn't get** up early this morning.
They **worked** hard yesterday.	→	They **didn't work** hard yesterday.
We **played** tennis.	→	We **didn't play** tennis.
Emily **had** dinner with us.	→	Emily **didn't have** dinner with us.

Don't ...

Look!	→	**Don't look!**
Wait for me.	→	**Don't wait** for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do** / **doesn't do** / **didn't do**):

Do something!	→	**Don't do** anything!
Sue **does** a lot at weekends.	→	Sue **doesn't do** much at weekends.
I **did** what you said.	→	I **didn't do** what you said.

present simple (negative) ➜ Unit 6 past simple (negative) ➜ Unit 12
don't look / **don't wait** etc. ➜ Unit 35 **Why isn't/don't** ... ? ➜ Unit 44

Exercises

43.1 **Make these sentences negative.**

1 He's gone away. He hasn't gone away.
2 They're married. ....
3 I've had dinner. ....
4 It's cold today. ....
5 We'll be late. ....
6 You should go. ....

43.2 **Make these sentences negative. Use don't/doesn't/didn't.**

1 She saw me. She didn't see me.
2 I like cheese. ....
3 They understood. ....
4 He lives here. ....
5 Go away! ....
6 I did the shopping. ....

43.3 **Make these sentences negative.**

1 She can swim. She can't swim.
2 They've arrived. ....
3 I went to the bank. ....
4 He speaks German. ....
5 We were angry. ....
6 He'll be pleased. ....
7 Call me tonight. ....
8 It rained yesterday. ....
9 I could hear them. ....
10 I believe you. ....

43.4 **Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't etc.).**

1 They aren't rich. They haven't got much money.
2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I .... hungry.'
3 I .... find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4 Steve .... go to the cinema much. He prefers to watch DVDs at home.
5 We can walk to the station from here. It .... very far.
6 'Where's Jane?' 'I .... know. I .... seen her today.'
7 Be careful! .... fall!
8 We went to a restaurant last night. I .... like the food very much.
9 I've been to Japan many times, but I .... been to Korea.
10 Julia .... be here tomorrow. She's going away.
11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I .... do it.'
12 We didn't see what happened. We .... looking at the time.
13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she .... worn it yet.
14 You .... drive so fast. It's dangerous.

43.5 **You ask Gary some questions. He answers 'Yes' or 'No'. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.**

You	Gary		
Are you married?	No.	1	He isn't married.
Do you live in London?	Yes.	2	He lives in London.
Were you born in London?	No.	3	....
Do you like London?	No.	4	....
Would you like to live in the country?	Yes.	5	....
Can you drive?	Yes.	6	....
Have you got a car?	No.	7	....
Do you read newspapers?	No.	8	....
Are you interested in politics?	No.	9	....
Do you watch TV most evenings?	Yes.	10	....
Did you watch TV last night?	No.	11	....
Did you go out last night?	Yes.	12	....

Unit 44

is it … ? have you … ? do they … ? etc. (questions 1)

A

positive	**you**	**are**	**You are** eating.	
question	**are**	**you**	**Are you** eating?	What **are you** eating?

In questions, the first verb (**is**/**are**/**have** etc.) is before the subject:

positive			*question*	
subject + verb			*verb + subject*	
I	**am** late.	→	**Am**	**I** late?
That seat	**is** free.	→	**Is**	**that seat** free?
She	**was** angry.	→	Why **was**	**she** angry?
David	**has** gone.	→	Where **has**	**David** gone?
You	**have** got a car.	→	**Have**	**you** got a car?
They	**will** be here soon.	→	When **will**	**they** be here?
Paula	**can** swim.	→	**Can**	**Paula** swim?

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where **has David** gone? (*not* Where has gone David?)
- **Are those people** waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting … ?)
- When **was the telephone** invented? (*not* When was invented … ?)

B

do … **?** / **does** … **?** / **did** … **?**

present simple questions	**do** **does**	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**work**/**live**/**go** etc. … ?
past simple questions	**did**	I/they/he/she etc.	

positive		*question*
They **work** hard.	→	**Do** they **work** hard?
You **watch** television.	→	How often **do** you **watch** television?
Chris **works** hard.	→	**Does** Chris **work** hard?
She **gets up** early.	→	What time **does** she **get** up?
They **worked** hard.	→	**Did** they **work** hard?
You **had** dinner.	→	What **did** you **have** for dinner?
She **got** up early.	→	What time **did** she **get** up?

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you **do** / did he **do** etc.):

- What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- A: What **does** your brother **do**?
  B: He works in a bank.
- A: I broke my finger last week.
  B: How **did** you **do** that? (*not* How did you that?)

C

Why isn't … **?** / **Why don't** … **?** etc. (**Why** + *negative*):

- Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- **Why can't Paula** come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Paula can't … ?)
- **Why didn't you** phone me last night?

present simple questions ➜ **Unit 7** past simple questions ➜ **Unit 12** questions 2–3 ➜ **Units 45–46**
what/which/how ➜ **Units 47–48**

Exercises

44.1 Write questions.

1 I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2 I work hard. (and Jack?) Does Jack work hard?
3 I was late this morning. (and you?) ....
4 I've got a key. (and Kate?) ....
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?) ....
6 I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?) ....
7 I like my job. (and you?) ....
8 I live near here. (and Nicola?) ....
9 I enjoyed the film. (and you?) ....
10 I had a good holiday. (and you?) ....

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

	You	
1	(have / a car?) Have you got a car?	Yes, I have.
2	(use / a lot?) .... it	Yes, nearly every day.
3	(use / yesterday?)	Yes, to go to work.
4	(enjoy driving?)	Not very much.
5	(a good driver?)	I think I am.
6	(ever / have / an accident?)	No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1 (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3 (the children / what / are / doing?) What ....
4 (made / is / how / cheese?) ....
5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) ....
6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) ....
7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) ....
8 (leave / what time / your train / does?) ....
9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?) ....
10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) ....

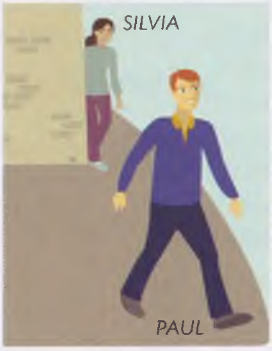
44.4 Complete the questions.

1	I want to go out.	Where do you want to go?
2	Kate and Paul aren't going to the party.	Why aren't they going?
3	I'm reading.	What ....
4	Sue went to bed early.	What time ....
5	My parents are going on holiday.	When ....
6	I saw Tom a few days ago.	Where ....
7	I can't come to the party.	Why ....
8	Tina has gone away.	Where ....
9	I need some money.	How much ....
10	Angela doesn't like me.	Why ....
11	It rains sometimes.	How often ....
12	I did the shopping.	When ....

Unit 45

Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)

A



Silvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?
Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

Who **did** Silvia **see?**
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Silvia saw Paul

subject

Somebody saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?

Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

who is the *subject*
Paul is the *object*

object

Silvia saw somebody.

Who did Silvia see?

Paul. (She saw Paul.)

who is the *object*
Silvia is the *subject*

B

In these questions, **who**/**what** is the *subject*:

○ **Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
(*not* Who does live?)
○ **What happened?** (= something happened – what?)
(*not* What did happen?)
○ **What's happening?** (What's = What **is**)
○ **Who's got** my key? (Who's = Who **has**)

In these questions, **who**/**what** is the *object*:

○ Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody – who?)
○ What did **Paul** say? (= **Paul** said something – what?)
○ Who are **you** phoning?
○ What was **Silvia** wearing?

Compare:

○ George likes oranges. → **Who likes** oranges? – George.
What does George like? – Oranges.

○ Jane won a new car. → **Who won** a new car? – Jane.
What did Jane win? – A new car.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):

○ **Who** is your favourite **singer**?
○ **What** is your favourite **song**?

questions → Units 44, 46 what/which/how → Unit 47

Exercises

45.1 Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who/what** is the subject.

1	Somebody broke the window.	*Who broke the window?*
2	Something fell off the shelf.	What
3	Somebody wants to see you.	me?
4	Somebody took my umbrella.	
5	Something made me ill.	
6	Somebody is coming.	

45.2 Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

1	I bought something.	*What did you buy?*
2	Somebody lives in this house.	*Who lives in this house?*
3	I phoned somebody.	
4	Something happened last night.	
5	Somebody knows the answer.	
6	Somebody did the washing-up.	
7	Jane did something.	
8	Something woke me up.	
9	Somebody saw the accident.	
10	I saw somebody.	
11	Somebody has got my pen.	
12	This word means something.	

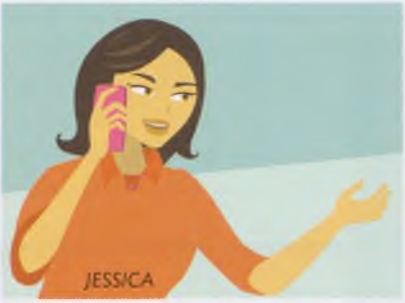
45.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1	I lost **XXXXX** yesterday, but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.	*What did you lose?* *Who found it?*
2	**XXXXX** phoned me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.	Who What
3	I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.	
4	I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.	
5	I met **XXXXX** on my way home this evening. She told me **XXXXX**.	
6	Steve and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game we **XXXXX**.	
7	It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.	

Unit
46

Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A



Jessica is talking to somebody.

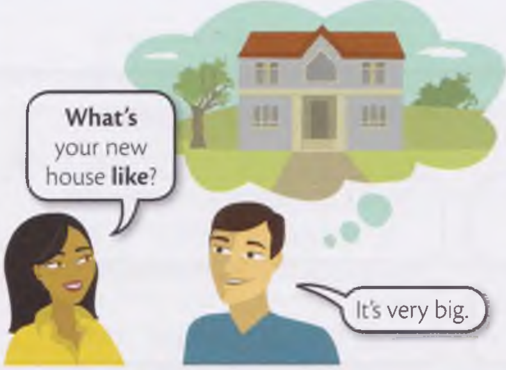
Who is she talking **to**?

In questions beginning **Who** ... **?** / **What** ... **?** / **Where** ... **?** / **Which** ... **?**, prepositions (**to**/**from**/**with** etc.) usually go at the end:

- '**Where** are you **from**?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'Jack was afraid.' '**What** was he afraid **of**?'
- '**Who** do these books belong **to**?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' '**Which hospital** is he **in**?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' '**Who with**?' / '**Who** is she going **with**?'
- 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about**?'

B

What's it like? / **What are they like?** etc.


What's your new house **like**?
It's very big.

What'**s** it like? = What **is** it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say '**What is it like?**', **like** is a *preposition*. It is not the verb **like** ('**Do** you **like** your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
  B: **What's** it **like**? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Nicola's parents yesterday.
  B: Did you? **What** are they **like**?
  A: They're very nice.
- A: Did you have a good holiday? **What** was the weather **like**?
  B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.

questions 1–2 ➔ Units 44–45 **what**/**which**/**how** ➔ Unit 47 prepositions ➔ Units 103–113

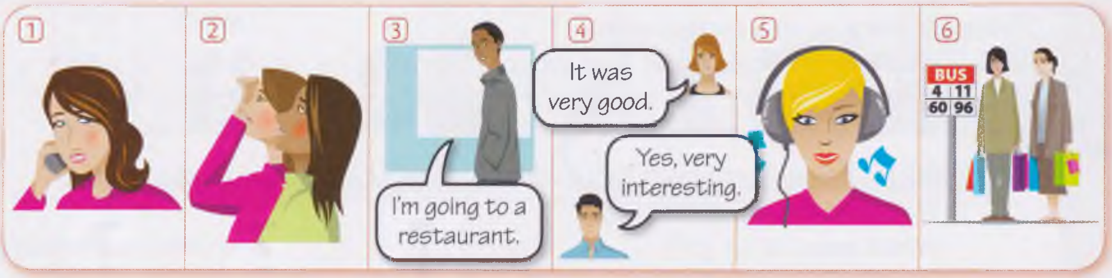
Exercises

46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1	The letter is from **XXXXX**.	Who is the letter from?
2	I'm looking for a **XXXXX**.	What .... you ....
3	I went to the cinema with **XXXXX**.	
4	The film was about **XXXXX**.	
5	I gave the money to **XXXXX**.	
6	The book was written by **XXXXX**.	

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

go **listen** **look** ~~**talk**~~ **talk** **wait**



1 Who is she talking to?
2 What .... they ....
3 Which restaurant ....
4 What ....
5 What ....
6 Which bus ....

46.3 Write questions beginning **Which ... ?**

1	Tom's father is in hospital.	Which hospital is he in?
2	We stayed at a hotel.	.... you ....
3	Jack plays for a football team.	
4	I went to school in this town.	

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

1 (the roads) What are the roads like?
2 (the food) ....
3 (the people) ....
4 (the weather) ....

46.5 Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
What was the weather like?

2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
....

3 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
....

4 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
....

Unit 47

What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ? (questions 4)

A

What + *noun* (**What colour** ... **?** / **What kind** ... **?** etc.)

☐ **What colour** is your car?
☐ **What size** is this shirt?
☐ **What time** is it?
☐ **What kind** of job do you want?
(*or* **What type** of job ... ? / **What sort** of job ... ?)
☐ **What colour** are your eyes?
☐ **What make** is your TV?
☐ **What day** is it today?

What without a noun:

☐ **What**'s your favourite colour?
☐ **What** do you want to do tonight?

B

Which + *noun* (things or people):

☐ **Which train** did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
☐ **Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people:

☐ **Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use **who** for people (without a noun):

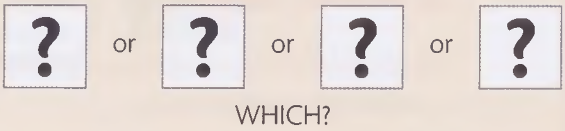
☐ **Who** is taller – Joe or Gary? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or **which**?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):

☐ We can go this way or that way.
Which way shall we go?
☐ There are four umbrellas here.
Which is yours?



What is more general:

☐ **What**'s the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
☐ **What sort** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

☐ **What colour** are his eyes? (*not* Which colour?)
Which colour do you prefer, **pink or yellow**?
☐ **What** is the longest river in the world?
Which is the longest river – **the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile**?

D

How ... **?**

☐ '**How** was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
☐ '**How** do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often** etc.):

'**How**	**tall** are you?'	'I'm 1 metre 70.'
	big is the house?'	'Not very big.'
	old is your mother?'	'She's 45.'
	far is it from here to the airport?'	'Five kilometres.'
	often do you use your car?'	'Every day.'
	long have they been married?'	'Ten years.'
	much was the meal?'	'Thirty pounds.'

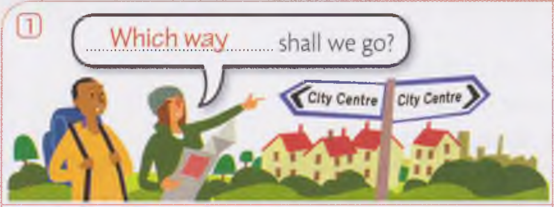
questions ➜ **Units 44–46** **How long does it take?** ➜ **Unit 48** **which one(s)** ➜ **Unit 75**

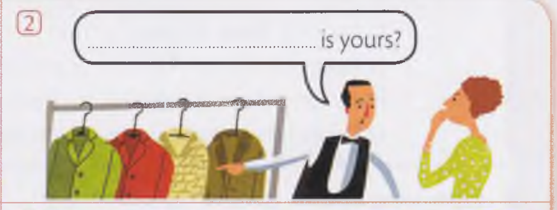
Exercises

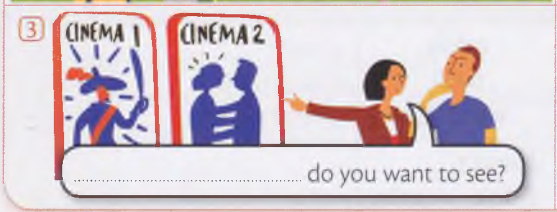
47.1 Write questions with **what**.

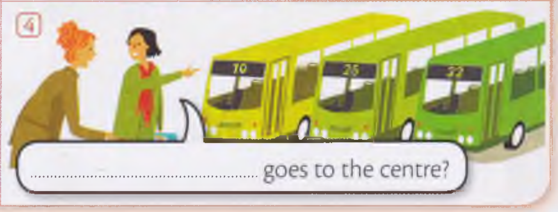
1	I've got a new TV.	(make?)	What make is it?
2	I want a job.	(kind?)	What kind of job do you want?
3	I bought a new sweater.	(colour?)	What ......
4	I got up early this morning.	(time?)	...... get up?
5	I like music.	(type?)	......
6	I want to buy a car.	(kind?)	......

47.2 Complete the questions. Use **Which ... ?**









47.3 Write **what/which/who**.

1 What is that man's name?
2 Which way shall we go? Left or right?
3 You can have tea or coffee. ...... do you prefer?
4 '...... day is it today?' 'Friday.'
5 This is a nice office. ...... desk is yours?
6 ...... is your favourite sport?
7 ...... is more expensive, meat or fish?
8 ...... is older, Liz or Steve?
9 ...... kind of camera have you got?
10 A: I have three cameras.
B: ...... camera do you use most?
11 ...... nationality are you?

47.4 Complete the questions with **How** + adjective or adverb (**high/long** etc.).

1	How high is Mount Everest?	Nearly 9000 metres.
2	...... is it to the station?	It's about two kilometres from here.
3	...... is Helen?	She's 26.
4	...... do the buses run?	Every ten minutes.
5	...... is the water in the pool?	Two metres.
6	...... have you lived here?	Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with **How ... ?**

1 Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80? How tall are you?
2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? ......
3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25? ......
4 Did you spend £20? £30? £50? ......
5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
......
6 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?
......

Unit
48

How long does it take ... ?

A

How long does it take from ... to ... ?

New York
1 hour
Washington

How long **does it take** by plane from New York to Washington?

It takes an hour.

☐ How long **does it take** by train from London to Manchester?
☐ **It takes** two hours by train from London to Manchester.
☐ How long **does it take** by car from your house to the station?
☐ **It takes** ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

B

How long does it take to do something?

How long	**does** **did** **will**	**it take to** ... ?

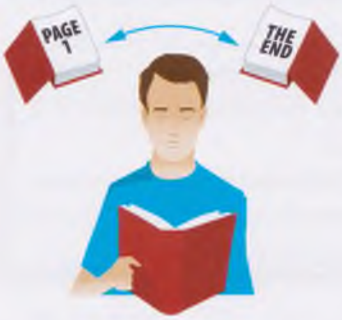
It	**takes** **took** **will take**		a week a long time three hours	**to** ...
	doesn't **didn't** **won't**	**take**	long	

☐ How long **does it take to cross** the Atlantic by ship?
☐ 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long **did it take** (**to get** here)?'
☐ How long **will it take to get** from here to the hotel?

☐ **It takes** a long time **to learn** a language.
☐ **It doesn't take** long **to cook** an omelette.
☐ **It won't take** long **to fix** the computer.

C

How long does it take you to do something?



How long	**does** **did** **will**	**it take**	you Tom them	**to** ... ?

It	**takes** **took** **will take**	me Tom them	a week a long time three hours	**to** ...

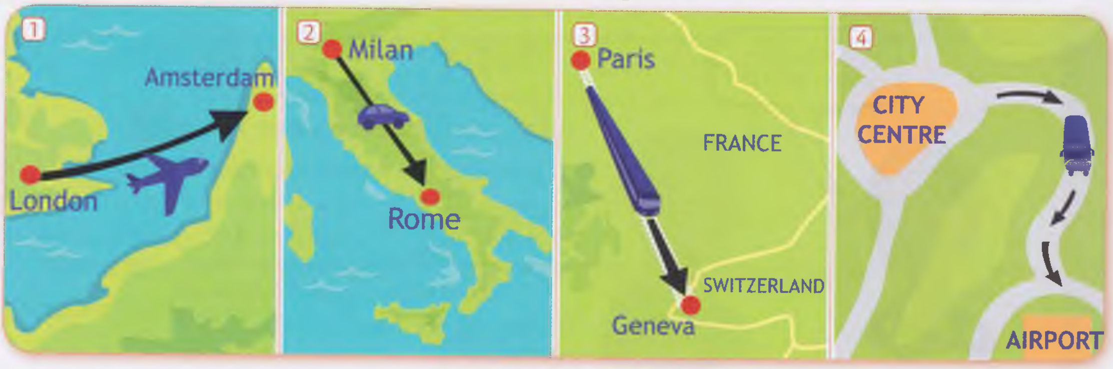
I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It **took me** three days **to read** it.

☐ How long **will it take me to learn** to drive?
☐ **It takes Tom** 20 minutes **to get** to work in the morning.
☐ **It took us** an hour **to do** the shopping.
☐ **Did it take you** a long time **to find** a job?
☐ **It will take me** an hour **to cook** dinner.

Exercises

48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with **How long ... ?**



1 How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2
3
4

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1 fly from your city/country to London
It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.
2 fly from your city/country to New York

3 study to be a doctor in your country

4 walk from your home to the nearest shop

5 get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with **How long did it take ... ?**

1 (Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?
2 (I walked to the station.) .... you ....
3 (Tom painted the bathroom.)
4 (I learnt to ski.)
5 (They repaired the car.)

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It took ... .**

1 I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
It took me three days to read the book.
2 We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.

3 I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.

4 Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 7 o'clock and got to London at 10.

5 Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.

6 *Write a sentence about yourself.*

Unit 49

Do you know where ... ?
I don't know what ... etc

A

Do you know where Paula is?

We say: Where **is** **Paula**?

but **Do you know** where **Paula is**?
(*not* Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know I don't know Can you tell me	where **Paula is**.

Compare:

Who **are those people**?	*but*	**Do you know** **Can you tell me**	who **those people are**	?
How old **is Nicola**?			how old **Nicola is**	
What time **is it**?			what time **it is**	
Where **can I** go?			where **I can** go	
How much **is this camera**?		**I know** **I don't know** **I don't remember**	how much **this camera is**	.
When **are you** going away?			when **you're** going away	
Where **have they** gone?			where **they have** gone	
What **was Kate** wearing?			what **Kate was** wearing	

B

Questions with **do**/**does**/**did** (*present simple* and *past simple*)

Where **does he live**?

but **Do you know** where **he lives**? (*not* Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do airplanes** fly?	*but*	**Do you know**	how **airplanes fly**	?
What **does Jane** want?		**I don't know**	what **Jane wants**	.
Why **did she** go home?		**I don't remember**	why **she went** home	
Where **did I** put the key?		**I know**	where **I put** the key	

C

Questions beginning **Is** ... **?** / **Do** ... **?** / **Can** ... **?** etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?	*but*	**Do you know**	**if** *or* **whether**	**Jack is** at home	?
Have they got a car?				**they've got** a car	
Can Ben swim?				**Ben can** swim	
Do they live near here?		**I don't know**		**they live** near here	.
Did anybody see you?				**anybody saw** you	

You can use **if** *or* **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or*
  Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or*
  I don't know **whether** anybody saw me.

Exercises

49.1 Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why ...** etc.

1 Have your friends gone home? (where) I don't know where they've gone.
2 Is Kate in her office? (where) I don't know ……
3 Is the castle very old? (how old) ……
4 Will Paul be here soon? (when) ……
5 Was he angry because I was late? (why) ……
6 Has Emily lived here a long time? (how long) ……

49.2 Complete the sentences.

1 (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know how airplanes fly ?
2 (Where does Susan work?) I don't know …… .
3 (What did Peter say?) Do you remember …… ?
4 (Why did he go home early?) I don't know …… .
5 (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know …… ?
6 (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember. …… .

49.3 Which is right?

1 Do you know what time ~~is it~~ / it is? (Do you know what time it is? *is right*)
2 Why are you / you are going away?
3 I don't know where are they / they are going.
4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5 Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7 I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

49.4 Write questions with **Do you know if ... ?**

1 (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they've got a car?
2 (Are they married?) Do you know ……
3 (Does Sue know Bill?) ……
4 (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) ……
5 (Did he pass his exam?) ……

49.5 Write questions beginning **Do you know ... ?**

1 (What does Laura want?) Do you know what Laura wants?
2 (Where is Paula?) Do ……
3 (Is she working today?) ……
4 (What time does she start work?) ……
5 (Are the shops open tomorrow?) ……
6 (Where do Sarah and Jack live?) ……
7 (Did they go to Jane's party?) ……

49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

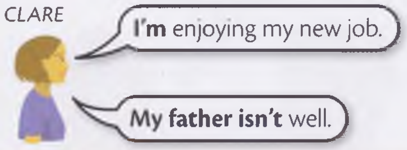
1 Do you know why the bus was late ?
2 Do you know what time …… ?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where …… ?
4 I don't know what …… .
5 Do you know if …… ?
6 Do you know how much …… ?

Unit 50 She said that … He told me that …

A

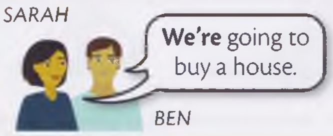
Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:


CLARE
I'm enjoying my new job.
My father isn't well.

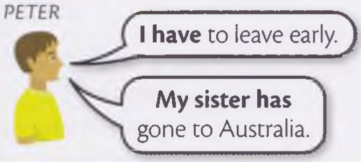
am
is → **was**

- ○ Clare said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
- ○ She said that **her father wasn't** well.


SARAH
We're going to buy a house.
BEN

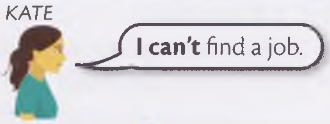
are → **were**

- ○ Sarah and Ben said that **they were** going to buy a house.


PETER
I have to leave early.
My sister has gone to Australia.

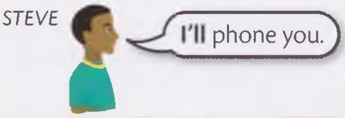
have
has → **had**

- ○ Peter said that **he had** to leave early.
- ○ He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.


KATE
I can't find a job.

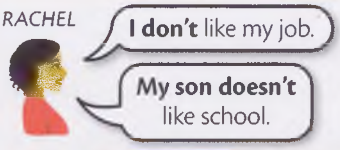
can → **could**

- ○ Kate said that **she couldn't** find a job.


STEVE
I'll phone you.

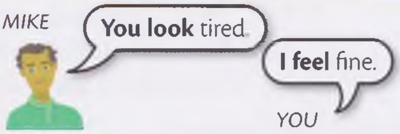
will → **would**

- ○ Steve said that **he would** phone me.


RACHEL
I don't like my job.
My son doesn't like school.

do
does → **did**

- ○ Rachel said that **she didn't** like her job.
- ○ She said that **her son didn't** like school.


MIKE
You look tired.
I feel fine.
YOU

look → **looked**
feel → **felt**
etc. etc.
(present) *(past)*

- ○ Mike said that **I looked** tired.
- ○ I said that **I felt** fine.

B

say and **tell**

say (→ **said**)

- ○ He **said** that he was tired.
  (*not* He said me)
- ○ What did she **say to** you?
  (*not* say you)

We say **he said to me**, **I said to Ann** etc.
(*not* 'he said me', 'I said Ann').

tell (→ **told**)

- ○ He **told me** that he was tired.
  (*not* He told that)
- ○ What did she **tell you**?
  (*not* tell to you)

We say **he told me**, **I told Ann** etc.
(*not* 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann').

C

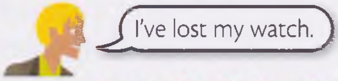
You can say:

- ○ He said **that** he was tired. *or* He said he was tired. (*without* that)
- ○ Kate told me **that** she couldn't find a job. *or* Kate told me she couldn't find a job.

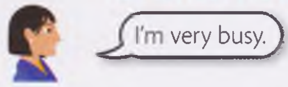
I told you to … ➜ **Unit 53**

Exercises

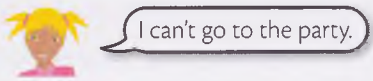
50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with **He/She/They said (that) …** .

1 
I've lost my watch.

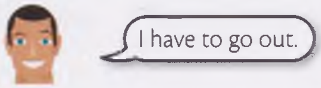
He said he had lost his watch.

2 
I'm very busy.

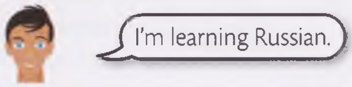
....

3 
I can't go to the party.

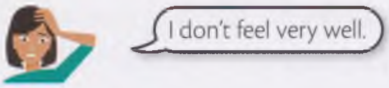
....

4 
I have to go out.

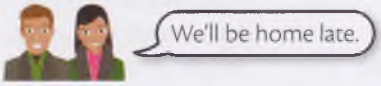
....

5 
I'm learning Russian.

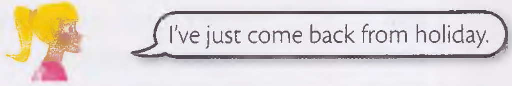
....

6 
I don't feel very well.

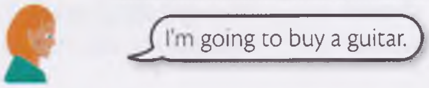
....

7 
We'll be home late.

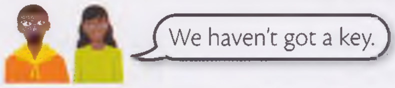
....

8 
I've just come back from holiday.

....

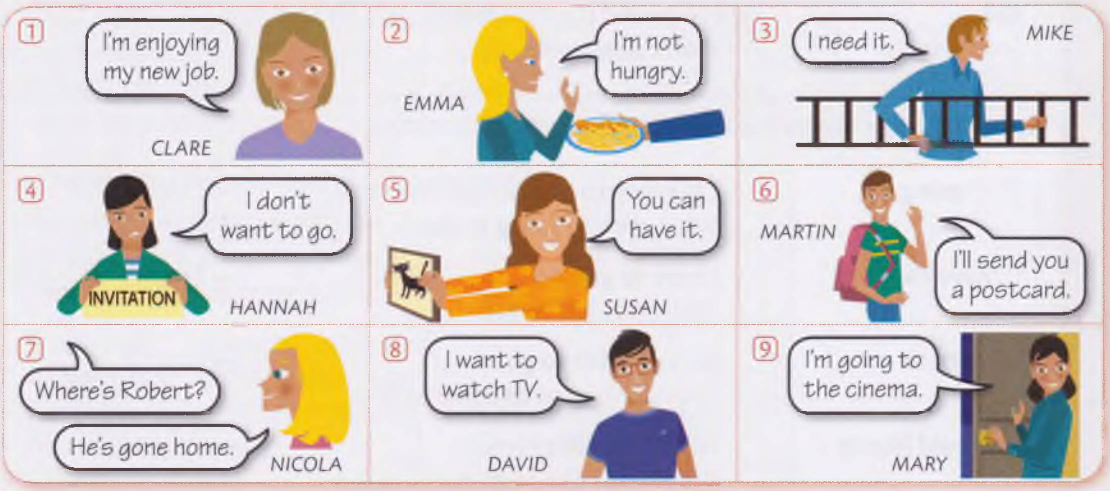
9 
I'm going to buy a guitar.

....

10 
We haven't got a key.

....

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.


1
I'm enjoying my new job.
CLARE
2
EMMA
I'm not hungry.
3
I need it.
MIKE
4
I don't want to go.
INVITATION
HANNAH
5
You can have it.
SUSAN
6
MARTIN
I'll send you a postcard.
7
Where's Robert?
He's gone home.
NICOLA
8
I want to watch TV.
DAVID
9
I'm going to the cinema.
MARY

1 I met Clare last week. She said she was enjoying her new job .
2 Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said ....
3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said ....
4 Hannah was invited to the party, but she said ....
5 Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said ....
6 Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said ....
7 I was looking for Robert. Nicola said ....
8 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said ....'
9 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said ....'

50.3 Write **say/said** or **tell/told**.

1 He said he was tired.
2 What did she tell you?
3 Anna .... she didn't like Peter.
4 Jack .... me that you were ill.
5 Please don't .... Dan what happened.
6 Did Lucy .... she would be late?
7 The woman .... she was a reporter.
8 The woman .... us she was a reporter.
9 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't .... them anything.
10 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't .... anything.

Unit
51

work/working go/going do/doing

A

work/go/be etc. (*infinitive*)

will/can/must etc. + *infinitive*:

will	☐ Anna **will be** here soon.	→ Units 27–28
shall	☐ **Shall** I **open** the window?	
might	☐ I **might phone** you later.	→ Unit 29
may	☐ **May** I **sit** here?	
can	☐ I **can't meet** you tomorrow.	→ Unit 30
could	☐ **Could** you **pass** the salt, please?	
must	☐ It's late. I **must go** now.	→ Unit 31
should	☐ You **shouldn't work** so hard.	→ Unit 32
would	☐ **Would** you **like** some coffee?	→ Unit 34

do/does/did + *infinitive*:

do/does (*present simple*)	☐ **Do** you **work**?	→ Units 6–7
	☐ They **don't work** very hard.	
	☐ Helen **doesn't know** many people.	
	☐ How much **does** it **cost**?	
did (*past simple*)	☐ What time **did** the train **leave**?	→ Unit 12
	☐ We **didn't sleep** well.	

B

to work / **to go** / **to be** etc. (**to** + *infinitive*)

(I'm) **going to** ...	☐ **I'm going to play** tennis tomorrow.	→ Unit 26
	☐ What **are** you **going to do**?	
(I) **have to** ...	☐ I **have to go** now.	→ Unit 33
	☐ Everybody **has to eat**.	
(I) **want to** ...	☐ Do you **want to go** out?	→ Unit 52
	☐ They don't **want to come** with us.	
(I) **would like to** ...	☐ **I'd like to talk** to you.	→ Unit 34
	☐ **Would** you **like to go** out?	
(I) **used to** ...	☐ Dave **used to work** in a factory.	→ Unit 36

C

working/going/playing etc.

am/is/are + **-ing** (*present continuous*)	☐ Please be quiet. **I'm working**.	→ Units 3–4, 8, 25
	☐ Tom **isn't working** today.	
	☐ What time **are** you **going** out?	
was/were + **-ing** (*past continuous*)	☐ It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.	→ Units 13–14
	☐ What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday?	

verbs + **to** ... and **-ing** (***I want to do* / *I enjoy doing***) ➜ **Unit 52**   **go** and **-ing** ➜ **Unit 55**

Exercises

51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: **... phone Paul** or **... to phone Paul.**

1 I'll ......phone Paul...... .
2 I'm going ......to phone Paul...... .
3 Can you .... Paul?
4 Shall I .... ?
5 I'd like ....
6 Do you have .... ?
7 You should ....
8 I want ....
9 I might ....
10 You must ....

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (**work/go** etc.) and sometimes you need **-ing** (**working/going** etc.).

do/doing
eat/eating
fly/flying
get/getting
go/going
listen/listening
~~sleep/sleeping~~
stay/staying
wait/waiting
watch/watching
wear/wearing
~~work/working~~

1 Please be quiet. I'm ......working...... .
2 I feel tired today. I didn't ......sleep...... very well last night.
3 What time do you usually .... up in the morning?
4 'Where are you ....?' 'To the office.'
5 Did you .... TV last night?
6 Look at that plane! It's .... very low.
7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not .... to it.
8 They didn't .... anything because they weren't hungry.
9 My friends were .... for me when I arrived.
10 'Does Susan always .... glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
11 'What are you .... tonight?' 'I'm .... at home.'

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (work/go etc.) or
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or
-ing (working/going etc.)

1 Shall I ......open...... the window? (open)
2 It's late. I have ......to go...... now. (go)
3 Amanda isn't ......working...... this week. She's on holiday. (work)
4 I'm tired. I don't want .... out. (go)
5 It might ...., so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6 What time do you have .... tomorrow morning? (leave)
7 I'm sorry I can't .... you. (help)
8 My brother is a student. He's .... physics. (study)
9 Would you like .... on a trip round the world? (go)
10 When you saw Maria, what was she .... ? (wear)
11 When you go to London, where are you going .... ? (stay)
12 I'm hungry. I must .... something to eat. (have)
13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's .... a bath.' (have)
14 I used .... a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't .... him. (hear)
16 You don't look well. I don't think you should .... to work today. (go)
17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't .... to him. (listen)
18 I missed the bus and had .... home. (walk)
19 I want .... what happened. (know) You must .... me. (tell)
20 May I .... this book? (borrow)

Unit
52

to … (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A

verbs + **to** … (**I want to do**)

want
hope
need
plan
expect
promise
decide
offer
refuse
try
forget
learn

+ **to** … (**to do** / **to work** / **to be** etc.)

- ☐ What do you **want to do** this evening?
- ☐ It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- ☐ Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- ☐ You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- ☐ My brother is **learning to drive**.
- ☐ I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

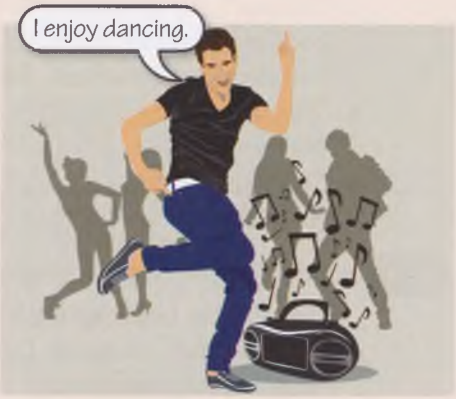
B

verbs + **-ing** (**I enjoy doing**)

enjoy
mind
stop
finish
suggest

+ **-ing** (**doing** / **working** / **being** etc.)

- ☐ I **enjoy dancing**. (*not* enjoy to dance)
- ☐ I don't **mind getting** up early.
- ☐ Has it **stopped raining**?
- ☐ Sonia **suggested going** to the cinema.


I enjoy dancing.

C

verbs + **-ing** *or* **to** …

like
prefer
love
hate
start
begin
continue

+ **-ing** (**doing** etc.) *or* **to** … (**to do** etc.)

- ☐ Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- ☐ I **prefer travelling** by car. *or* I **prefer to travel** by car.
- ☐ Anna **loves dancing**. *or* Anna **loves to dance**.
- ☐ I **hate being** late. *or* I **hate to be** late.
- ☐ It **started raining**. *or* It **started to rain**.

D

would like to … etc.

would like
would prefer
would love
would hate

+ **to** … (**to do** / **to work** / **to be** etc.)

- ☐ Amy **would like to meet** you.
- ☐ I**'d love to go** to Australia. (I**'d** = I **would**)
- ☐ '**Would** you **like to sit** down?' 'No, I**'d prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- ☐ I like this apartment. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- ☐ I live in a small village. **I'd hate to live** in a big city.

would like ➜ **Unit 34** **I want you to** … ➜ **Unit 53** **go** + **-ing** ➜ **Unit 55** preposition + **-ing** ➜ **Unit 112**

Exercises

52.1 Put the verb in the right form, **to …** or **-ing**.

1 I enjoy dancing. (dance)
2 What do you want to do tonight? (do)
3 Bye! I hope .... you again soon. (see)
4 I learnt .... when I was five years old. (swim)
5 Have you finished .... the kitchen? (clean)
6 Where's Anna? I need .... her something. (ask)
7 Do you enjoy .... other countries? (visit)
8 The weather was nice, so I suggested .... for a walk by the river. (go)
9 Where's Ben? He promised .... here on time. (be)
10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind .... (wait)
11 What have you decided .... ? (do)
12 Dan was angry and refused .... to me. (speak)
13 I'm tired. I want .... to bed. (go)
14 I was very upset and started .... (cry)
15 I'm trying .... (work) Please stop .... (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using **to …** or **-ing**. Use these verbs:

~~go~~ go help lose rain read see send wait watch

1 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'No, but I'd love to go.'
2 Amy had a lot to do, so I offered .... her.
3 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect .... you.
4 Kate has a lot of books. She enjoys ....
5 This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate .... it.
6 Don't forget .... us a postcard when you're on holiday.
7 I'm not going out until it stops ....
8 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like .... to the beach?
9 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like .... TV.
10 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer .... a few minutes.'

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1	Do you usually get up early?	Yes, I like to get up early.
2	Do you ever go to museums?	Yes, I enjoy ....
3	Would you like to go to a museum now?	No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer .... to a restaurant.
4	Do you drive a lot?	No, I don't like ....
5	Have you ever been to New York?	No, but I'd love .... one day.
6	Do you often travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy ....
7	Shall we walk home or take a taxi?	I don't mind .... , but a taxi would be quicker.

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use **to …** or **-ing**.

1 I enjoy ....
2 I don't like ....
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like ....
4 When I'm on holiday, I like ....
5 I don't mind .... , but ....
6 I wouldn't like ....

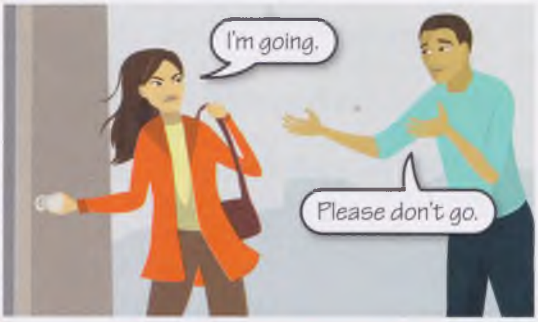
→ **Additional exercise 32** (page 268)

Unit
53

I want you to ... I told you to ...

A

I want you to ...


I'm going.
Please don't go.

The woman **wants to go**.

The man **doesn't want** the woman **to go**. He **wants** her **to stay**.

We say:

I want	**you** **somebody** **Sarah**	**to do** something

- I **want you to be** happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- Do you **want me to lend** you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way:

- **Would** you **like me to lend** you some money?

B

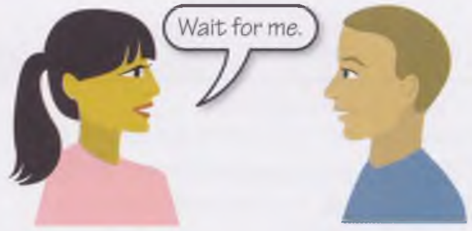
We also use this structure with:

ask
tell
advise
expect
persuade
teach

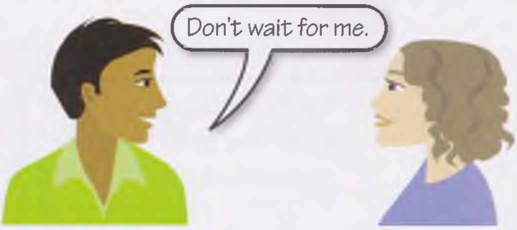
	verb +	somebody +	**to** ...	
Sue	**asked**	a friend	**to lend**	her some money.
I	**told**	you	**to be**	careful.
What do you	**advise**	me	**to do**?	
I didn't	**expect**	them	**to be**	here.
We	**persuaded**	Gary	**to come**	with us.
I	**am teaching**	my brother	**to swim**.	

C

I told you **to** ... / **I told** you **not to** ...



→ Jane **told** me **to wait** for her.



→ Paul **told** Sue **not to wait** for him.

D

make and **let**

After **make** and **let**, we do *not* use **to**:

- He's very funny. He **makes** me **laugh**. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher **made** us **work** very hard.
- I didn't have my phone with me, so Sue **let** me **use** hers. (*not* let me to use)

You can say **Let's** ... (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! **Let's dance**.
- 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.'

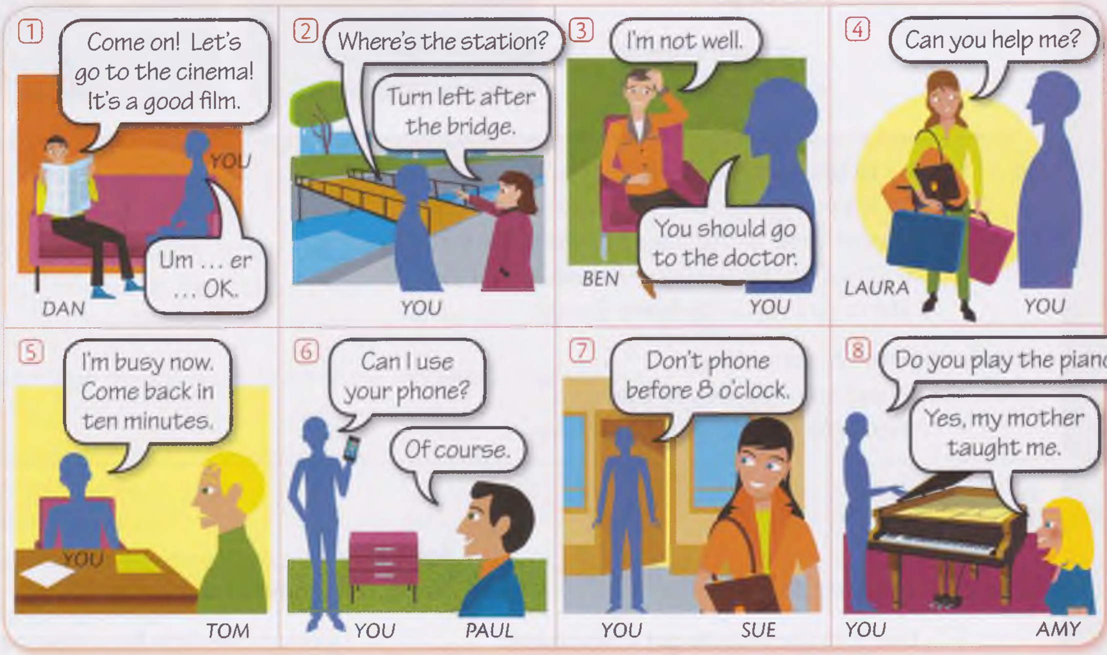
Let's ... ➜ **Unit 35** **He told me that** ... ➜ **Unit 50**

Exercises

53.1 Write sentences beginning **I want you … / I don't want you … / Do you want me … ?**

1 (you must come with me) I want you to come with me.
2 (listen carefully) I want ……
3 (please don't be angry) I don't ……
4 (shall I wait for you?) Do you ……
5 (don't call me tonight) ……
6 (you must meet Sarah) ……

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.


1
Come on! Let's go to the cinema! It's a good film.
Um … er … OK.
DAN
YOU
2
Where's the station?
Turn left after the bridge.
YOU
3
I'm not well.
You should go to the doctor.
BEN
YOU
4
Can you help me?
LAURA
YOU
5
I'm busy now. Come back in ten minutes.
YOU
TOM
6
Can I use your phone?
Of course.
YOU
PAUL
7
Don't phone before 8 o'clock.
YOU
SUE
8
Do you play the piano?
Yes, my mother taught me.
YOU
AMY

1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told ……
3 Ben wasn't well. I advised ……
4 Laura had a lot of luggage. She asked ……
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told ……
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let ……
7 Sue is going to call me later. I told ……
8 Amy's mother taught ……

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes **to** is necessary (**to go** / **to wait** etc.); sometimes **to** is not necessary (**go**/**wait** etc.).

arrive **borrow** **get** ~~**go**~~ **go** **make** **repeat** **tell** **think** **wait**

1 Please stay here. I don't want you to go yet.
2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her …… it.
3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's …… a few minutes.'
4 Are they already here? I expected them …… much later.
5 Kevin's parents didn't want him …… married.
6 I want to stay here. You can't make me …… with you.
7 'Is that your bike?' 'No, it's John's. He let me …… it.'
8 Rachel can't come to the party. She told me …… you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me …… some coffee?
10 'Kate doesn't like me.' 'What makes you …… that?'

Unit 54

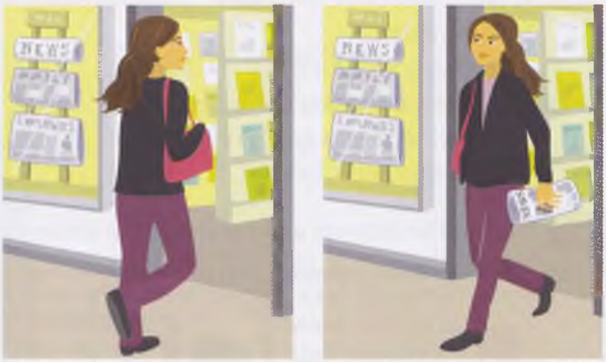
I went to the shop to …

A

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?
To get a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.



to … (**to get** / **to see** etc.) tells us *why* a person does something:

- 'Why are you going out?' '**To buy** some food.'
- Catherine went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I haven't got **time to watch** television.

B

to … and **for** …

to + *verb* (**to get** / **to see** etc.)	**for** + *noun* (**for a newspaper** / **for food** etc.)
I went to the shop **to get** a newspaper. (*not* for get)	I went to the shop **for a newspaper**.
They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.	They're going to Brazil **for a holiday**.
We need some money **to buy** food.	We need some money **for food**.

C

wait for … :

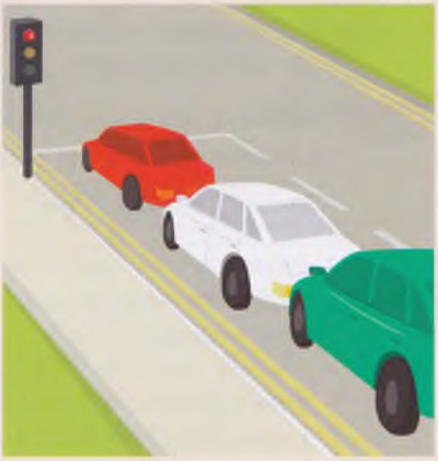
- Please **wait for** me.
- Are you **waiting for** the bus?

wait to (do something):

- Hurry up! I'm **waiting to go**.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to** … :

- The lights are red. You have to **wait for them to change**.
- Are you **waiting for the doctor to come**?



They're **waiting for the lights to change**.

go to … and **go for** … ➔ Unit 55 **something to eat** / **nothing to do** etc. ➔ Unit 79
enough + **to/for** … ➔ Unit 91 **too** + **to/for** … ➔ Unit 92

Exercises

54.1 *Write sentences beginning* ***I went to ...*** *. Choose from the boxes.*

a coffee shop **~~the station~~**
the chemist **the market**

+

buy some vegetables **get some medicine**
meet a friend **~~get a train ticket~~**

1 I went to the station to get a train ticket.
2 I went ......
3 ......
4 ......

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air **to read the newspaper** **to wake him up**
to open this door **to see who it was** **~~to watch the news~~**

1 I turned on the TV to watch the news.
2 Alice sat down in an armchair ....
3 Do I need a key ...... ?
4 I went for a walk by the river ....
5 I knocked on the door of David's room ....
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ....

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use **to ...** .

1 *I went to the shop* to get a newspaper.
2 I'm very busy. I don't have time ....
3 I called Amy ....
4 I'm going out ....
5 I borrowed some money ....

54.4 Write **to** or **for**.

1 I went out to get some bread.
2 We went to a restaurant ...... have dinner.
3 Robert wants to go to university ...... study economics.
4 I'm going to London ...... an interview next week.
5 I'm going to London ...... visit some friends of mine.
6 Do you have time ...... a cup of coffee?
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time ...... wash.
8 Everybody needs money ...... live.
9 We didn't have any money ...... a taxi, so we walked home.
10 The office is very small. There's space only ...... a desk and chair.
11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting ...... be served?
B: No, I'm already being served, thanks.

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

it / to arrive **you / tell me** **~~them / change~~** **the film / begin**

1 We stopped at the lights and waited for them to change.
2 I sat down in the cinema and waited ....
3 We called an ambulance and waited ....
4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting ....'

Unit 55

go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing

A

go to ... (**go to work** / **go to London** / **go to a concert** etc.)

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to China** next week.
- Sophie didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- 'Where's Tom?' 'He's **gone to bed**.'
- I **went to the dentist** yesterday.

go to sleep = start to sleep:

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

go home (without **to**)

- I'm **going home** now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on ...

go on	holiday a trip a tour a cruise strike

- We're **going on holiday** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**.
  (= they are refusing to work)

C

go for ...

go (somewhere) **for**	a walk a run a swim a drink a meal

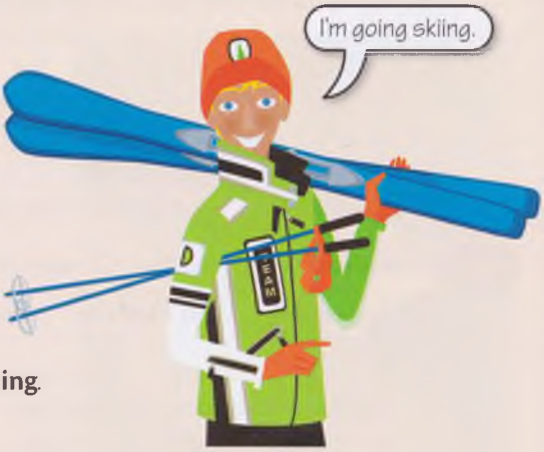
- 'Where's Emma?' 'She's **gone for a walk**.'
- Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- I met Chris in town, so we **went for coffee**.
- Shall we **go** out **for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + **-ing**

We use **go** + **-ing** for many sports (**swimming** / **skiing** etc.) and also **shopping**.

I **go** he is **going** we **went** they have **gone** she wants to **go**	**shopping** **swimming** **fishing** **sailing** **skiing** **jogging** etc.


I'm going skiing.

- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**.
  (*or* Let's **go for a** swim.)
- Richard has a small boat and he often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.

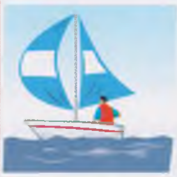
Exercises

55.1 Write **to/on/for** where necessary.

1 I'm going ...to... China next week.
2 Richard often goes ...–... sailing. *(no preposition)*
3 Sue went .... Mexico last year.
4 Jack goes .... jogging every morning.
5 I'm going out .... a walk. Do you want to come?
6 I'm tired because I went .... bed very late last night.
7 Mark is going .... holiday .... Italy next week.
8 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went .... a swim.
9 The taxi drivers went .... strike when I was in New York.
10 Let's go .... the cinema this evening.
11 It's late. I have to go .... home now.
12 Would you like to go .... a tour of the city?
13 Shall we go out .... dinner this evening?
14 My parents are going .... a cruise this summer.

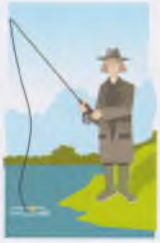
55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use **go/goes/going/went + -ing**.

① *often*



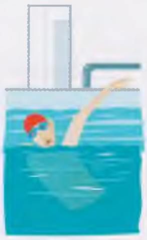
RICHARD

② *last Saturday*



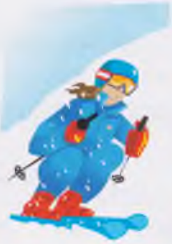
EMILY

③ *every day*



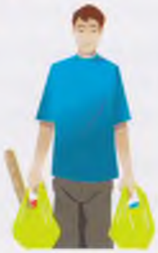
DAN

④ *next month*



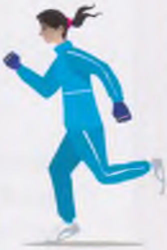
JESSICA

⑤ *later*



PETER

⑥ *yesterday*



SARAH

1 Richard has a boat. He often ...goes sailing... .
2 Last Saturday Emily went ....
3 Dan .... every day.
4 Jessica is going on holiday next month. She is ....
5 Peter is going out later. He has to ....
6 Sarah .... after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

~~a swim~~ **holiday** **Portugal** **shopping** **sleep**
a walk **home** **riding** **skiing** **university**

1 The water looks nice. Let's go ...for a swim... .
2 After leaving school, Tina went .... where she studied psychology.
3 I'm going .... now. I have to buy a few things.
4 I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went ....
5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went .... early.
6 We live near the mountains. In winter we go .... most weekends.
7 Robert has got a horse. He goes .... a lot.
8 The weather is nice. Shall we go .... along the river?
9 A: Are you going .... soon?
B: Yes, next month. We're going .... We've never been there before.

get

A

get + *noun* = receive, buy, find etc.

you **don't have** something → you **get** it → you **have** it

- ○ I **got** an email from Sam this morning. (= receive)
- ○ I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- ○ It's hard to **get** a job at the moment? (= find)
- ○ 'Is Lisa here?' 'Yes, I'll **get** her for you.'

also **get a bus** / **a train** / **a taxi** (= take a bus/train etc.):

- ○ 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I **got** the bus.'

B

get hungry / **get cold** / **get tired** etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become:

you're **not hungry** → you **get hungry** → you **are hungry**

- ○ If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- ○ Drink your coffee. It**'s getting cold**.
- ○ I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- ○ It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got** very **wet**.

also **get married**
get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

- ○ Nicola and Frank are **getting married** soon.
- ○ I got up and **got dressed** quickly.
- ○ We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

C

get to a place = arrive:

- ○ I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- ○ We left London at 10 o'clock and **got to Manchester** at 12.45.

get to

get here/there (without **to**):

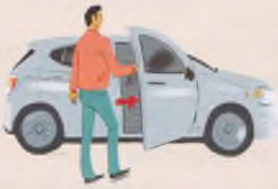
- ○ How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without **to**):

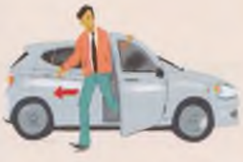
- ○ What time did you **get home** last night?

D

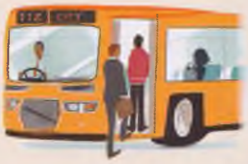
get in/out/on/off



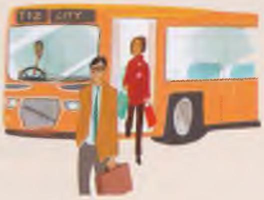
get in (a car)



get out (**of** a car)



get on



get off

(a bus / a train / a plane)

- ○ Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got **into** the car and ...)
- ○ A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but* A man got out **of the car**.)
- ○ We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** in Church Street.

get to → Unit 108 in/out/on/off → Units 110, 114 get up → Unit 114 get on → Appendix 6

Exercises

56.1 Complete these sentences. Use **get/gets** and choose from the box.

a doctor **a lot of rain** **a taxi** **~~my email~~** **the job**
a good salary **a new laptop** **a ticket** **some milk** **your boots**

1 Did you ....get my email.... ? I sent it a week ago.
2 Where did you .... ? They're very nice.
3 Quick! This man is ill. We need to ....
4 I don't want to walk home. Let's ....
5 Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he ....
6 When you go to the shop, can you .... ?
7 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can ....'
8 Helen has got a well-paid job. She ....
9 The weather is horrible here in winter. We ....
10 I'm going to .... The one I have is too slow.

56.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + these words:

~~cold~~ **dark** **late** **married** **ready**

1 Drink your coffee. It's ....getting cold.... .
2 Turn on the light. It's ....
3 'I'm .... next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
4 'Where's Karen?' 'She's .... to go out.'
5 It's .... It's time to go home.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get/gets/got** + these words:

angry **better** **~~hungry~~** **lost** **married** **old** **wet**

1 If you don't eat, you ....get hungry.... .
2 Don't go out in the rain. You'll ....
3 My brother .... last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4 Mark is always very calm. He never ....
5 We tried to find the hotel, but we ....
6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all ....
7 Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it ....
during the day.

56.4 Write sentences with **I left ...** and **got to ...** .

1 home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
....I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.....................................
2 London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
I left London at 10.15 and ....
3 the party / 11.15 → home / midnight
....
4 *Write a sentence about yourself.*
I left ....

56.5 Write **got in / got out of / got on / got off**.

1 Kate ....got in.... the car and drove away.
2 I .... the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3 Isabel .... the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4 I made a stupid mistake. I .... the wrong train.

Unit
57

do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

What are you **doing** this evening? (*not* What are you making?)

'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll **do** it.'

Rachel's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.

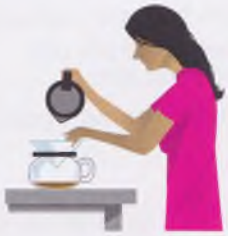
I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

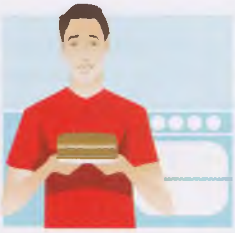
'What do you **do**?' 'I work in a bank.'

B

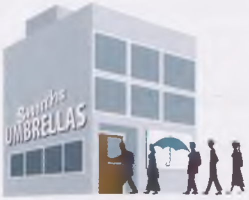
Make = produce/create. For example:



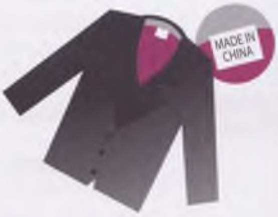
She's **making** coffee.



He has **made** a cake.



They **make** umbrellas.



It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.

A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do**

do	an exam / a test
	a course
	homework
	housework
	somebody a favour
	an exercise

I'm **doing my driving test** next week.

John has just **done a training course**.

Our children have to **do** a lot of **homework**.

I hate **doing housework**, especially cleaning.

Sue, could you **do me a favour**?

I go for a run and **do exercises** every morning.

also **do the shopping** / **do the washing** / **do the washing-up** / **do the ironing** / **do the cooking** etc.:

I **did the washing**, but I didn't **do the shopping**.

D

Expressions with **make**

make	a mistake
	an appointment
	a phone call
	a list
	a noise
	a bed

I'm sorry, I **made a mistake**.

I need to **make an appointment** to see the doctor.

Excuse me, I have to **make a phone call**.

Have you **made a shopping list**?

It's late. Don't **make a noise**.

Sometimes I forget to **make my bed** in the morning.

We say **make a film** *but* **take a photo** / **take a picture**:

When was **this film made**?

but When was **this photo taken**?

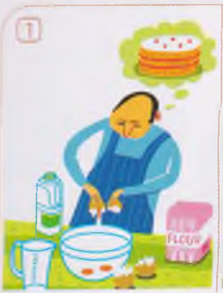
do/does/did (negatives and questions) → **Units 43–44** **make** somebody do something → **Unit 53**

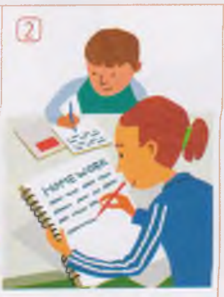
Exercises

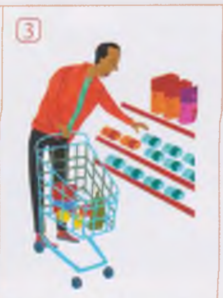
57.1 Write **make/making/made** or **do/doing/did/done**.

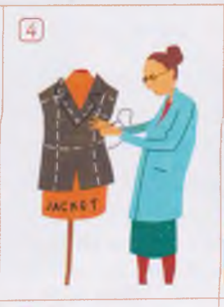
1 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll ...do... it.'
2 What did you .... at the weekend? Did you go away?
3 Do you know how to .... bread?
4 Paper is .... from wood.
5 *Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and .... nothing.*
6 'What do you ....?' 'I'm a doctor.'
7 *I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you .... it?*
8 'What do they .... in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
9 I'm .... some coffee. Would you like some?
10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't .... anything wrong.
11 'What are you .... tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

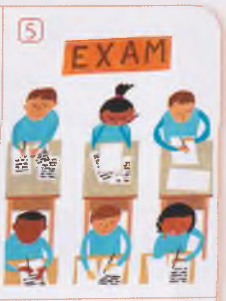
57.2 What are these people doing?

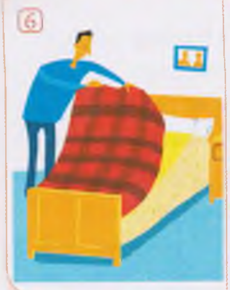


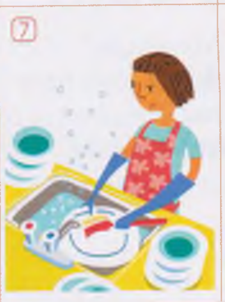


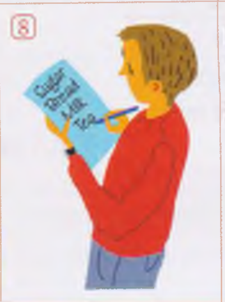


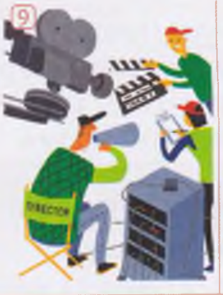


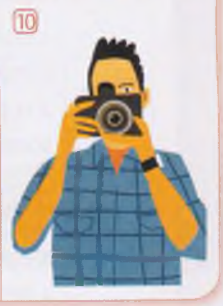












1 He's making a cake.
2 They ....
3 He ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....

57.3 Write **make** or **do** in the correct form.

1 I hate ...doing... housework, especially cleaning.
2 Why do you always .... the same mistake?
3 'Can you .... me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'
4 'Have you .... your homework?' 'Not yet.'
5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't .... an appointment.
6 I'm .... a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
7 The last time I .... an exam was ten years ago.
8 How many phone calls did you .... yesterday?
9 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can .... Exercise 2.
10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is .... a strange noise.
11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever ....
12 Let's .... a list of all the things we have to .... today.

Unit
58

have

A

have and **have got**

I have (something) or **I've got** (something) = it is mine:

- I **have** a new car. *or* I**'ve got** a new car.
- Sue **has** long hair. *or* Sue **has got** long hair.
- **Do** they **have** any children? *or* **Have** they **got** any children?
- Tom **doesn't have** a job. *or* Tom **hasn't got** a job.
- How much time **do** you **have**? *or* How much time **have** you **got**?

also

I **have** I**'ve got**	a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.) a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

- I **have** a headache. *or* I**'ve got** a headache.
- **Do** you **have** a cold? *or* **Have** you **got** a cold?

The past is **I had** (without **got**) / **I didn't have** / **Did you have**? etc. :

- When I first met Sue, she **had** short hair.
- He **didn't have** any money because he **didn't have** a job.
- **Did** you **have** enough time to do everything you wanted?

B

have breakfast / **have a shower** etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc. something to eat/drink

- 'Where's Lisa?' 'She**'s having** lunch.'
- I **don't** usually **have** breakfast.
- I **had** three cups of coffee this morning.
- '**Have** a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use **have** (*not* have got) in these expressions:

have	a bath / a shower a rest / a holiday / a party a nice time / a good trip / fun etc. a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.) a dream / an accident a baby a look (at something)

- I **had** a shower this morning.
- We**'re having** a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. **Have** a nice time!
- **Did** you **have** a good time in Tokyo?
- Sandra **has** just **had** a baby.
- Can I **have** a look at your magazine?

C

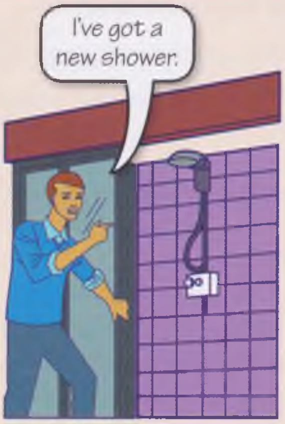
Compare:

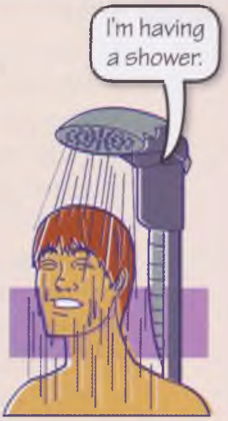
Have *or* **have got**

- I **have** / I**'ve got** a new shower. It's very good.

Have (*not* **have got**)

- I **have** a shower every morning.
  (*not* I**'ve got** a shower every morning)
- A: Where's Paul?
  B: He**'s having** a shower.
  (= he's washing now)


I've got a new shower.


I'm having a shower.

I have / I've got ➜ Unit 9 **I've** (**done**) (present perfect) ➜ Units 15–18 **I have to** ... ➜ Unit 33

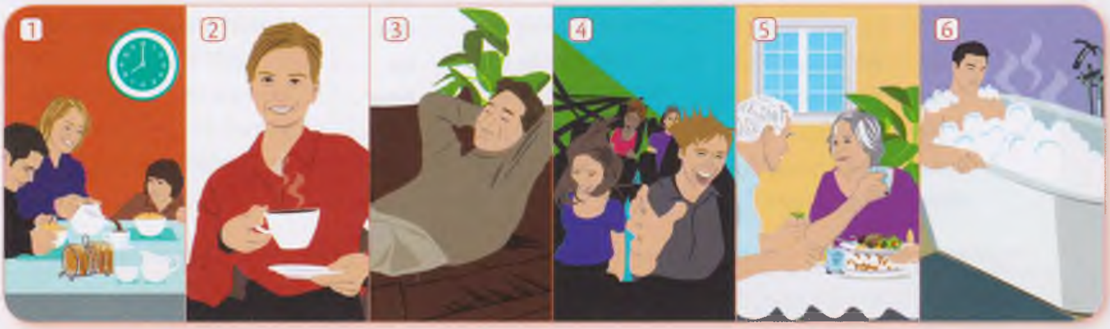
Exercises

58.1 Write the correct form of **have** or **have got**.

1 ......I didn't have...... time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2 '...Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have)...... a car?' 'No, she can't drive.' (Lisa / have?)
3 He can't open the door. .... a key. (he / not / have)
4 .... a cold last week. He's better now. (Gary / have)
5 What's wrong? .... a headache? (you / have?)
6 We wanted to go by taxi, but .... enough money. (we / not / have)
7 Laura is very busy. .... much free time. (she / not / have)
8 .... any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

a bath **~~breakfast~~** **a cup of tea** **dinner** **a good time** **a rest**



1 ...They're having breakfast...
2 She ....
3 He ....
4 They ....
5 ....
6 ....

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **have**.

1 Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
...Have a nice holiday!..
2 You meet Clare at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
...Did you have a good flight?..
3 Tom is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
....
4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
....
5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
....
6 Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
....
7 Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.
....

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have/had** and choose from the list.

an accident **a glass of water** **a look** **a walk** **~~a party~~** **something to eat**

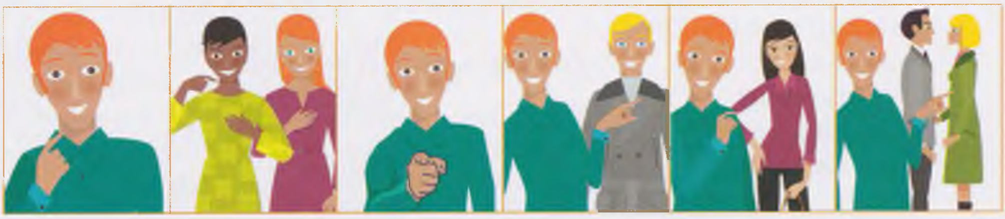
1 We ...had a party...... a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2 'Shall we .... ?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'
3 I was thirsty, so I ....
4 I like to get up early and .... before breakfast.
5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never ....
6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you .... at it?

Unit
59

I/me he/him they/them etc.

A

People



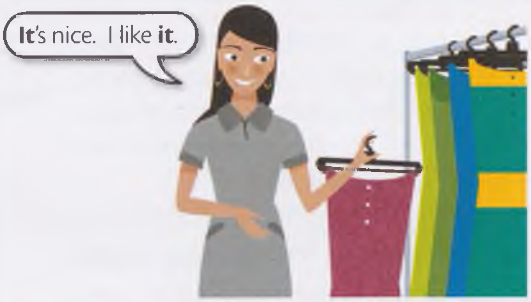
subject	**I**	**we**	**you**	**he**	**she**	**they**
object	**me**	**us**	**you**	**him**	**her**	**them**

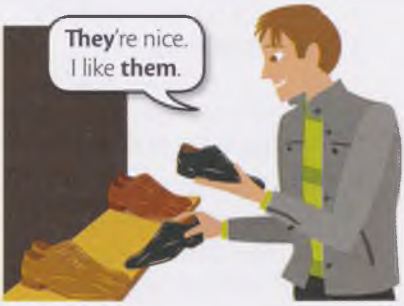
subject	
I	**I** know Tom.
we	**We** know Tom.
you	**You** know Tom.
he	**He** knows Tom.
she	**She** knows Tom.
they	**They** know Tom.

	object
Tom knows **me**.	**me**
Tom knows **us**.	**us**
Tom knows **you**.	**you**
Tom knows **him**.	**him**
Tom knows **her**.	**her**
Tom knows **them**.	**them**

B

Things


It's nice. I like **it**.


They're nice. I like **them**.

subject	**it**	**they**
object	**it**	**them**

- ○ I don't want **this book**. You can have **it**.
- ○ I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- ○ Kate never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- ○ I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

C

We use **me/her/them** etc. (object) after a *preposition* (**for**/**to**/**with** etc.):

- ○ This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- ○ Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- ○ We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come **with us**?
- ○ Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go **with them**?
- ○ 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting **on it**.'

give it/them to ... :

- ○ I want that book. Please give **it to me**.
- ○ Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

my/his/their etc. ➜ Unit 60 **Give me that book / Give it to me** ➜ Unit 96

Exercises

59.1 Complete the sentences with **him/her/them**.

1 I don't know those girls. Do you know ....them.... ?
2 I don't know that man. Do you know .... ?
3 I don't know those people. Do you know .... ?
4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know .... ?
5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know .... ?
6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know .... ?
7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know .... ?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her** etc.

1 **I** want to see **her**, but ....she.... doesn't want to see ....me.... .
2 **They** want to see **me**, but .... don't want to see ....
3 **She** wants to see **him**, but .... doesn't want to see ....
4 **We** want to see **them**, but .... don't want to see ....
5 **He** wants to see **us**, but .... don't want to see ....
6 **They** want to see **her**, but .... doesn't want to see ....
7 **I** want to see **them**, but .... don't want to see ....
8 **You** want to see **her**, but .... doesn't want to see ....

59.3 Write sentences beginning **I like ... , I don't like ...** or **Do you like ... ?**

1 I don't eat tomatoes. ....I don't like them.... .
2 George is a very nice man. I like ....
3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't ....
4 This is my new car. Do .... ?
5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I ....
6 These are my new shoes. .... ?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/he/him** etc.

1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at ....her.... ?
2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with ....'
3 Where are the tickets? I can't find ....
4 I can't find my keys. Where are .... ?
5 We're going out. You can come with ....
6 I've got a new motorbike. Do you want to see .... ?
7 Maria likes music. .... plays the piano.
8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of ....
9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to ....
10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to ....
11 You can have these CDs. I don't want ....
12 My brother has a new job, but .... doesn't like .... very much.

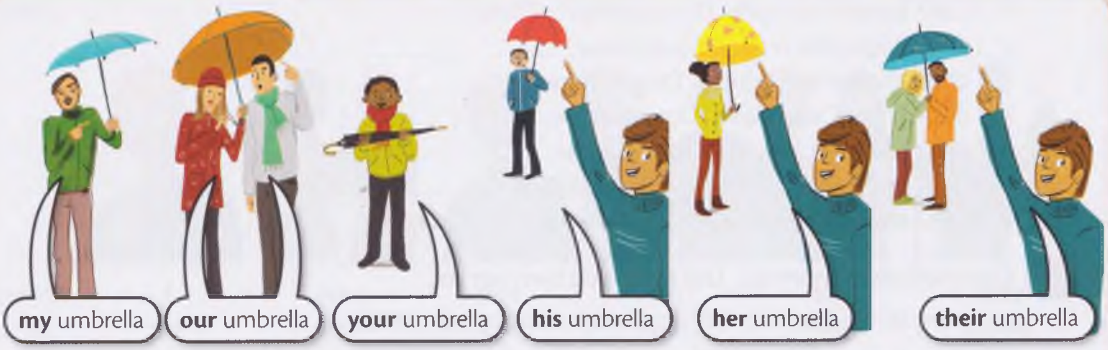
59.5 *Complete the sentences.*

1 I need that book. Can you ....give it to me.... ?
2 He wants the key. Can you give .... ?
3 She wants the keys. Can you .... ?
4 I need my bag. Can you .... ?
5 They want the money. Can you .... ?
6 We want the pictures. Can you .... ?

Unit 60

my/his/their etc.

A


my umbrella
our umbrella
your umbrella
his umbrella
her umbrella
their umbrella

I	→	**my**
we	→	**our**
you	→	**your**
he	→	**his**
she	→	**her**
they	→	**their**

I	like	**my**	house.
We	like	**our**	house.
You	like	**your**	house.
He	likes	**his**	house.
She	likes	**her**	house.
They	like	**their**	house.

it → **its**

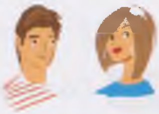
Oxford (= **it**) is famous for **its** university.

We use **my/your/his** etc. + *noun*:

my hands **his** new **car** **her parents**
our clothes **your** best **friend** **their room**

B

his/her/their

AMY	ANDY	MR AND MRS LEE
her car (= Amy's car)	**his** bike	**their** son
her husband (= Amy's husband)	**his** sister	**their** daughter
her children (= Amy's children)	**his** parents	**their** children 

C

its and **it's**

its	Oxford is famous for **its** university.
it's (= it **is**)	I like Oxford. **It's** a nice place. (= It **is** a nice place.)

mine/yours etc. → Unit 61 **I/me/my/mine** → Unit 62

Exercises

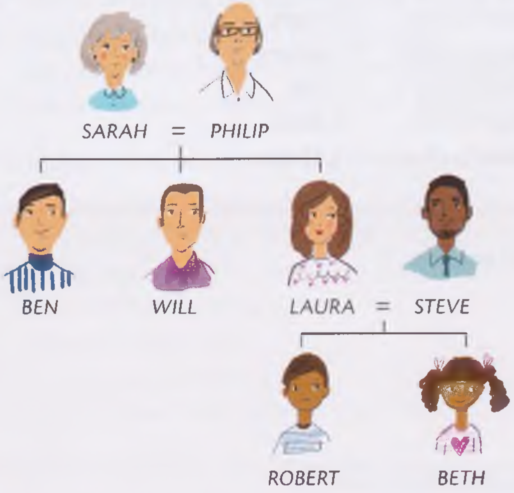
60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I'm going to wash ....my hands.... .
2 She's going to wash .... hands.
3 We're going to wash ....
4 He's going to wash ....
5 They're going to wash ....
6 Are you going to wash .... ?

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 He ....lives with his parents.... .
2 They live with .... parents.
3 We .... parents.
4 Martina lives ....
5 I .... parents.
6 John ....
7 Do you live .... ?
8 Most children ....

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with **his/her/their**.



1 I saw Sarah with ....her.... husband, Philip.
2 I saw Laura and Steve with .... children.
3 I saw Steve with .... wife, Laura.
4 I saw Ben with .... brother, Will.
5 I saw Laura with .... brother, Will.
6 I saw Sarah and Philip with .... son, Will.
7 I saw Laura with .... parents.
8 I saw Beth and Robert with .... parents.

60.4 Write **my/our/your/his/her/their/its**.

1 Do you like ....your.... job?
2 I know Mr Watson, but I don't know .... wife.
3 Alice and Tom live in London. .... son lives in Australia.
4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all .... friends.
5 Anna is going out with .... friends this evening.
6 I like tennis. It's .... favourite sport.
7 'Is that .... car?' 'No, I don't have a car.'
8 I want to contact Maria. Do you know .... number?
9 Do you think most people are happy in .... jobs?
10 I'm going to wash .... hair before I go out.
11 This is a beautiful tree. .... leaves are a beautiful colour.
12 John has a brother and a sister. .... brother is 25, and .... sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use **my/his/their** etc. with these words:

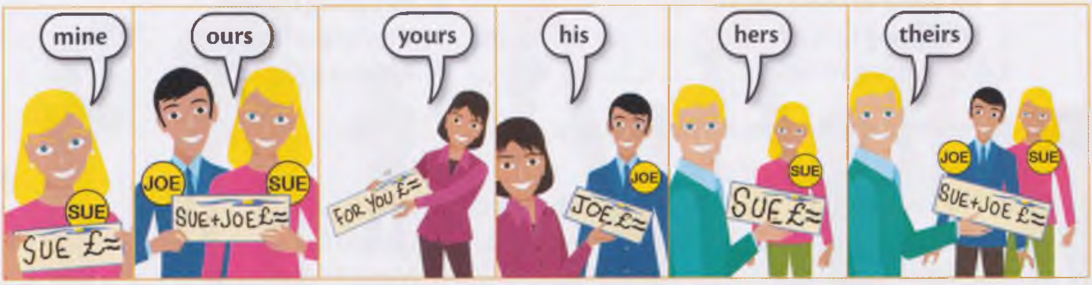
coat **homework** **house** **husband** **~~job~~** **key** **name**

1 James doesn't enjoy ....his job.... . It's not very interesting.
2 I can't get in. I don't have ....
3 Sally is married. .... works in a bank.
4 Please take off .... and sit down.
5 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing ....'
6 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know ....'
7 We live in Barton Street. .... is at the end on the left.

Unit 61

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A



I	→	**my**	→	**mine**
we	→	**our**	→	**ours**
you	→	**your**	→	**yours**
he	→	**his**	→	**his**
she	→	**her**	→	**hers**
they	→	**their**	→	**theirs**

It's **my** money.	It's **mine**.
It's **our** money.	It's **ours**.
It's **your** money.	It's **yours**.
It's **his** money.	It's **his**.
It's **her** money.	It's **hers**.
It's **their** money.	It's **theirs**.

B

We use **my/your** etc. + *noun* (**my hands** / **your book** etc.):

- **My hands** are cold.
- Is this **your book**?
- Helen gave me **her umbrella**.
- It's **their problem**, not **our problem**.

We use **mine/yours** etc. without a noun:

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- 'Is this **his camera** or **hers**?' 'It's **his**.'

C

a friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends **of yours** etc.

- I went out to meet a friend **of mine**. (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend **of his**. (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends **of yours**? (*not* friends of you)

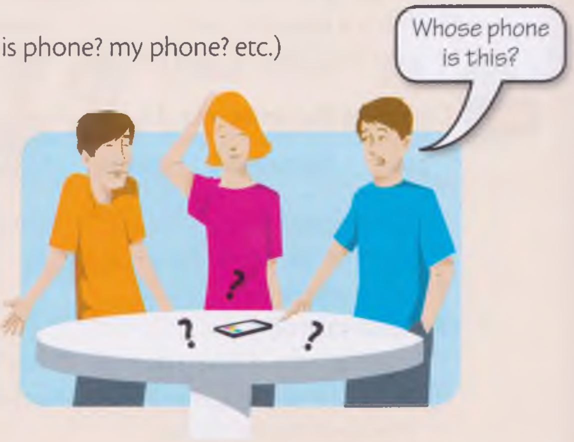
D

Whose ... ?

- **Whose phone** is this? (= Is it your phone? his phone? my phone? etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- **Whose money** is this?
  Whose is this? } It's mine.
- **Whose shoes** are these?
  Whose are these? } They're John's.



my/his/their etc. ➜ Unit 60 I/me/my/mine ➜ Unit 62 Kate's camera / my brother's car ➜ Unit 64

Exercises

61.1 Complete the sentences with **mine/yours** etc.

1 It's your money. It's yours.
2 It's my bag. It's …… .
3 It's our car. It's …… .
4 They're her shoes. They're …… .
5 It's their house. It's …… .
6 They're your books. They're …… .
7 They're my glasses. They're …… .
8 It's his coat. It's …… .

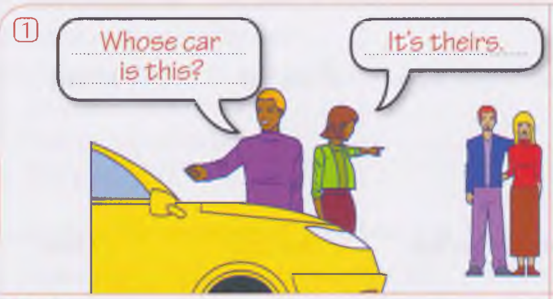
61.2 Choose the right word.

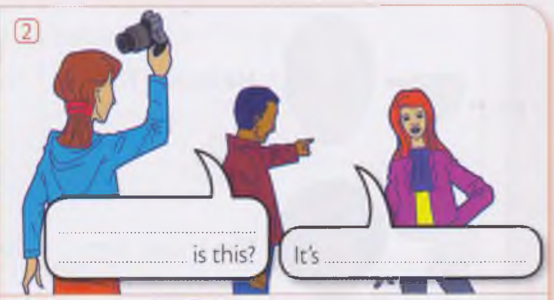
1 It's their/~~theirs~~ problem, not ~~our~~/ours. (their *and* ours *are right*)
2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7 They have two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

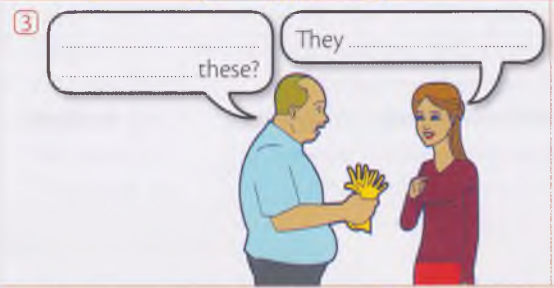
61.3 Complete these sentences. Use **friend(s) of mine/yours** etc.

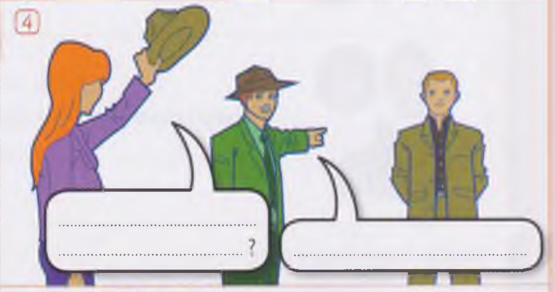
1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
3 She's going out with a friend …… .
4 We had dinner with some …… .
5 I played tennis with a …… .
6 Tom is going to meet a …… .
7 Do you know those people? Are they …… ?

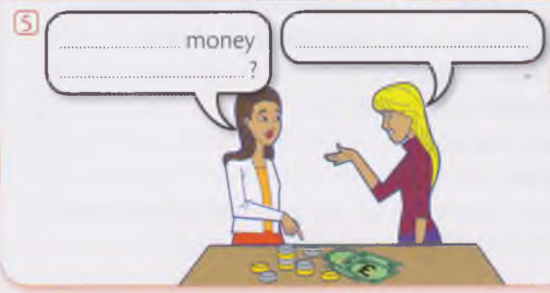
61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

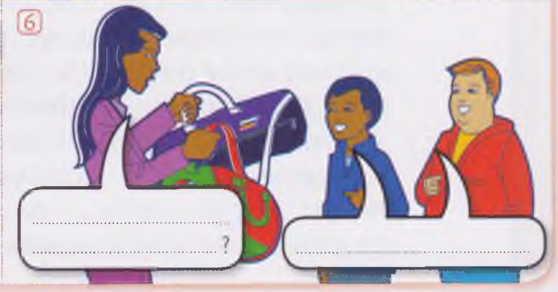

1
Whose car is this?
It's theirs.


2
…… is this?
It's ……


3
…… these?
They ……



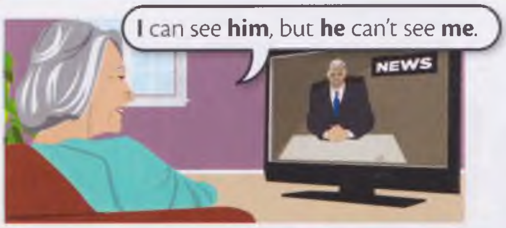


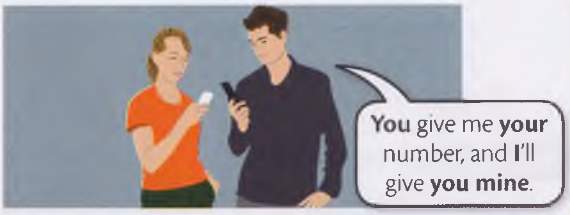


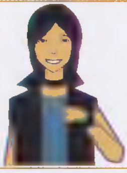
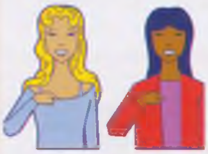
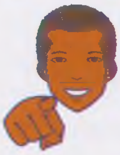
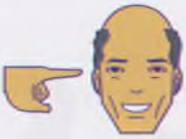
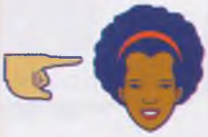
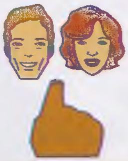
Unit
62

I/me/my/mine

A


I can see **him**, but **he** can't see **me**.
NEWS


You give me **your** number, and **I'll** give **you mine**.

	I etc. (→ Unit 59)	**me** etc. (→ Unit 59)	**my** etc. (→ Unit 60)	**mine** etc. (→ Unit 61)
	**I** know Tom.	Tom knows **me**.	It's **my** car.	It's **mine**.
	**We** know Tom.	Tom knows **us**.	It's **our** car.	It's **ours**.
	**You** know Tom.	Tom knows **you**.	It's **your** car.	It's **yours**.
	**He** knows Tom.	Tom knows **him**.	It's **his** car.	It's **his**.
	**She** knows Tom.	Tom knows **her**.	It's **her** car.	It's **hers**.
	**They** know Tom.	Tom knows **them**.	It's **their** car.	It's **theirs**.

B

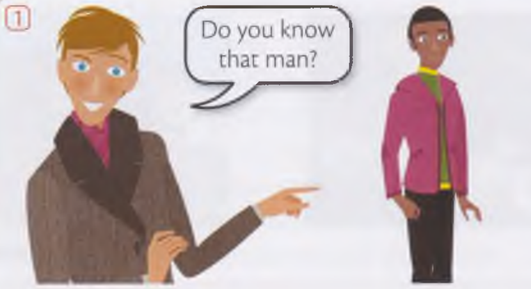
Study these examples:

- 'Do **you** know that man?' 'Yes, **I** know **him**, but **I** can't remember **his name**.'
- **She** was very pleased because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?
  B: Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the park.
- That's **my pen**. Can **you** give it to **me**, please?
- 'Is this **your umbrella**?' 'No, it's **yours**.'
- **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- **I**'m going out with a friend of **mine** this evening. (*not* a friend of me)

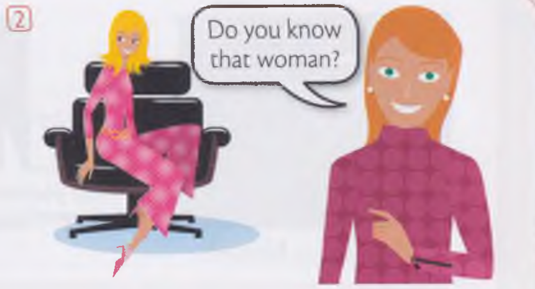
myself/yourself etc. ➜ **Unit 63**   **Give me that book / Give it to me** ➜ **Unit 96**

Exercises

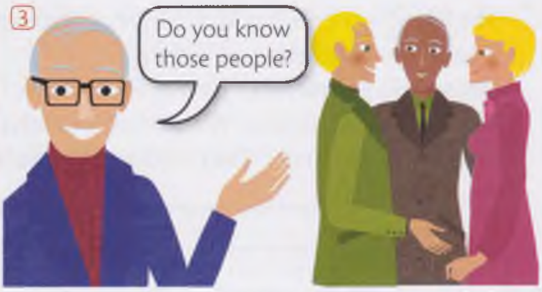
62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1

Do you know that man?

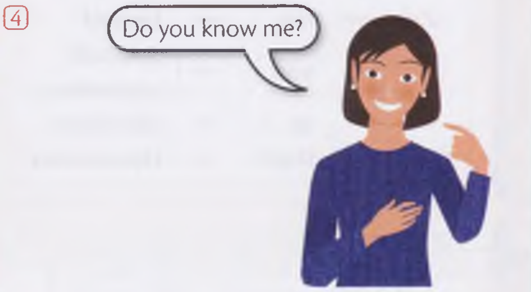
Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name .

2

Do you know that woman?

Yes, I know ………… but I can't remember ………… .

3

Do you know those people?

Yes, I ………… , but I ………… names.

4

Do you know me?

Yes, I ………… , but ………… .

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 We invited her to stay with us at our house .
2 He invited us to stay with ………… at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with ………… house.
4 I invited them to stay ………… house.
5 She invited us to stay ………… house.
6 Did you invite him ………… house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I gave him my phone number, and he gave me his .
2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me ………… .
3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave ………… .
4 We gave them ………… phone number, and they gave ………… .
5 She gave him ………… phone number, and he gave ………… .
6 You gave us ………… phone number, and we gave ………… .
7 They gave you ………… phone number, and you gave ………… .

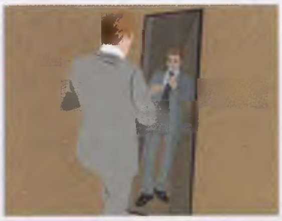
62.4 Write **him/her/yours** etc.

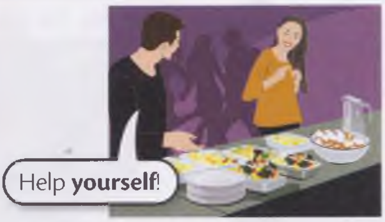
1 Where's Amanda? Have you seen her ?
2 Where are my keys? Where did I put ………… ?
3 This book belongs to Ben. Can you give it to ………… ?
4 We don't see ………… neighbours much. They're not at home very often.
5 'I can't find my phone. Can I use ………… ?' 'Yes, of course.'
6 We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with ………… ?
7 Did your sister pass ………… exams?
8 Some people talk about ………… work all the time.
9 Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of ………… .

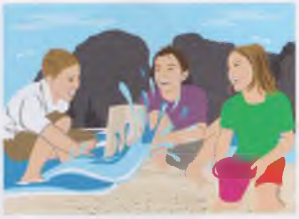
Unit
63

myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A


He's looking at **himself**.


Help **yourself**!


They're enjoying **themselves**.

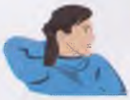
I → **me** → **myself**
he → **him** → **himself**
she → **her** → **herself**
you → **you** → **yourself** / **yourselves**
we → **us** → **ourselves**
they → **them** → **themselves**

- **I** looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- **He** cut **himself** with a knife.
- **She** fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. *(one person)*
- Please help **yourselves**. *(two or more people)*
- We had a good holiday. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

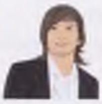
B

Compare:

me/him/them etc.

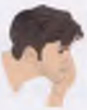


She is looking at **him**.
different people

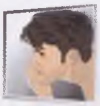


- You never talk to **me**.
- I didn't pay for **them**.
- I'm sorry. Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves etc.



He is looking at **himself**.
the same person



- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- They paid for **themselves**.
- Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

by myself / **by yourself** etc. = alone:

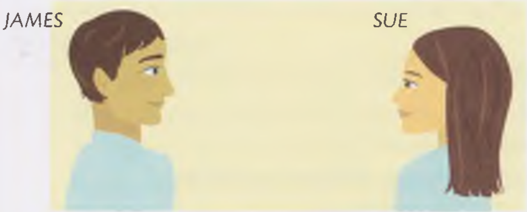
- I went on holiday **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was **by herself**.'

D

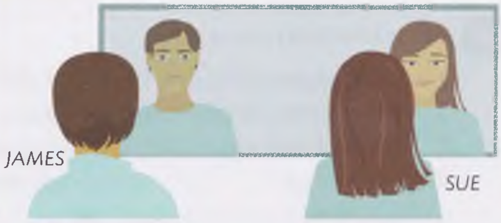
each other

- Kate and Helen are good friends. They know **each other** well. (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:



- James and Sue looked at **each other**. (= he looked at her, she looked at him)



- James and Sue looked at **themselves**. (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

me/him/them etc. ➜ Unit 59

Exercises

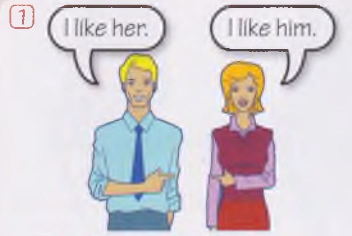
63.1 Complete the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

1 He looked at himself in the mirror.
2 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with ....
3 Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed ....
4 My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed ....
5 I picked up a very hot plate and burnt ....
6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ....
7 I want to know more about you. Tell me about .... *(one person)*
8 Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of .... ! *(two people)*

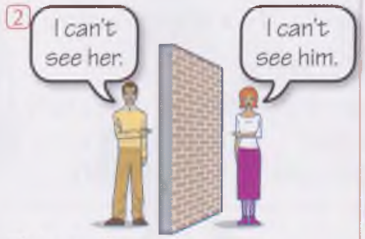
63.2 Write sentences with **by myself / by yourself** etc.

1 I went on holiday alone.	I went on holiday by myself.
2 When I saw him, he was alone.	When I saw him, he ....
3 Don't go out alone.	Don't ....
4 I went to the cinema alone.	I ....
5 My sister lives alone.	My sister ....
6 Many people live alone.	Many people ....

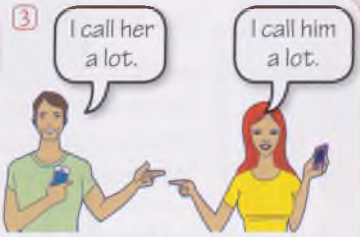
63.3 Write sentences with **each other**.

1

I like her.
I like him.

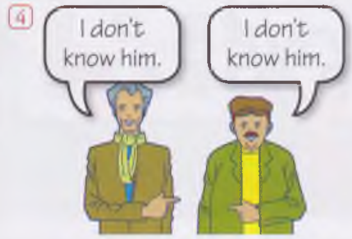
They like each other.

2

I can't see her.
I can't see him.

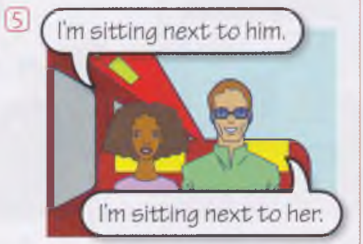
They can't ....

3

I call her a lot.
I call him a lot.

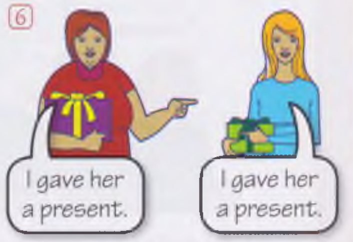
They ....

4

I don't know him.
I don't know him.

....

5

I'm sitting next to him.
I'm sitting next to her.

....

6

I gave her a present.
I gave her a present.

....

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

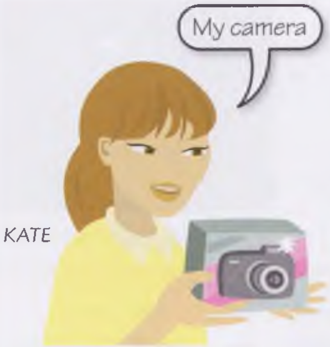
each other or **ourselves/yourselves/themselves** or **us/you/them**

1 Paul and I live near each other .
2 Who are those people? Do you know them ?
3 You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help ....
4 There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ....
5 We didn't go to Emily's party. She didn't invite ....
6 When we go on holiday, we always enjoy ....
7 Helen and Jane were at school together, but they never see .... now.
8 Karen and I are very good friends. We've known .... for a long time.
9 'Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to ....'
10 Many people talk to .... when they're alone.

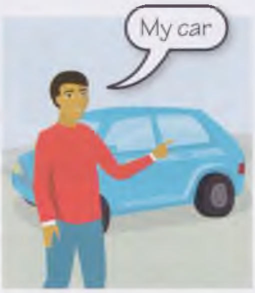
Unit
64

-'s (**Kate's** camera / **my brother's** car etc.)

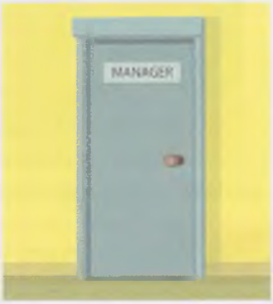
A



Kate**'s** camera
(**her** camera)



my brother**'s** car
(**his** car)



the manager**'s** office
(**his** *or* **her** office)

We normally use **-'s** for people:

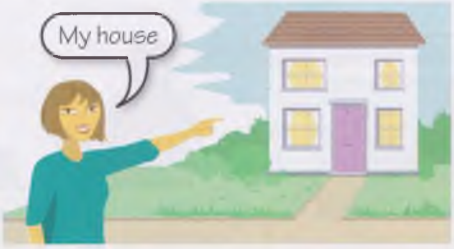
- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr Black's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is **a man's** name. Paula is **a woman's** name.

You can use **-'s** without a noun after it:

- Sophie's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's **my mother's**.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at **Paul's**.' (= Paul's house)

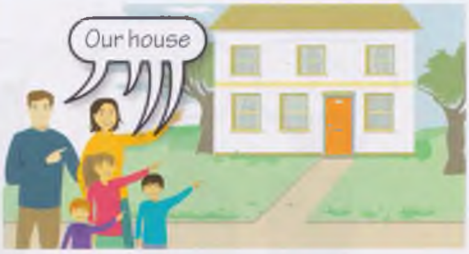
B

friend's and **friends'**



my **friend's** house = *one friend*
(= **his** house or **her** house)

We write **'s** after
friend/**student**/**mother** etc. (*singular*):
my mother**'s** car (*one mother*)
my father**'s** car (*one father*)



my **friends'** house = *two or more friends*
(= **their** house)

We write **'** after
friend**s**/student**s**/parent**s** etc. (*plural*):
my parent**s'** car (*two parents*)

C

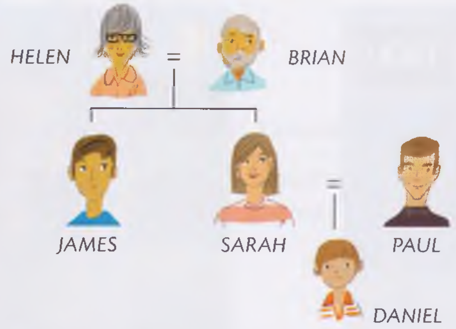
We use **of** ... for things, places etc. :

- Look at the roof **of that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the film**. (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name **of this village**?
- Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- You can sit in the back **of the car**.
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

mine/yours etc. ➜ **Unit 61** **whose** ... ? ➜ **Unit 61** **-'s** (**he's** / **Kate's** etc.) ➜ **Appendix 4.5**

Exercises

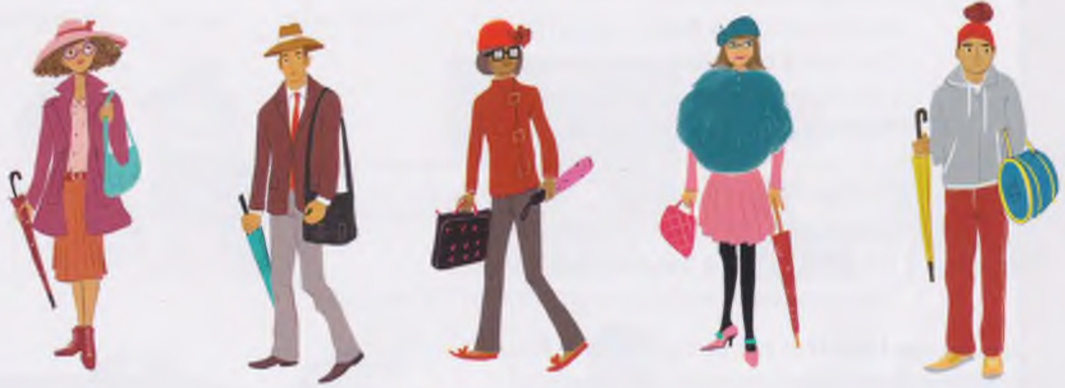
64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

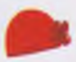
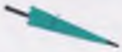
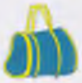
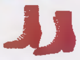
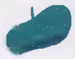
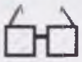


Helen and Brian are married.
They have a son, James, and a daughter, Sarah.
Sarah is married to Paul.
Sarah and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1 Brian is ...Helen's... husband.
2 Sarah is Daniel's ...mother... .
3 Helen is ...... wife.
4 James is Sarah's ....
5 James is ...... uncle.
6 Sarah is ...... wife.
7 Helen is Daniel's ....
8 Sarah is James's ....
9 Paul is ...... husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's ....
11 Daniel is ...... nephew.

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



1  Whose is this? ...Alice's...
2  Whose is this? ......
3  And this? ......
4  And these? ......
5  And this? ......
6  And these? ......

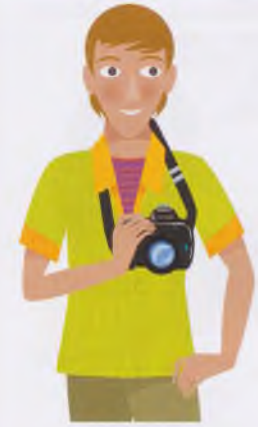
64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1 I stayed at the house of my sister. ...my sister's house...
2 What is the name of this village? ...OK...
3 Do you like the colour of this coat? ......
4 Do you have the phone number of Simon? ......
5 The job of my brother is very interesting. ......
6 Write your name at the top of the page. ......
7 For me, the morning is the best part of the day. ......
8 The favourite colour of Paula is blue. ......
9 When is the birthday of your mother? ......
10 The house of my parents isn't very big. ......
11 The walls of this house are very thin. ......
12 The car stopped at the end of the street. ......
13 Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? ......
14 The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment ......

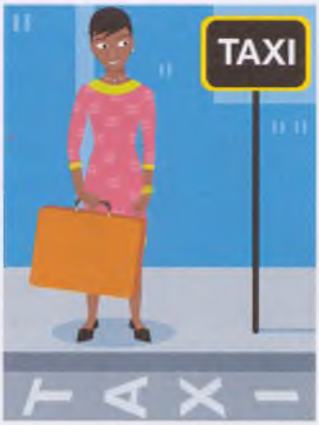
Unit 65

a/an ...

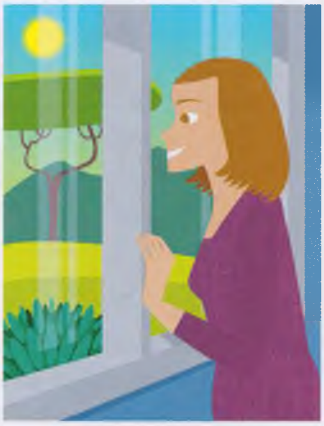
A



He's got **a** camera.



She's waiting for **a** taxi.



It's **a** beautiful day.

a ... = one thing or person:

☐ Rachel works in **a bank**. (*not* in bank)
☐ Can I ask **a question**? (*not* ask question)
☐ I don't have **a job** at the moment.
☐ There's **a woman** at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before **a**/**e**/**i**/**o**/**u**:

☐ Do you want **an a**pple or **a b**anana?
☐ I'm going to buy **a h**at and **an u**mbrella.
☐ There was **an i**nteresting programme on TV last night.

also **an hour** (**h** is not pronounced: an ~~h~~our)
but **a university** (pronounced *yuniversity*)
a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

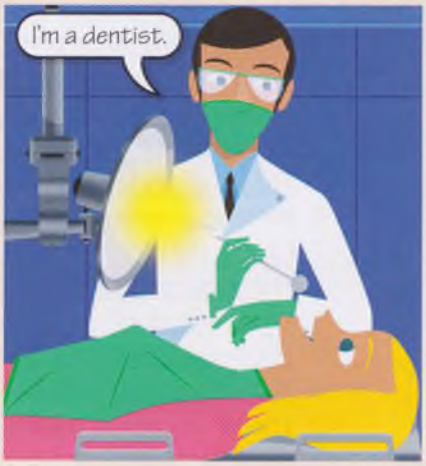
another (= **an** + **other**) is one word:

☐ Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

C

We use **a/an** ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

☐ The sun is **a star**.
☐ Football is **a game**.
☐ Dallas is **a city in Texas**.
☐ A mouse is **an animal**. It's **a small animal**.
☐ Joe is **a very nice person**.


I'm a dentist.

We use **a/an** ... for jobs etc. :

☐ A: What's your job?
B: I'm **a dentist**. (*not* I'm dentist)
☐ 'What does Mark do?' 'He's **an engineer**.'
☐ Would you like to be **a teacher**?
☐ Beethoven was **a composer**.
☐ Picasso was **a famous painter**.
☐ Are you **a student**?

a car / **some money** (countable/uncountable) ➜ Units 67–68 **a** and **the** ➜ Unit 69

Exercises

65.1 Write **a** or **an**.

1 an old book
2 .... window
3 .... horse
4 .... airport
5 .... new airport
6 .... organisation
7 .... university
8 .... hour
9 .... economic problem

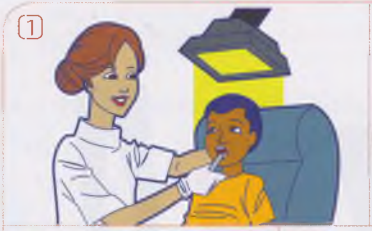
65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

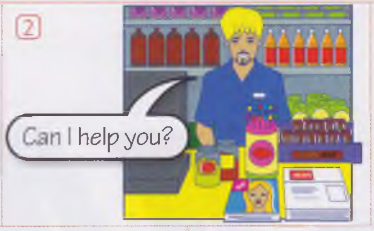
~~bird~~ fruit mountain river musical instrument
flower game planet tool vegetable

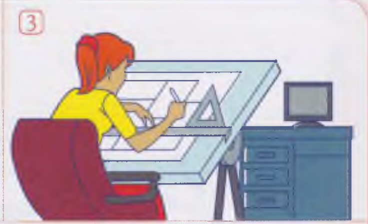
1 A duck is a bird.
2 A carrot is ....
3 Tennis is ....
4 A hammer is ....
5 Everest is ....
6 Saturn is ....
7 A banana is ....
8 The Amazon is ....
9 A rose is ....
10 A trumpet is ....

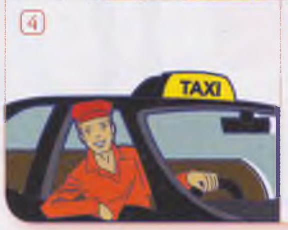
65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

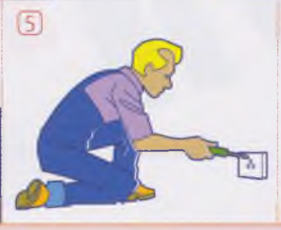
architect ~~dentist~~ shop assistant photographer
electrician nurse taxi driver

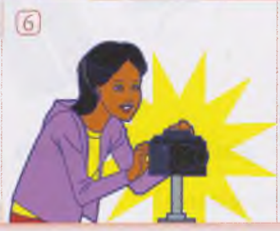
1


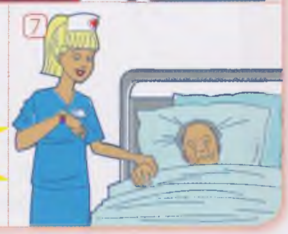
2

Can I help you?

3


4


5


6


7


1 She's a dentist.
2 He's ....
3 She ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 And you? I'm ....

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use **a/an** where necessary.

~~I want to ask you~~
Tom never wears
I can't ride
My brother is
Rebecca works in
Jane wants to learn
Mike lives in
This evening I'm going to

+

old house
party
bookshop
hat
artist
~~question~~
foreign language
bike

1 I want to ask you a question.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

Unit 66

train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

A

The plural of a noun is usually **-s**:

singular (= one) → *plural* (= two or more)
a flower → some **flowers**
a train → two **trains**
one week → a few **weeks**
a nice place → some nice **places**
this student → these **students**

a flower

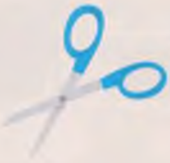
some **flowers**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

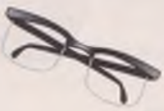
-s / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x**	→	**-es**	bus → bus**es** dish → dish**es** church → church**es** box → box**es**
		also	potato → potato**es** tomato → tomato**es**
-y	→	**-ies**	bab**y** → bab**ies** dictionar**y** → dictionar**ies** part**y** → part**ies**
but **-ay** / **-ey** / **-oy**		**-ys**	d**ay** → d**ays** monk**ey** → monk**eys** b**oy** → b**oys**
-f / **-fe**	→	**-ves**	shel**f** → shel**ves** kni**fe** → kni**ves** wi**fe** → wi**ves**

B

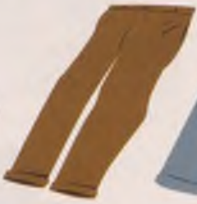
These things are plural:



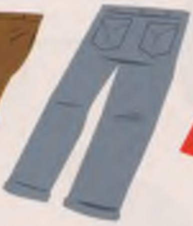
scissors



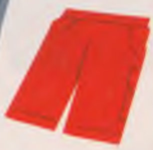
glasses



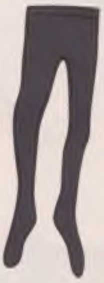
trousers



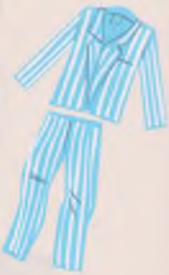
jeans



shorts



tights



pyjamas

- Do you wear **glasses**?
- Where **are** the **scissors**? I need **them**.

You can also say **a pair of scissors** / **a pair of trousers** / **a pair of pyjamas** etc. :

- I need **a** new **pair of jeans**. *or* I need **some** new **jeans**. (*not* a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in **-s**:

this **man** → these **men**
a **woman** → some **women**
a **child** → many **children**

one **foot** → two **feet**
a **tooth** → all my **teeth**
a **mouse** → some **mice**

that **sheep** → those **sheep**
a **fish** → a lot of **fish**

also a **person** → **two people** / **some people** / **a lot of people** etc. :

- **She**'s a nice **person**.

but

- **They** are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say **people are** / **people have** etc. :

- **A lot of people speak** English. (*not* speaks)
- I like **the people** here. **They are** very friendly.

Police is plural:

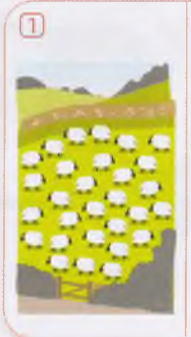
- **The police want** to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (*not* The police wants)

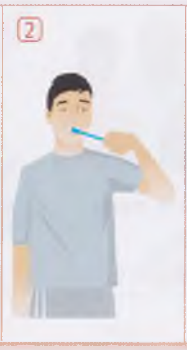
Exercises

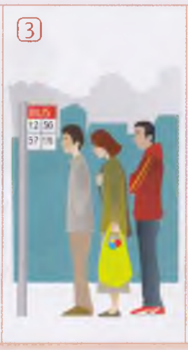
66.1 Write the plural.

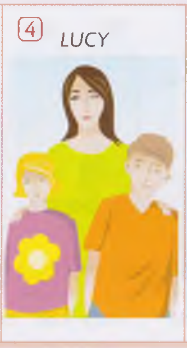
1 flower ....flowers....
2 boat ....
3 woman ....
4 city ....
5 umbrella ....
6 address ....
7 knife ....
8 sandwich ....
9 family ....
10 foot ....
11 holiday ....
12 potato ....

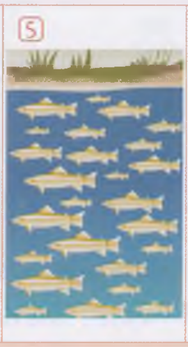
66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

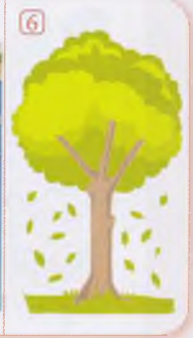
1


2


3


4


5


6


1 There are a lot of ....sheep.... in the field.
2 Gary is cleaning his ....
3 There are three .... at the bus stop.
4 Lucy has two ....
5 There are a lot of .... in the river.
6 The .... are falling from the tree.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1 I'm going to buy some flowers. ....OK....
2 I need a new jeans. ....I need a new pair of jeans. OR I need some new jeans....
3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. ....
4 There was a woman in the car with two mens. ....
5 Sheep eat grass. ....
6 David is married and has three childs. ....
7 Most of my friend are student. ....
8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed. ....
9 We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. ....
10 Do you know many persons in this town? ....
11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it? ....
12 The town centre is usually full of tourist. ....
13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. ....
14 This scissor isn't very sharp. ....

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1 It's a nice place. Many people ....go.... there on holiday. **go** *or* **goes**?
2 Some people .... always late. **is** *or* **are**?
3 The new city hall is not a beautiful building. Most people .... like it. **don't** *or* **doesn't**?
4 A lot of people .... TV every day. **watch** *or* **watches**?
5 Three people .... injured in the accident. **was** *or* **were**?
6 How many people .... in that house? **live** *or* **lives**?
7 .... the police know the cause of the explosion? **Do** *or* **Does**?
8 The police .... looking for the stolen car. **is** *or* **are**?
9 I need my glasses, but I can't find .... **it** *or* **them**?
10 I'm going to buy .... new jeans today. **a** *or* **some**?

Unit
67

a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

A

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **bottle** (a) **house** (a) **key** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one**/**two**/**three** (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them):

one **bottle**

two **bottles**

three **men**

four **houses**

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

singular	**a car**	**the car**	**my car** etc.		
plural	**cars**	**two cars**	**the cars**	**some cars**	**many cars** etc.

○ I've got **a car**.
○ New **cars** are very expensive.
○ There aren't **many cars** in the car park.

You can't use the singular (**car**/**bottle**/**key** etc.) alone. You need **a**/**an**:
○ We can't get into the house without **a key**. (*not* without key)

B

Uncountable nouns

For example: **water** **air** **rice** **salt** **plastic** **money** **music** **tennis**

water

salt

money

music

You can't say **one**/**two**/**three** (etc.) + these things: ~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:
money the **money** my **money** some **money** much **money** etc.

○ I've got **some money**.
○ There isn't **much money** in the box.
○ **Money** isn't everything.

You can't use **a**/**an** + *uncountable nouns*: ~~a~~ **money** ~~a~~ **music** ~~a~~ **water**

But you can say **a piece of** … / **a bottle of** … etc. + *uncountable noun*:

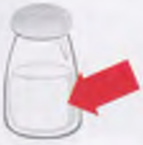
a bottle of water
a piece of cheese
a bowl of rice
a carton of milk
a bottle of perfume
a cup of coffee
a bar of chocolate
a piece of music
a game of tennis

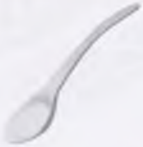
a/an ➜ **Unit 65** countable/uncountable 2 ➜ **Unit 68**

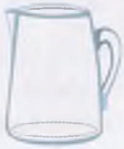
Exercises

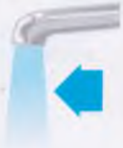
67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write **a/an** if necessary.
The names of these things are:

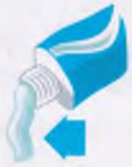
bucket
egg
envelope
jug
money
~~**salt**~~
sand
~~**spoon**~~
toothbrush
toothpaste
wallet
water

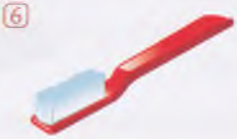
① 
It's salt .

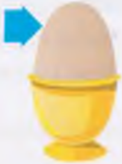
② 
It's a spoon .

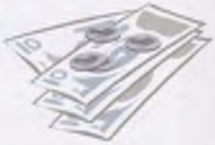
③ 
It's ....

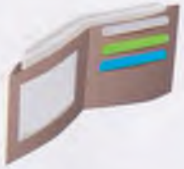
④ 
It's ....

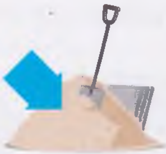
⑤ 
It's ....

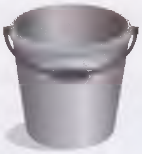
⑥ 
It's ....

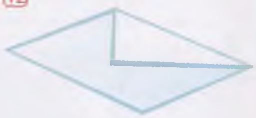
⑦ 
It's ....

⑧ 
It's ....

⑨ 
It's ....

⑩ 
It's ....

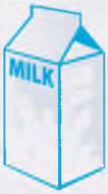
⑪ 
It's ....

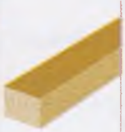
⑫ 
It's ....

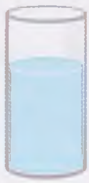
67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need **a/an**. Write **a/an** where necessary.

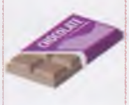
1 I don't have watch. a watch
2 Do you like cheese? OK
3 I never wear hat. ....
4 Are you looking for job? ....
5 Kate doesn't eat meat. ....
6 Kate eats apple every day. ....
7 I'm going to party tonight. ....
8 Music is wonderful thing. ....
9 Jamaica is island. ....
10 I don't need key. ....
11 Everybody needs food. ....
12 I've got good idea. ....
13 Can you drive car? ....
14 Do you want cup of coffee? ....
15 I don't like coffee without milk. ....
16 Don't go out without umbrella. ....

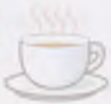
67.3 What are these things? Write **a ... of ...** for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

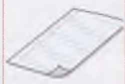
① 

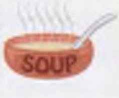
② 

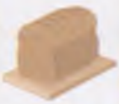
③ 

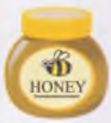
④ 

⑤ 

⑥ 

⑦ 

⑧ 

⑨ 

bar
bowl
~~**carton**~~
cup
glass
jar
loaf
piece
piece

+

bread
chocolate
honey
~~**milk**~~
paper
soup
tea
water
wood

1 a carton of milk
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

Unit
68

a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)

A

a/an and **some**

a/an + *singular countable nouns* (**car**/**apple**/**shoe** etc.):

☐ I need **a** new **car**.
☐ Would you like **an apple**?

an apple

some + *plural countable nouns* (**cars**/**apples**/**shoes** etc.):

☐ I need **some** new **shoes**.
☐ Would you like **some apples**?

some apples

some + *uncountable nouns* (**water**/**money**/**music** etc.):

☐ I need **some water**.
☐ Would you like **some cheese**?
(*or* Would you like **a piece of** cheese?)

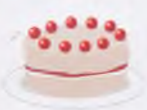
some cheese *or* **a piece of** cheese

Compare **a** and **some**:

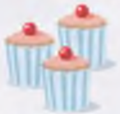
☐ Nicola bought **a hat**, **some shoes** and **some perfume**.
☐ I read **a newspaper**, made **some phone calls**, and listened to **some music**.

B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

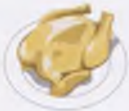


a cake

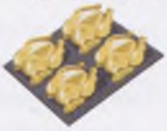


some cakes

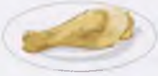
some cake *or* **a piece of cake**



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken *or* **a piece of chicken**

Compare **a paper** (= a newspaper) and **some paper**:

☐ I want something to read. I'm going to buy **a paper**.
but ☐ I want to make a shopping list. I need **some paper** / **a piece of paper**. (*not* a paper)

C

Be careful with:

advice **bread** **furniture** **hair** **information** **news** **weather** **work**

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say **a/an** ... (~~a bread, an advice~~), and they can't be plural (~~advices, furnitures~~ etc.).

☐ Can I talk to you? I need **some advice**. (*not* an advice)
☐ I'm going to buy **some bread**. (*not* a bread)
☐ They've got **some** nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
☐ Silvia has very long **hair**. (*not* hairs)
☐ Where can I get **some information** about hotels here? (*not* informations)
☐ Listen! I've just had **some** good **news**. (*not* a good news)
☐ It's nice **weather** today. (*not* a nice weather)
☐ 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard **work**.' (*not* a hard work)

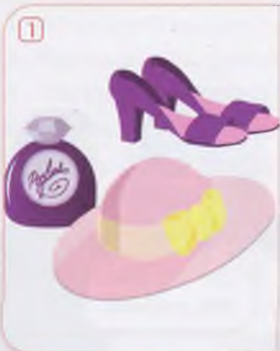
We say **a job** (*but not* a work):

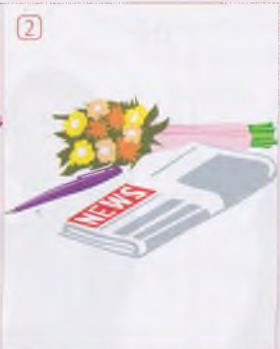
☐ I've got **a** new **job**. (*not* a new work)

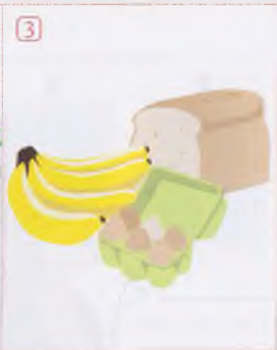
countable/uncountable 1 ➔ Unit 67 **some** and **any** ➔ Unit 76

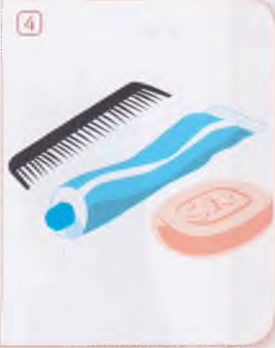
Exercises

68.1 What can you see in these pictures? Use **a** or **some**.

1


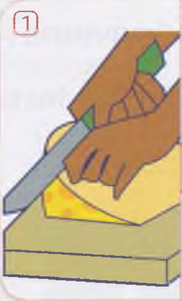
2


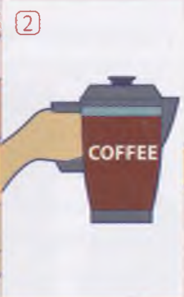
3


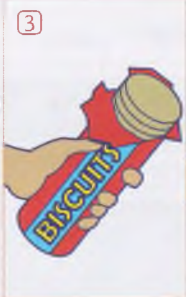
4


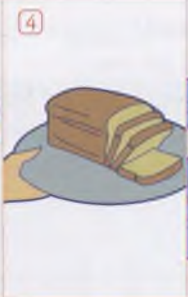
1 some perfume, a hat and some shoes
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....

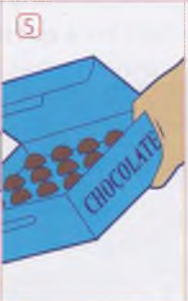
68.2 Write sentences with **Would you like a ... ?** or **Would you like some ... ?**

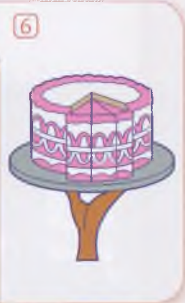
1


2


3


4


5


6


1 Would you like some cheese?
2 Would you like .... ?
3 Would .... ?
4 .... ?
5 .... ?
6 .... ?

68.3 Write **a/an** or **some**.

1 I read ...a... book and listened to ...some... music.
2 I need .... money. I want to buy .... food.
3 We met .... interesting people at the party.
4 I'm going to open .... window to get .... fresh air.
5 Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only .... apple and .... bread.
6 We live in .... big house. There's .... nice garden with .... beautiful trees.
7 I'm going to make a table. First I need .... wood.
8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you .... advice.
9 I want to make a list of things to do. I need .... paper and .... pen.

68.4 Which is right?

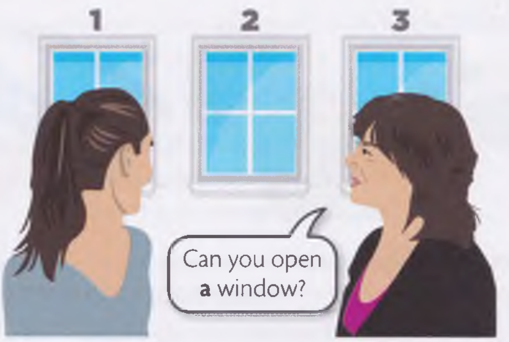
1 I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes *is right*)
2 Mark has brown eye/eyes.
3 Paula has short black hair/hairs.
4 The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7 It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.
8 We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.

Unit
69

a/an and the

A

a/an


1
2
3
Can you open a window?

There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

☐ I've got **a car**.
(there are many cars and I've got one)

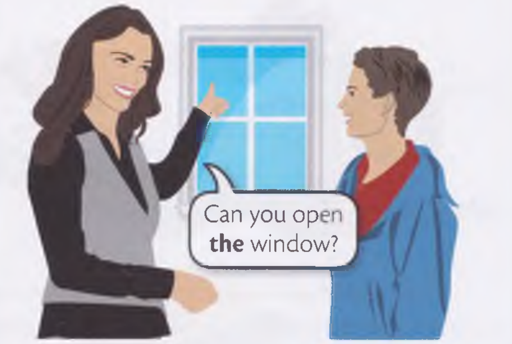
☐ Can I ask **a question**? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)

☐ Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)

☐ Paris is **an interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)

☐ Lisa is **a student**.
(there are many students and Lisa is one)

the


Can you open the window?

There is only *one* window here –
the window.

☐ I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow.
(= my car)

☐ Can you repeat **the question**, please?
(= the question that you asked)

☐ We enjoyed our holiday. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)

☐ Paris is **the capital of France**.
(there is only one capital of France)

☐ Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare **a** and **the**:

☐ I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.
(= **the** jacket and **the** shirt **that I bought**)

B

We say **the** ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

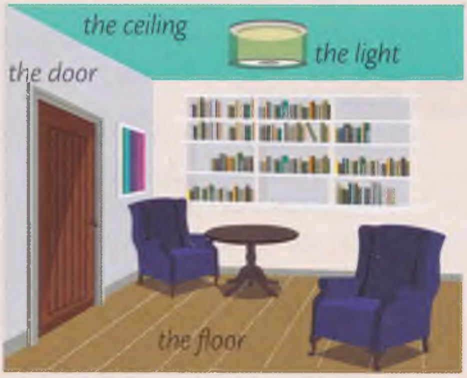
the door / **the ceiling** / **the floor** / **the carpet** / **the light** etc. *(of a room)*
the roof / **the garden** / **the kitchen** / **the bathroom** etc. *(of a house)*
the centre / **the station** / **the airport** / **the town hall** etc. *(of a town)*

☐ 'Where's Tom?' 'In **the kitchen**.'
(= the kitchen of this house or flat)

☐ Turn off **the light** and close **the door**.
(= the light and the door of the room)

☐ Do you live far from **the centre**?
(= the centre of your town)

☐ I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please.
(= the manager of this shop etc.)



a/an ➜ Unit 65 the ➜ Units 70–73

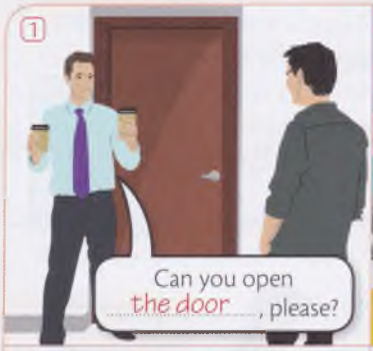
Exercises

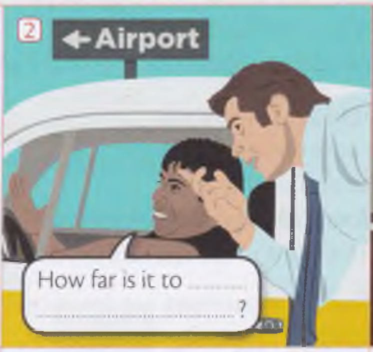
69.1 Write **a/an** or **the**.

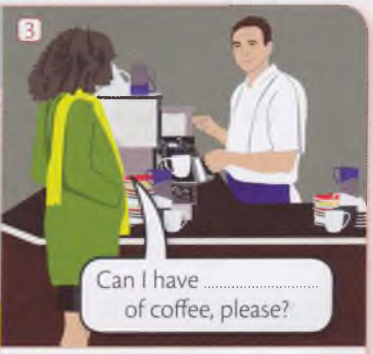
1 We enjoyed our trip. ....The.... hotel was very nice.
2 'Can I ask ....a.... question?' 'Sure. What do you want to know?'
3 You look very tired. You need .... holiday.
4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in .... garden.'
5 Eve is .... interesting person. You should meet her.
6 A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to .... city centre?
B: Yes, go straight on and then take .... next turning left.
7 A: Shall we go out for .... meal this evening?
B: Yes, that's .... good idea.
8 It's .... nice morning. Let's go for .... walk.
9 Amanda is .... student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be .... journalist. She lives with two friends in .... apartment near .... college where she is studying. .... apartment is small, but she likes it.
10 Peter and Mary have two children, ... boy and .... girl. .... boy is seven years old, and .... girl is three. Peter works in .... factory. Mary doesn't have .... job at the moment.

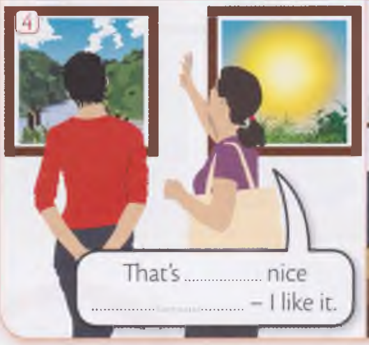
69.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a** or **the** + these words:

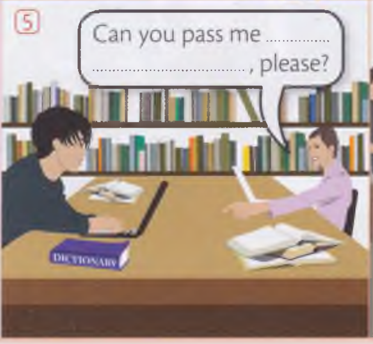
airport **cup** **dictionary** ~~**door**~~ **floor** **picture**

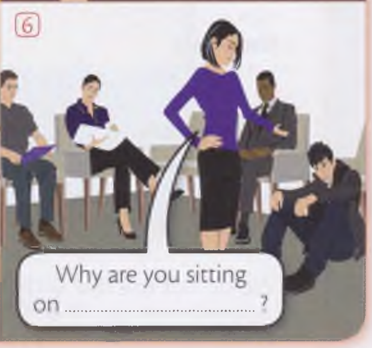

1
Can you open ....the door.... , please?


2
← Airport
How far is it to .... ?


3
Can I have .... of coffee, please?


4
That's .... nice .... – I like it.


5
Can you pass me .... , please?
DICTIONARY


6
Why are you sitting on .... ?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in **a/an** or **the** where necessary.

1 Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. ....turn off the light....
2 Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard. ....
3 What is name of this village? ....
4 Canada is very big country. ....
5 What is largest city in Canada? ....
6 I like this room, but I don't like colour of carpet. ....
7 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.' ....
8 We live in old house near station. ....
9 What is name of director of film we saw last night? ....

Unit
70

the ...

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

☐ What is **the name** of this street? (there is only one name)
☐ Who is **the best player** in your team? (there is only one best player)
☐ Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
☐ My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

☐ Do you live near **the city centre**? (*not* near city centre)
☐ Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest ...)

B

the same ...

☐ We live in **the same street**. (*not* in same street)
☐ 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're **the same**.' (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

the sun / **the moon** / **the world** / **the sky** / **the sea** / **the country**

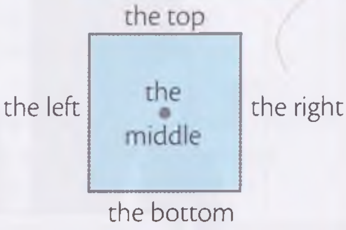
☐ **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
☐ Do you live in a town or in **the country**?

the police / **the fire brigade** / **the army** (of a city, country etc.)

☐ My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
☐ What do you think of **the police**? Do they do a good job?

the top / **the end** / **the middle** / **the left** etc.

☐ Write your name at **the top of** the page.
☐ My house is at **the end of** the street.
☐ The table is in **the middle of** the room.
☐ Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?



(play) **the piano** / **the guitar** / **the trumpet** etc. (musical instruments)

☐ Paula is learning to play **the piano**.

the radio

☐ I listen to **the radio** a lot.

the internet

☐ What do you use **the internet** for?

D

We do *not* use **the** with:

television / **TV**

☐ I watch **TV** a lot.
☐ What's on **television** tonight?
but Can you turn off **the TV**? (= the TV set)

breakfast / **lunch** / **dinner**

☐ What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
☐ **Dinner** is ready!

next / **last** + **week**/**month**/**year**/**summer**/**Monday** etc.

☐ I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
☐ Did you have a holiday **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)

a/an and the ➜ Unit 69 **the** ➜ Units 71–73 **the oldest** / **the most expensive** etc. ➜ Unit 90

Exercises

70.1 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

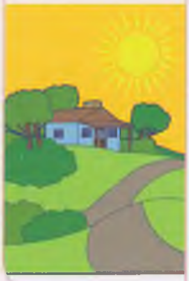
1 What is name of this street? ....the name........
2 What's on TV tonight? ....OK........
3 Our apartment is on second floor. ....
4 Would you like to go to moon? ....
5 Which is best hotel in this town? ....
6 What time is lunch? ....
7 How far is it to city centre? ....
8 We're going away at end of May. ....
9 What are you doing next weekend? ....
10 I didn't like her first time I met her. ....
11 I'm going out after dinner. ....
12 It's easy to get information from internet. ....
13 My sister got married last month. ....
14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right. ....
15 We live in country about ten miles from nearest town. ....

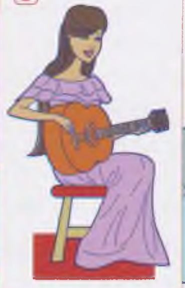
70.2 Complete the sentences. Use **the same** + these words:

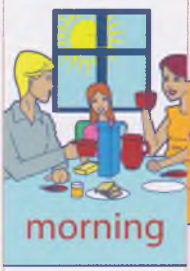
age **colour** **problem** ~~**street**~~ **time**

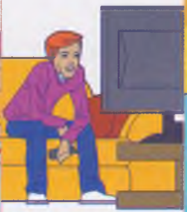
1 I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in ....the same street.... .
2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at ....
3 James is 25 and Sue is 25. James and Sue are ....
4 My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are ....
5 I have no money and you have no money. We have ....

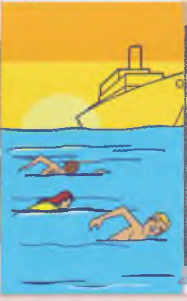
70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **the** if necessary.

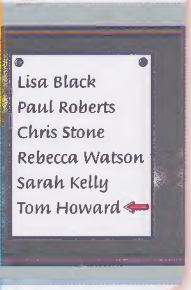
1


2


3


4


5


6


1 ....The sun.... is shining.
2 She's playing ....
3 They're having ....
4 He's watching ....
5 They're swimming in ....
6 Tom's name is at .... of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

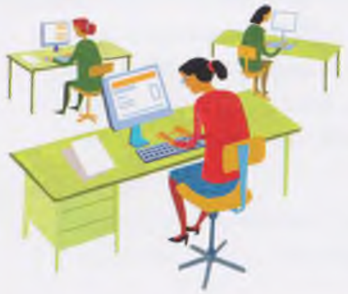
capital ~~**dinner**~~ **police** **lunch** **middle** **name** **sky** **TV**

1 We had ....dinner.... at a restaurant last night.
2 We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember ....
3 .... is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4 Sometimes there are some good films on .... late at night.
5 Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called ....
6 Tokyo is .... of Japan.
7 'What did you have for .... ?' 'A salad.'
8 I woke up in .... of the night.

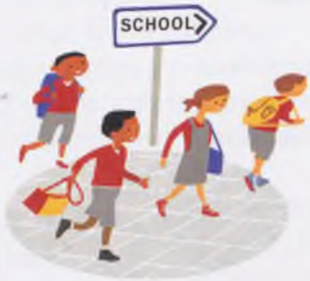
Unit
71

go to work go home go to the cinema

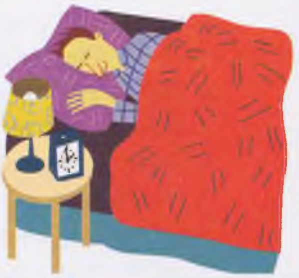
A



She's **at work**.



They're going **to school**.



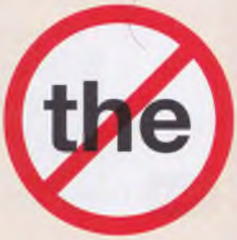
He's **in bed**.

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**
- Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* to the work)
- I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start **school**, leave **school** etc.
- What did you learn **at school** today? (*not* at the school)
- Some children don't like **school**.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**
- Helen wants to **go to university** when she **leaves school**.
- What did you study **at college**?



(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**
- Jack had an accident. He had to go **to hospital**.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**
- Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**
- David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

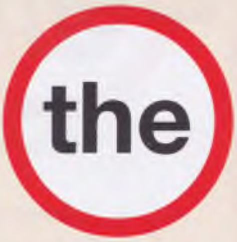
(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**
- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* to the bed)
- 'Where's Alice?' 'She's **in bed**.'

(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.
- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying at home**?

B

We say:

(go to) **the cinema** / **the theatre** / **the bank** / **the post office** / **the station** / **the airport** / **the city centre**
- I never go to **the theatre**, but I go to **the cinema** a lot.
- 'Are you going to **the bank**?' 'No, to **the post office**.'
- The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the city centre**.

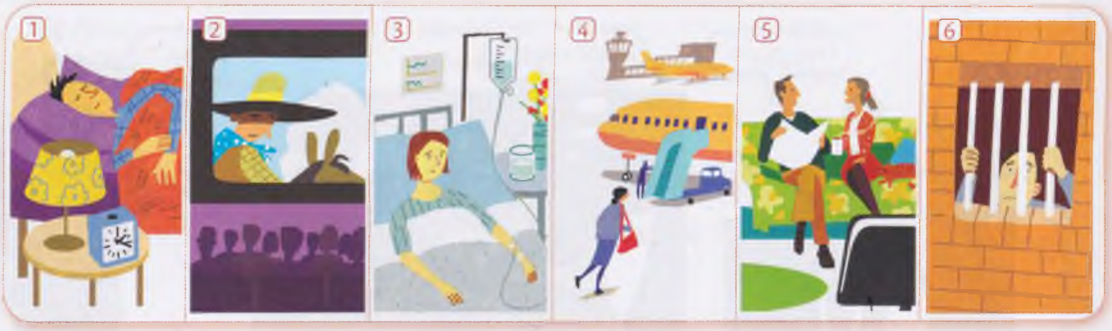


(go to) **the doctor**, **the dentist**
- You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?
- I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.

the → Units 69–70, 72–73 in/at → Units 106–107 to/in/at → Unit 108 (at) home → Unit 108

Exercises

71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.



1 He's in bed……….
2 They're at ……….
3 She's in ……….
4 She's at ……….
5 They're at ……….
6 He's in ……….

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

~~bank~~ **bed** **~~church~~** **home** **post office** **school** **station**

1 I need to change some money. I have to go to the bank……… .
2 David usually goes to church……… on Sundays.
3 In Britain, children go to ………… from the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at ………… waiting for the train.
5 We went to their house, but they weren't at ………… .
6 I'm going to ………… now. Goodnight!
7 I'm going to ………… to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.

1 If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport……… .
2 If you want to see a film, you go to ………… .
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you ………… .
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you ………… .
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you ………… .
6 If you want to study after you leave school, you ………… .
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you ………… .

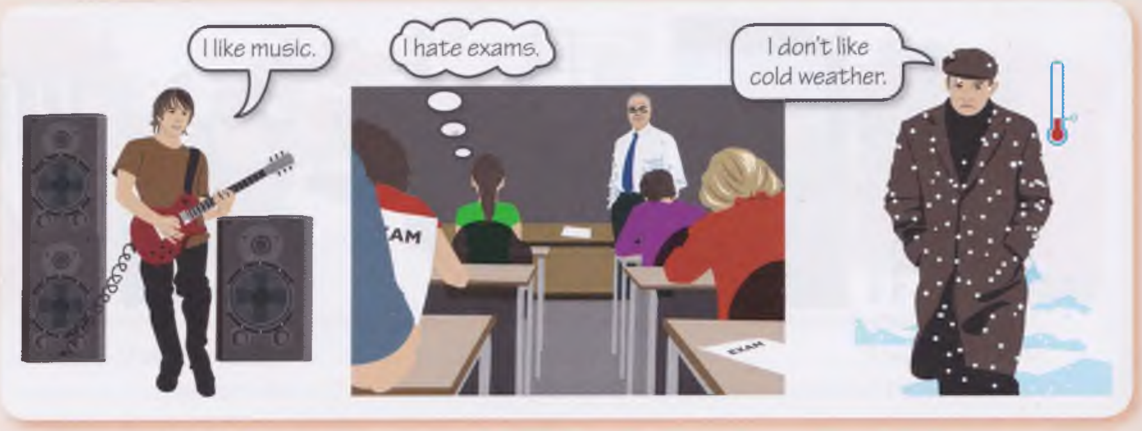
71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went to cinema last night. to the cinema………
2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. OK………
3 Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. …………
4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. …………
5 Why is Angela always late for work? …………
6 'Where are your children?' 'They're at school.' …………
7 We have no money in bank. …………
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. …………
9 What time do you usually get home from work? …………
10 Do you live far from city centre? …………
11 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.' …………
12 James is ill. He's in hospital. …………
13 Kate takes her children to school every day. …………
14 Would you like to go to university? …………
15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening? …………

Unit
72

I like **music** I hate **exams**

A


I like music.
I hate exams.
I don't like cold weather.
EXAM
EXAM

We do not use **the** for general ideas:

- ☐ I like **music**, especially **classical music**.
  (*not* the music … the classical music)
- ☐ We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- ☐ **Life** is not possible without **water**.
  (*not* The life … the water)
- ☐ I hate **exams**. (*not* the exams)
- ☐ Is there a shop near here that sells **newspapers**?

We do not use **the** for games and sports:

- ☐ My favourite sports are **football** and **skiing**. (*not* the football … the skiing)

We do not use **the** for languages or school subjects (**history**/**geography**/**physics**/**biology** etc.):

- ☐ Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- ☐ Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

B

flowers or **the flowers**?

Compare:

☐ **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)	☐ I love this garden. **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in this garden)
☐ I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)	☐ **The weather** isn't very good today. (= the weather today)
☐ We don't eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)	☐ We had a great meal last night. **The fish** was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
☐ Are you interested in **history**? (= history in general)	☐ Do you know much about **the history** of your country?

The flowers are beautiful.

the ➜ Units 69–71, 73

Exercises

72.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities
chocolate
computer games
dogs
exams
housework
jazz
museums
parties
tennis

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... **I don't like ...** **I love ...** **I hate ...** or **... is/are all right**

1 I hate exams. or I like exams. or Exams are all right. (etc.)
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ...
I'm not interested in ...
I know a lot about ...
I know a little about ...
I don't know much about ...
I don't know anything about ...

1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
2 (politics) I
3 (sport)
4 (art)
5 (astronomy)
6 (economics)

72.3 Which is right?

1 My favourite sport is football / ~~the football~~. (football *is right*)
2 I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms *is right*)
3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
9 An architect is a person who designs buildings / the buildings.
10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17 I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
18 Do you want to see pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on holiday?
19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

Unit
73

the ... (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of places:

☐ **France** is a very large country. (*not* the France)
☐ **Cairo** is the capital of **Egypt**.
☐ **Corsica** is an island in the Mediterranean.
☐ **Peru** is in **South America**.

But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Czech **Republic**
the United **States** of America (**the** USA)
the United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)

B

the -s (plural names)

We use **the** with *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Netherlands
the Philippines
the Canary Islands
the Alps

C

Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean)
the (River) Nile
the Mediterranean (Sea)
the Suez Canal
the Amazon
the Black Sea

D

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of streets, squares etc. :

☐ Kevin lives in **Newton Street**.
☐ Where is **Highfield Road**, please?
☐ **Times Square** is in New York.

We do not use **the** with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:

Kennedy Airport
Victoria Station
Westminster Abbey
Edinburgh Castle
London Zoo

also

Cambridge University, **Harvard University** etc.

But we use **the** with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:

the Regent Hotel
the Science Museum
the National Theatre
the Odeon (cinema)

E

the ... **of** ...

We use **the** + names with ... **of** ... :

the Museum **of** Modern Art
the Great Wall **of** China
the University **of** California
the Tower **of** London

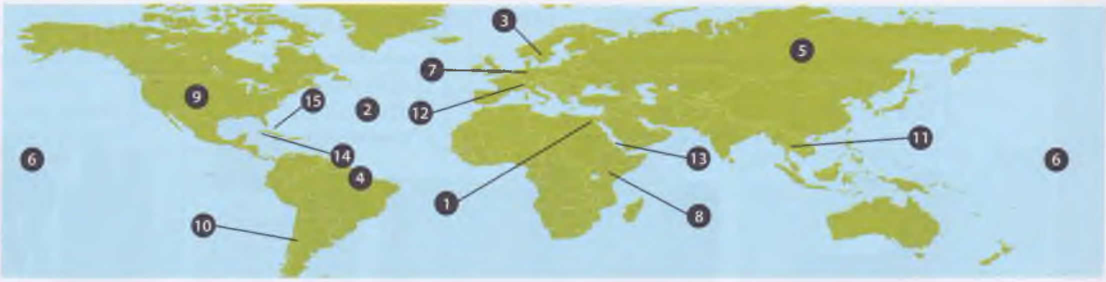
We say **the north** / **the south** / **the east** / **the west** (of ...):

☐ I've been to **the north of Italy**, but not to **the south**.

the → Units 69–72

Exercises

73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use **The** if necessary.



1 Cairo .... is the capital of Egypt.
2 The Atlantic .... is between Africa and America.
3 .... is a country in northern Europe.
4 .... is a river in South America.
5 .... is the largest continent in the world.
6 .... is the largest ocean.
7 .... is a river in Europe.
8 .... is a country in East Africa.
9 .... is between Canada and Mexico.
10 .... are mountains in South America.
11 .... is the capital of Thailand.
12 .... are mountains in central Europe.
13 .... is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14 .... is an island in the Caribbean.
15 .... are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps
Amazon
Andes
Asia
~~Atlantic~~
Bahamas
Bangkok
~~Cairo~~
Jamaica
Kenya
Pacific
Red Sea
Rhine
Sweden
United States

73.2 Write **the** where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1 Kevin lives in Newton Street. .... OK
2 We went to see a play at National Theatre. .... at the National Theatre
3 Have you ever been to China? ....
4 Have you ever been to Philippines? ....
5 Have you ever been to south of France? ....
6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is? ....
7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is? ....
8 Can you tell me where Museum of Art is? ....
9 Europe is bigger than Australia. ....
10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands. ....
11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? ....
12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London? ....
13 We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road. ....
14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (*in London*)? ....
15 Rocky Mountains are in North America. ....
16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. ....
17 I hope to go to United States next year. ....
18 Mary comes from west of Ireland. ....
19 Alan is a student at Manchester University. ....
20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. ....

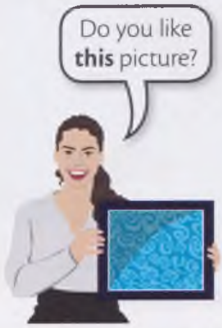
→ **Additional exercises 33–34** (pages 269–70)

Unit
74

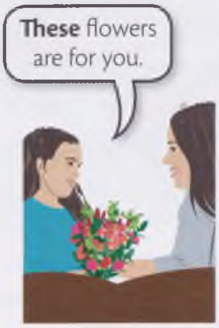
this/that/these/those

A

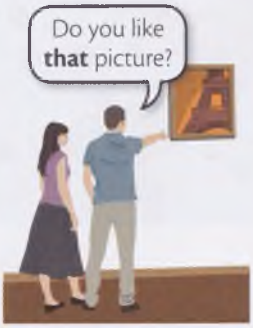
this *(singular)*


Do you like **this** picture?

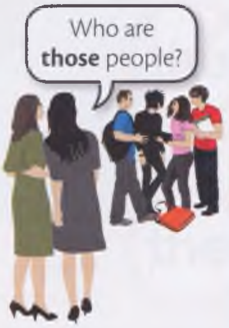
these *(plural)*


These flowers are for you.

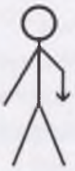
that *(singular)*


Do you like **that** picture?

those *(plural)*

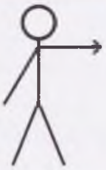

Who are **those** people?

this
these



this picture
(= this picture *here*)
these flowers
(= these flowers *here*)

that
those



that picture
(= that picture *there*)
those people
(= those people *there*)

B

We use **this**/**that**/**these**/**those** with a noun (**this picture** / **those girls** etc.) or without a noun:

○ **This hotel** is expensive, but it's very nice.
○ 'Who's **that girl**?' 'I don't know.'
○ Do you like **these shoes**? I bought them last week.
○ **Those apples** look nice. Can I have one?

with a noun

○ **This** is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
○ 'Excuse me, is **this** your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
○ Who's **that**? (= Who is that person?)
○ Which shoes do you prefer – **these** or **those**?

without a noun

C

that = something that *has happened*:

○ 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' '**That**'s all right.'
○ **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

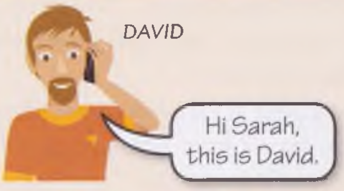
that = what somebody *has just said*:

○ 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, **that**'s right.'
○ 'Martin has a new job.' 'Really? I didn't know **that**.'
○ 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, **that**'s nice.'

D

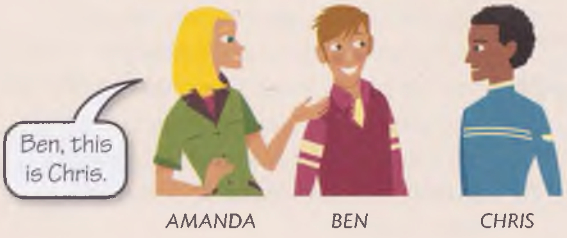
We use **this is** ... and **is that** ... **?** on the phone:

○ Hi Sarah, **this** is David.
(**this** = the speaker)
○ Is **that** Sarah?
(**that** = the other person)


DAVID
Hi Sarah, this is David.

We use **this is** ... to introduce people:

○ A: Ben, **this is** Chris.
B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
C: Hi.

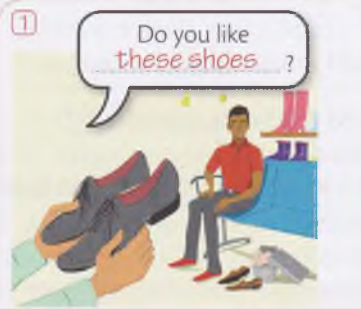

Ben, this is Chris.
AMANDA
BEN
CHRIS

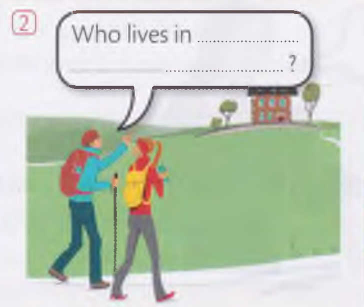
this one / that one ➜ Unit 75

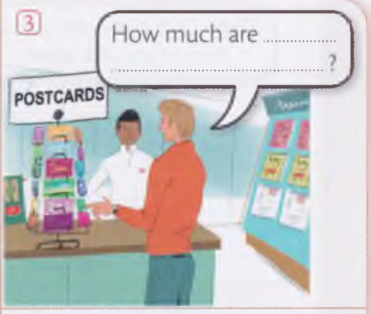
Exercises

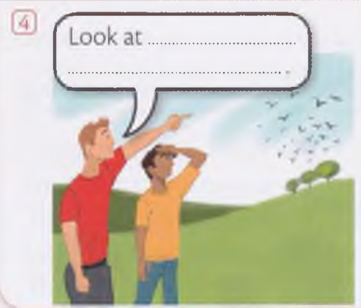
74.1 Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:

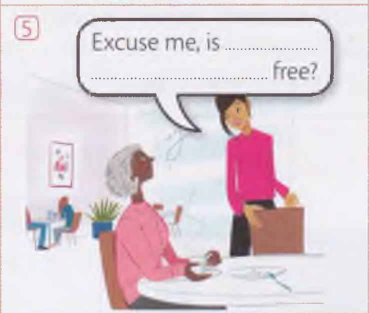
birds **house** **plates** **postcards** **seat** ~~**shoes**~~

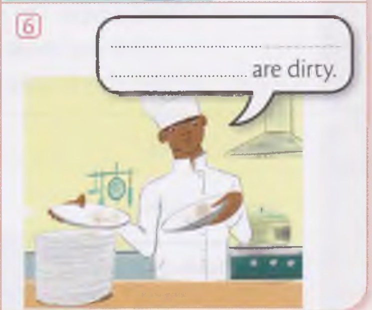
1

Do you like these shoes ?

2

Who lives in .... ?

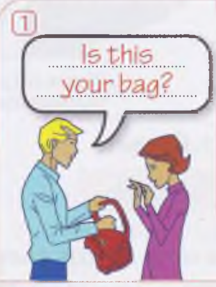
3

How much are .... ?
POSTCARDS

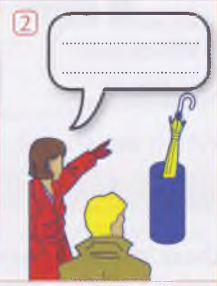
4


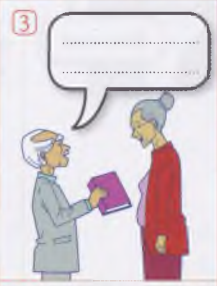
5

Excuse me, is .... free?

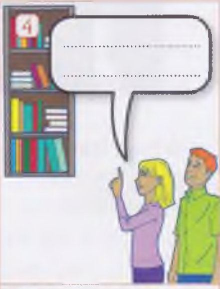
6


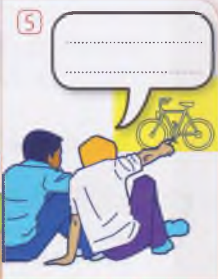
74.2 Write questions: **Is this/that your ... ?** or **Are these/those your ... ?**

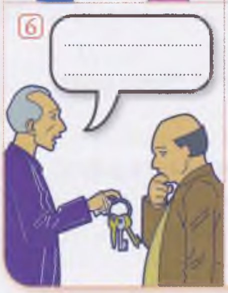
1

Is this your bag?

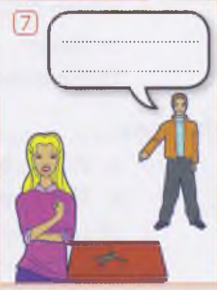
2


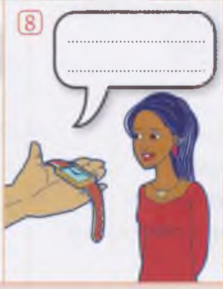
3


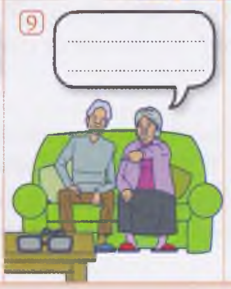
4


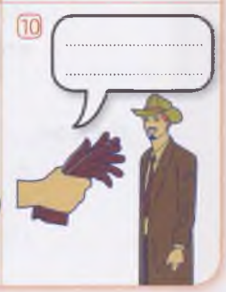
5


6


7


8


9


10


74.3 Complete the sentences with **this is** or **that's** or **that**.

1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: That's all right.

2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
B: Oh, ... a pity. Why not?

3 *on the phone*
SUE: Hello, Jane. .... Sue.
JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?

4 A: You're lazy.
B: .... not true!

5 A: Beth plays the piano very well.
B: Does she? I didn't know ....

6 *Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.*
PAUL: Mark, ... my sister, Helen.
MARK: Hi, Helen.

7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
B: .... OK. Forget it!

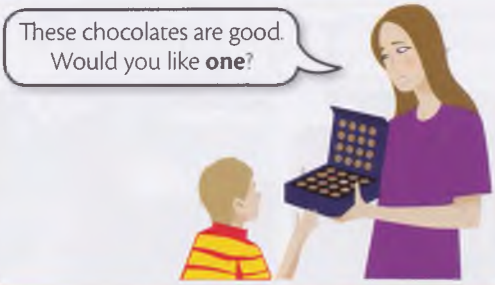
8 A: You're a friend of Tom's, aren't you?
B: Yes, ... right.

Unit
75

one/ones

A

one (= **a** ...)


These chocolates are good.
Would you like **one**?

Would you like **one** ?

= Would you like **a chocolate** ?

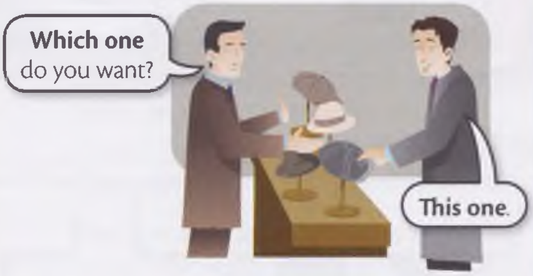
one = **a/an** ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

- I need **a pen**. Do you have **one**? (**one** = **a pen**)
- A: Is there **a bank** near here?
  B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = **a bank**)

B

one and **ones**

one (*singular*)


Which one do you want?
This one.

Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

one = **hat/car/girl** etc.

this one / **that one**

- Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

- A: Which **hotel** did you stay at?
  B: **The one** opposite the station.
- I found this **key**. Is it **the one** you lost?

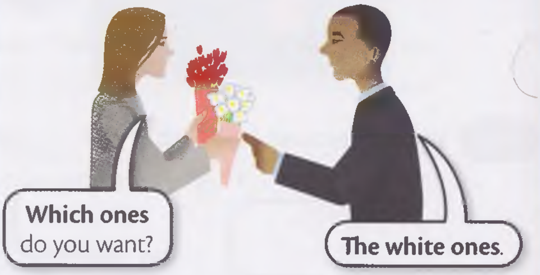
the ... **one**

- I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the brown one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a/an ... **one**

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- That **biscuit** was nice. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones (*plural*)


Which ones do you want?
The white ones.

Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

ones = **flowers/cars/girls** etc.

these/those or **these ones** / **those ones**

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? *or*
  These ones or **those ones**?

the ones ...

- A: Which **books** are yours?
  B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** you lost?

the ... **ones**

- I don't like the red **shoes**, but I like **the green ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

some ... **ones**

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

which ... ? ➜ Unit 47 **another** ➜ Unit 65 **this/that** ➜ Unit 74

Exercises

75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use **one** (not **a/an …**) in the answers.

- B doesn't need a car
- there's a chemist in Mill Road
- ~~B doesn't have a pen~~
- B has just had a cup of coffee
- B is going to get a bike
- B doesn't have an umbrella

1 A: Can you lend me a pen? B: I'm sorry, I don't have one .
2 A: Would you like to have a car? B: No, I don't ....
3 A: Do you have a bike? B: No, but ....
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? B: I'm sorry, but ....
5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you. ....
6 A: Is there a chemist near here? B: Yes, ...

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a/an … one.** Use the words in the list.

better **big** ~~**clean**~~ **different** **new** **old**

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one ?
2 I'm going to sell my car and buy ....
3 That's not a very good photo, but this is ....
4 I want today's newspaper. This is ....
5 This box is too small. I need ....
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to ....

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use **one/ones.**

1 *A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station.*
A: We stayed at a hotel.
B: Which one ?
A: The one opposite the station.

2 *A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green.*
A: I like those shoes.
B: Which .... ?
A: The ....

3 *A is looking at a house. It has a red door.*
A: That's a nice house.
B: .... ?
A: .... with ....

4 *A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.*
A: Are those your CDs?
B: .... ?
A: ....

5 *A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black.*
A: Do you like that jacket?
B: .... ?
A: ....

6 *A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.*
A: That's an interesting picture.
B: .... ?
A: ....

7 *A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.*
A: Do you know that girl?
B: .... ?
A: ....

8 *A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow.*
A: Those flowers are beautiful.
B: .... ?
A: ....

9 *A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses.*
A: Who's that man?
B: .... ?
A: ....

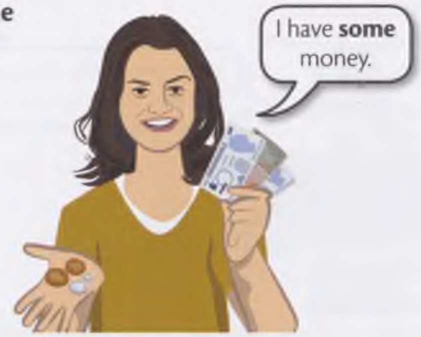
10 *A took some photos at the party last week.*
A: Did I show you my photos?
B: .... ?
A: ....

Unit
76

some and any

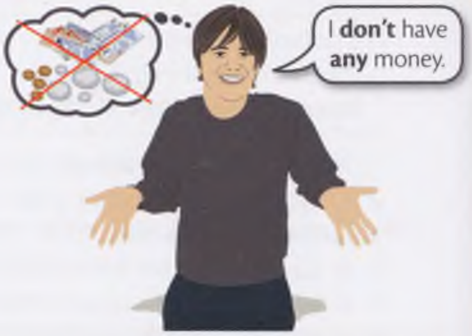
A

some


I have **some** money.

Use **some** in *positive* sentences:
- ☐ I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- ☐ There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We made **some** mistakes.

any


I **don't** have **any** money.

Use **any** in *negative* sentences:
- ☐ I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- ☐ There **isn't any** milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not* **some**):
- ☐ Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- ☐ Does he have **any** friends?
- ☐ Do you need **any** help?

Do you have **any** money?

We normally use **some** (*not* **any**) when we *offer* things (**Would you like** … **?**):
- ☐ A: Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (**Can I have** … **?** etc.):
- ☐ A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- ☐ A: Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

Would you like some coffee?

C

some and **any** without a noun

- ☐ I didn't take any pictures, but Jessica took **some**. (= some pictures)
- ☐ You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- ☐ I've just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- ☐ 'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have **any**.' (= any luggage)
- ☐ 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

D

something / **somebody** (*or* **someone**)
- ☐ She said **something**.
- ☐ I saw **somebody** (*or* **someone**).
- ☐ Would you like **something** to eat?
- ☐ **Somebody**'s at the door.

anything / **anybody** (*or* **anyone**)
- ☐ She **didn't** say **anything**.
- ☐ I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or* **anyone**).
- ☐ Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- ☐ Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?

a and **some** ➜ Unit 68 **somebody/anything** etc. ➜ Unit 79

Exercises

76.1 Write **some** or **any**.

1 I bought ....some.... cheese, but I didn't buy ....any.... bread.
2 In the middle of the room there was a table and .... chairs.
3 There aren't .... shops in this part of town.
4 Gary and Alice don't have .... children.
5 Do you have .... brothers or sisters?
6 There are .... beautiful flowers in the garden.
7 Do you know .... good hotels in London?
8 'Would you like .... tea?' 'Yes, please.'
9 When we were on holiday, we visited .... interesting places.
10 Don't buy .... rice. We don't need ....
11 I went out to buy .... bananas, but they didn't have .... in the shop.
12 I'm thirsty. Can I have .... water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + the words in the box.

air	**cheese**	**help**	**milk**	**questions**
batteries	**friends**	**languages**	**pictures**	~~**shampoo**~~

1 I want to wash my hair. Is there ....any shampoo.... ?
2 The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you ....
3 I had my camera, but I didn't take ....
4 Do you speak .... foreign .... ?
5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with .... of mine.
6 Can I have .... in my coffee, please?
7 The radio isn't working. There aren't .... in it.
8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for .... fresh ....
9 A: Would you like .... ?
B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
10 I can do this job alone. I don't need ....

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any**.

1 Kate didn't take any pictures, but ....I took some.... . (I/take)
2 'Where's your luggage?' '....I don't have any....' (I/not/have)
3 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you. ....' (I/have)
4 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry, but ....' (I/not/have)
5 The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so .... (I/not/buy)
6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so .... (I/buy)
7 'How much coffee did you drink yesterday?' '..........................' (I/not/drink)

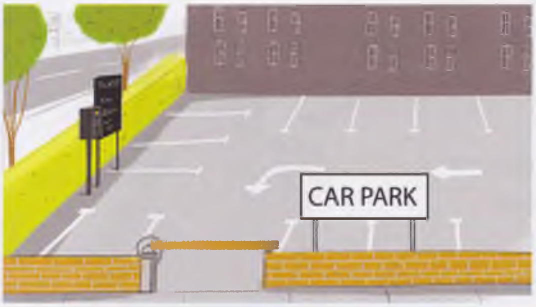
76.4 Write **something/somebody** or **anything/anybody**.

1 A woman stopped me and said ....something.... , but I didn't understand.
2 'What's wrong?' 'There's .... in my eye.'
3 Do you know .... about politics?
4 I went to the shop, but I didn't buy ....
5 .... has broken the window. I don't know who.
6 There isn't .... in the bag. It's empty.
7 I'm looking for my keys. Has .... seen them?
8 Would you like .... to drink?
9 I didn't eat .... because I wasn't hungry.
10 This is a secret. Please don't tell ....

Unit
77

not + any   no   none

A



The car park is empty.

There are**n't any** cars
There are **no** cars } in the car park.

How many cars are there in the car park?
None.

not (**-n't**) + **any**

- There are**n't any** cars in the car park.
- Tracey and Jack do**n't** have **any** children.
- You can have some coffee, but I do**n't** want **any**.

no + *noun* (**no cars** / **no garden** etc.)

no ... = **not any** *or* **not a**

- There are **no cars** in the car park. (= there are**n't any** cars)
- We have **no coffee**. (= we do**n't** have **any** coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's **no garden**. (= there is**n't a** garden)

We use **no** ... especially after **have** and **there is**/**are**.

negative verb + **any** = *positive verb* + **no**

- They **don't** have **any** children. *or* They **have no** children.
  (*not* They don't have no children)
- There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. *or* There**'s no** sugar in your coffee.

B

no and **none**

Use **no** + *noun* (**no money** / **no children** etc.):

- We have **no money**.
- Everything was OK. There were **no problems**.

Use **none** alone (*without* a noun):

- 'How much money do you have?' '**None**.' (= no money)
- 'Were there any problems?' 'No, **none**.' (= no problems)

C

none and **no-one**

none = 0 (zero)
no-one = nobody

None is an answer for **How much**? / **How many**? (things or people):

- A: **How much** money do you have?
  B: **None**. (= no money)
- A: **How many** people did you meet?
  B: **None**. (= no people)

No-one is an answer for **Who**?:

- A: **Who** did you meet?
  B: **No-one**. (*or* **Nobody**.)

negatives ➜ Unit 43   **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 76   **anybody**/**nobody**/**nothing** etc. ➜ Units 78–79

Exercises

77.1 Write these sentences again with **no**.

1 We don't have any money. ......We have no money.......
2 There aren't any shops near here. There are ....
3 Carla doesn't have any free time. ....
4 There isn't a light in this room. ....

Write these sentences again with **any**.

5 We have no money. ......We don't have any money.......
6 There's no milk in the fridge. ....
7 There are no buses today. ....
8 Tom has no brothers or sisters. ....

77.2 Write **no** or **any**.

1 There's ......no...... sugar in your coffee.
2 My brother is married, but he doesn't have .... children.
3 Sue doesn't speak .... foreign languages.
4 I'm afraid there's .... coffee. Would you like some tea?
5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see .... birds.'
6 'Do you know where Jessica is?' 'No, I have .... idea.'

Write **no**, **any** or **none**.

7 There aren't .... pictures on the wall.
8 The weather was cold, but there was .... wind.
9 I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have .... in the shop.
10 Everything was correct. There were .... mistakes.
11 'How much luggage do you have?' '.................. .'
12 'How much luggage do you have?' 'I don't have ....'

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + the words in the box.

difference **friends** **furniture** **heating** **idea**
money **~~problems~~** **questions** **queue**

1 Everything was OK. There were ......no problems...... .
2 Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they have ....
3 I'm not going to answer ....
4 He's always alone. He has ....
5 There is .... between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6 There wasn't .... in the room. It was completely empty.
7 'Do you know how the accident happened?' 'No, I have ....'
8 The house is cold because there isn't ....
9 We didn't have to wait to get our train tickets. There was ....

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **none** where necessary.

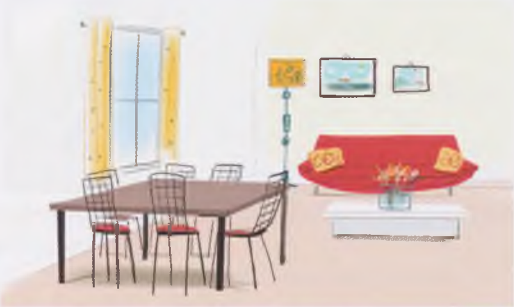
1 How many letters did you write yesterday? ......Two...... or ......A lot...... or ......None......
2 How many sisters do you have? ....
3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday? ....
4 How many photos have you taken today? ....
5 How many legs does a snake have? ....

Unit 78

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

A

not + **anybody/anyone**
nobody/no-one
(for *people*)



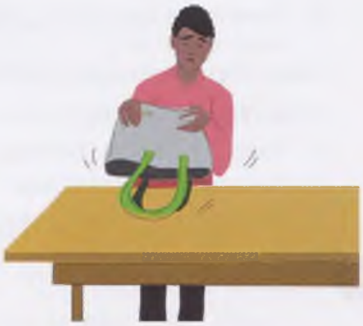
○ There **isn't** $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{anybody}\\ \textbf{anyone}\end{array}\right\}$ in the room.

○ There **is** $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{nobody}\\ \textbf{no-one}\end{array}\right\}$ in the room.

○ A: **Who** is in the room?
B: **Nobody.** / **No-one.**

-body and **-one** are the same:
any**body** = any**one** no**body** = no-**one**

not + **anything**
nothing
(for *things*)



○ There **isn't anything** in the bag.

○ There **is nothing** in the bag.

○ A: **What**'s in the bag?
B: **Nothing.**

B

not + **anybody/anyone**

○ I do**n't** know **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) here.

nobody = **not** + **anybody**
no-one = **not** + **anyone**

○ I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to.
(= I do**n't** have **anybody**)

○ The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= There is**n't anyone** in it.)

not + **anything**

○ I **can't** remember **anything**.

nothing = **not** + **anything**

○ She said **nothing**.
(= She did**n't** say **anything**.)

○ There's **nothing** to eat.
(= There is**n't anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

○ The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.

○ 'Who did you speak to?' '**No-one**.'

○ **Nothing** happened.

○ 'What did you say?' '**Nothing**.'

D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**
positive verb + **nobody/no-one/nothing**

○ He does**n't** know **anything**. (*not* He doesn't know nothing)
○ Do**n't** tell **anybody**. (*not* Don't tell nobody)
○ There **is nothing** to do in this town. (*not* There isn't nothing)

some and **any** ➜ Unit 76 **any** and **no** ➜ Unit 77 **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc. ➜ Unit 79

Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with **nobody/no-one** or **nothing**.

1 There isn't anything in the bag. .... *There's nothing in the bag.* ....
2 There isn't anybody in the office. There's ....
3 I don't have anything to do. I ....
4 There isn't anything on TV. ....
5 There wasn't anyone at home. ....
6 We didn't find anything. ....

78.2 Write these sentences again with **anybody/anyone** or **anything**.

1 There's nothing in the bag. .... *There isn't anything in the bag.* ....
2 There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't ....
3 I have nothing to read. ....
4 I have no-one to help me. ....
5 She heard nothing. ....
6 We have nothing for dinner. ....

78.3 Answer these questions with **nobody/no-one** or **nothing**.

1a What did you say? .... *Nothing.* ....
2a Who saw you? .... *Nobody.* ....
3a What do you want? ....
4a Who did you meet? ....
5a Who knows the answer? ....
6a What did you buy? ....
7a What happened? ....
8a Who was late? ....

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use **nobody/no-one/nothing** or **anybody/anyone/anything**:

1b .... *I didn't say anything.* ....
2b .... *Nobody saw me.* ....
3b I don't ....
4b I ....
5b .... the answer.
6b ....
7b ....
8b ....

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

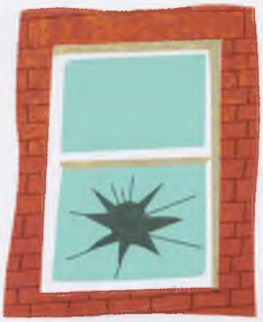
nobody / no-one / nothing or **anybody / anyone / anything**

1 That house is empty. .... *Nobody* .... lives there.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember .... *anything* ....
3 Be quiet! Don't say ....
4 I didn't know about the meeting. .... told me.
5 'What did you have to eat?' '........ . I wasn't hungry.'
6 I didn't eat .... I wasn't hungry.
7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with ....
8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's .... I can do.
9 I don't know .... about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost .... to go in.
11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was .... there.
12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn't understand ....
13 'What are you doing tonight?' '........ . Why?'
14 Sophie has gone away. .... knows where she is. She didn't tell .... where she was going.

Unit
79

somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

A



Somebody (or **Someone**) has broken the window.

somebody/someone = a person, but we don't know who

She has got **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what

Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

B

people (**-body** *or* **-one**)

somebody *or* **someone**
anybody *or* **anyone**
nobody *or* **no-one**

- ☐ There is **somebody** (*or* **someone**) at the door.
- ☐ Is there **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door?
- ☐ There isn't **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door.
- ☐ There is **nobody** (*or* **no-one**) at the door.

-body and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone, nobody** = **no-one** etc.

things (**-thing**)

something
anything
nothing

- ☐ Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
- ☐ Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?
- ☐ I was angry, but I did**n't** say **anything**.
- ☐ 'What did you say?' '**Nothing**.'

places (**-where**)

somewhere
anywhere
nowhere

- ☐ Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.
- ☐ Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?
- ☐ I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- ☐ I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody etc. + *adjective* (**big/cheap/interesting** etc.)

- ☐ Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- ☐ We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
- ☐ 'What's that letter?' 'It's **nothing important**.'

D

something/anybody etc. + **to** ...

- ☐ I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- ☐ Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- ☐ There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

some and **any** ➜ Unit 76 **any** and **no** ➜ Unit 77 **anybody/nothing** etc. ➜ Unit 78
everything/-body/-where ➜ Unit 80

Exercises

79.1 Write **somebody** (or **someone**) / **something** / **somewhere**.

1	Lucy said something	What did she say?
2	I've lost	What have you lost?
3	Sue and Tom went	Where did they go?
4	I'm going to phone	Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write **nobody** (or **no-one**) / **nothing** / **nowhere**.

1a	What did you say?	Nothing.
2a	Where are you going?	......
3a	What do you want?	......
4a	Who are you looking for?	......

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use **not + anybody/anything/anywhere.**

1b I didn't say anything.

2b I'm not ......

3b ......

4b ......

79.3 Write **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc.

1 It's dark. I can't see anything .

2 Tom lives somewhere near London.

3 Do you know ...... about computers?

4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear ....'

5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for ....'

6 We need to talk. There's ...... I want to tell you.

7 'Did ...... see the accident?' 'No, ...'

8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat ....

9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. ...... knows.'

10 'Do you know ...... in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'

11 'What's in that cupboard?' '...... . It's empty.'

12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them ....

13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live ...... warm.

14 Is there ...... interesting on TV tonight?

15 Have you ever met ...... famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something	**anything**	**nothing**
something	**anywhere**	**~~nowhere~~**
somewhere		**nowhere**

do	**eat**	**park**	**sit**
drink	**~~go~~**	**read**	**stay**

1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go .

2 There isn't any food in the house. We don't have ....

3 I'm bored. I've got ....

4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't ....'

5 'Would you like ...... ?' 'Yes, please – a glass of water.'

6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's

....

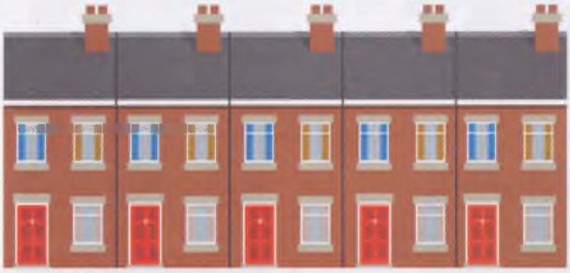
7 I want .... I'm going to buy a magazine.

8 I need ...... in London. Can you recommend a hotel?

Unit
80

every and all

A every



Every house in the street is the same.

every house in the street =
all the houses in the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house** / **every country** etc.):

- Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every** ... :

- **Every house** in the street **is** the same. (*not* are the same)
- **Every country has** a national flag. (*not* have)

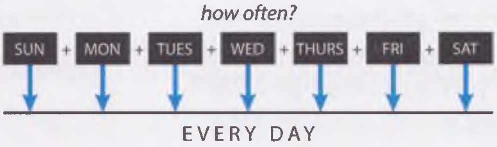
Compare **every** and **all**:

- **Every student** in the class passed the exam.
- **Every country has** a national flag.

- **All the students** in the class passed the exam.
- **All countries have** a national flag.

B every day and all day

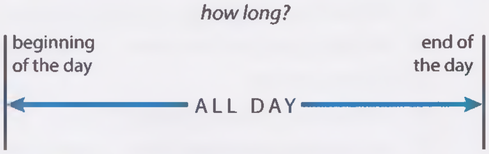
every day = on all days:



- It rained **every day** last week.
- Ben watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

also **every morning/night/summer** etc.

all day = the complete day:



- It rained **all day** yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)

also **all morning/night/summer** etc.

C everybody (*or* everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody *or* **everyone**
(people)
everything
(things)
everywhere
(places)

- **Everybody** (*or* **Everyone**) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Do you have **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody has** problems. (*not* Everybody have)

all → Unit 81

Exercises

80.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + these words:

day **room** **~~student~~** **time** **word**

1 ......Every student...... in the class passed the exam.
2 My job is very boring. .... is the same.
3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins ....
4 .... in the hotel has free internet access and a minibar.
5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it, but not ....'

80.2 Complete the sentences with **every day** or **all day**.

1 Yesterday it rained ......all day...... .
2 I buy a newspaper ...., but sometimes I don't read it.
3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home ....
4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee ....
5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed ....
6 I'm tired now because I've been working hard ....
7 Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained ....

80.3 Write **every** or **all**.

1 Bill watches TV for about two hours ......every...... evening.
2 Julia gets up at 6.30 .... morning.
3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside .... afternoon.
4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away .... week.
5 A: How often do you go skiing?
B: .... year. Usually in March.
6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
B: Yes, I was at home .... morning. I went out after lunch.
7 My sister loves new cars. She buys one .... year.
8 I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me .... evening.
9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks .... summer.

80.4 Write **everybody/everything/everywhere**.

1 ......Everybody...... needs friends.
2 Chris knows .... about computers.
3 I like the people here. .... is very friendly.
4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and .... is very clean.
5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes .... by motorcycle.
6 Let's get something to eat. .... is hungry.
7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books ....
8 You are right. .... you say is true.

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1 Everybody ......has...... problems.
2 Are you ready yet? Everybody .... waiting for you.
3 The house is empty. Everyone .... gone out.
4 Gary is very popular. Everybody .... him.
5 This town is completely different now. Everything .... changed.
6 I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone .... asleep.
7 Everybody .... mistakes!
8 A: .... everything clear? .... everybody know what to do?
B: Yes, we all understand.

Unit
81

all most some any no/none

A

Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):

○ **Children** like playing.
(= children in general)

○ **Money** isn't everything.
(= money in general)

○ I enjoy reading **books**.

○ Everybody needs **friends**.

the children / **the** money / **these** books etc. :

○ Where are **the children**?
(= our children)

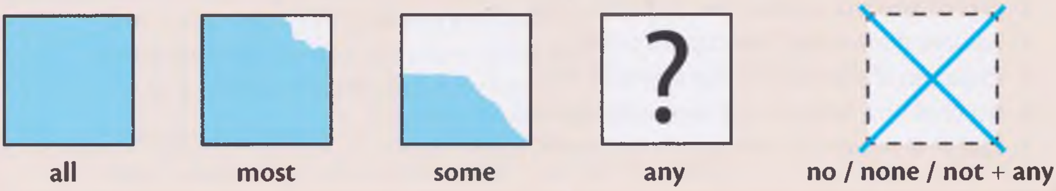
○ I want to buy a car, but I don't have **the money**. (= the money for a car)

○ Have you read **these books**?

○ I often go out with **my friends**.

B

most / **most of** ... , **some** / **some of** ... etc.



most/some etc. + noun

all **most** **some** **any** **no**	~~of~~	**cities** **children** **books** **money**

○ **Most children** like playing.
(= children in general)

○ I don't want **any money**.

○ **Some books** are better than others.

○ He has **no friends**.

○ **All cities** have the same problems.
(= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

○ **Most people** drive too fast.
(*not* Most of people)

○ **Some birds** can't fly.
(*not* Some of birds)

most of/some of etc. + **the/this/my** ... etc.

all	(**of**)	**the** ... **this/that** ... **these/those** ... **my/your**... etc.
most **some** **any** **none**	**of**	

○ **Most of the children at this school** are under 11 years old.

○ I don't want **any of this money**.

○ **Some of these books** are very old.

○ **None of my friends** live near me.

You can say **all the** ... or **all of the** ... (with or without **of**):

○ **All the students in our class** passed the exam. (*or* **All of the students** ...)

○ Amy has lived in London **all her life**.
(*or*... **all of her life**.)

C

all of it / **most of them** / **none of us** etc.

all **most** **some** **any** **none**	**of**	**it** **them** **us** **you**

○ You can have **some of this cake**, but not **all of it**.

○ A: Do you know those people?
B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.

○ **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?

○ I have a lot of books, but I haven't read **any of them**.

○ 'How many of these books have you read?' '**None of them**.'

the ... (**children** / **the children** etc.) ➜ Unit 72 **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 76 **no/none/any** ➜ Unit 77
all and **every** ➜ Unit 80

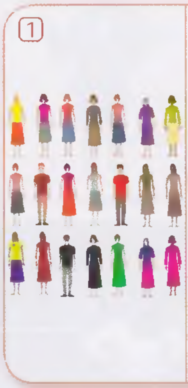
Exercises

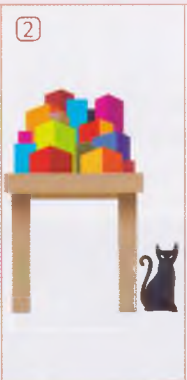
81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some/most** etc.). Sometimes you need **of** (**some of / most of** etc.).

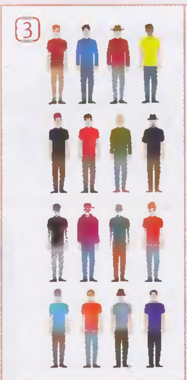
1 ....Most.... children like playing. (**most**)
2 ....Some of.... this money is yours. (**some**)
3 .... people never stop talking. (**some**)
4 .... the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (**most**)
5 .... people have mobile phones these days. (**most**)
6 I don't like .... the pictures in the living room. (**any**)
7 He's lost .... his money. (**all**)
8 .... my friends are married. (**none**)
9 Do you know .... the people in this picture? (**any**)
10 .... birds can fly. (**most**)
11 I enjoyed .... the film, but I didn't like the ending. (**most**)
12 .... sports are very dangerous. (**some**)
13 We can't find anywhere to stay. .... the hotels are full. (**all**)
14 You must have .... this cheese. It's delicious. (**some**)
15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained .... the time. (**most**)

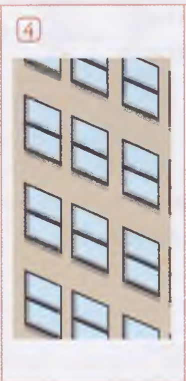
81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

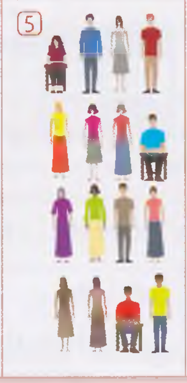
all/most/some/none + **of them / of it**

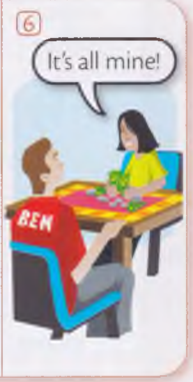












1 How many of the people are women? ....Most of them.
2 How many of the boxes are on the table? ....
3 How many of the men are wearing hats? ....
4 How many of the windows are open? ....
5 How many of the people are standing? ....
6 How much of the money is Ben's? ....

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

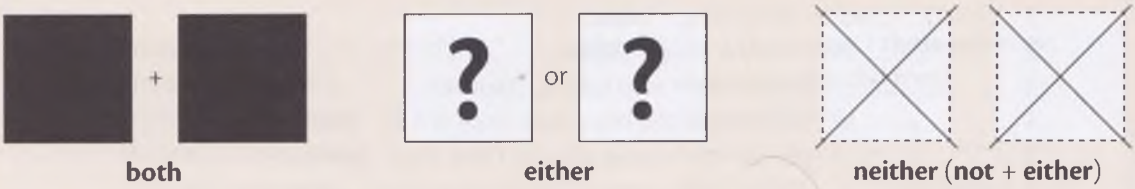
1 Most of children like playing. ....Most children
2 All the students failed the exam. ....OK
3 Some of people work too hard. ....
4 Some of questions in the exam were very easy. ....
5 I haven't seen any of those people before. ....
6 All of insects have six legs. ....
7 Have you read all these books? ....
8 Most of students in our class are very nice. ....
9 Most of my friends are going to the party. ....
10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. ....

Unit
82

both either neither

A

We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people:



- Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
  B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**neither** = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- 'Would you like **tea** or **coffee**?'
  '**Either**. I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee)
  'I **don't** want **either**.' (*not* I don't want neither)
  '**Neither**.' (= not tea or coffee)

B

both/either/neither + *noun*

both + *plural*
either / **neither** + *singular*

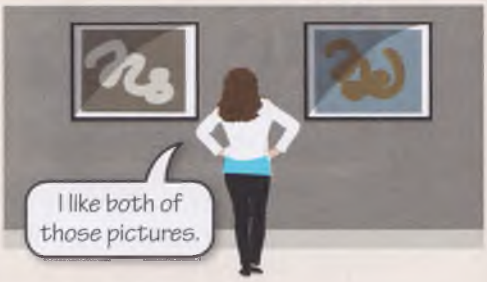
both	**windows/books/children** etc.
either **neither**	**window/book/child** etc.

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

C

both of ... / **either of** ... / **neither of** ...

both	**(of)**	**the** ...
either **neither**	**of**	**these/those** ... **my/your/Paul's** ... etc.


I like both of those pictures.

- **Neither of my parents** is British.
- I **haven't** read **either of these books**.

You can say **both of the/those/my** ... or **both the/those/my** ... (with or without **of**):

- I like **both of** those pictures. *or*
  I like **both** those pictures.
- **Both of** Paul's sisters are married. *or*
  Both Paul's sisters are married.

but ○ **Neither of** Paul's sisters is married. (*not* Neither Paul's sisters)

D

both of them / neither of us

both		**them**
either	**of**	**us**
neither		**you**

- Paul has two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I **don't** know **either of them**.

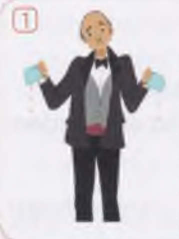
I can't either / neither can I → Unit 42

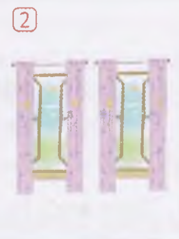
Exercises

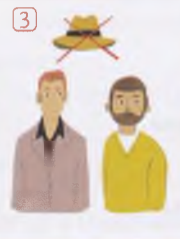
82.1 Write **both/either/neither**. Use **of** where necessary.

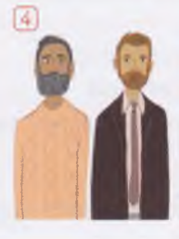
1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked ....both.... cities very much.
2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like ....either of.... them.
3 It was a good football match. .... teams played well.
4 It wasn't a good football match. .... team played well.
5 'Is your friend English or American?' '........................ . She's Australian.'
6 We went away for two days, but the weather wasn't good. It rained .... days.
7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
B: .... It doesn't matter which one.
8 I invited Sam and Chris to the party, but .... them came.
9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' '........................ . I always walk.'
10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like .... them.'
11 'Do you work or are you a student?' '........................ . I work and I'm a student too.'
12 My friend and I went to the cinema, but .... us liked the film. It was really bad.
13 Helen has two sisters and a brother. .... sisters are married.
14 Helen has two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother, but I haven't met .... her sisters.

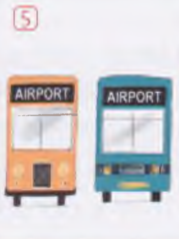
82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use **Both ...** and **Neither ...** .

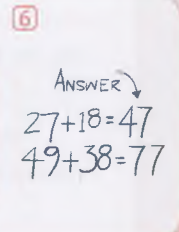












1 ....Both cups are.... empty.
2 .... are open.
3 .... wearing a hat.
4 .... beards.
5 .... to the airport.
6 .... correct.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with **Both/Neither of them ...** .

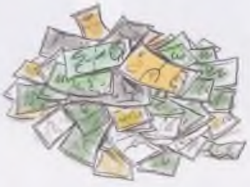
1	Are you married?	No	No
2	How old are you?	21	21
3	Are you a student?	Yes	Yes
4	Do you have a car?	No	No
5	Where do you live?	London	London
6	Do you like cooking?	Yes	Yes
7	Can you play the piano?	No	No
8	Do you eat seafood?	Yes	Yes
9	Are you interested in sport?	No	No

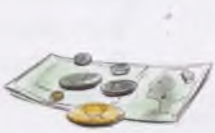
1 Neither of them is married.
2 Both of them are 21.
3 .... students.
4 .... a car.
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....

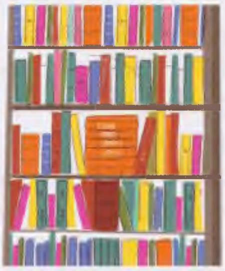
Unit
83

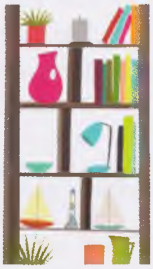
a lot much many

A


a lot of money


not much money


a lot of books


not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun*
(**much food** / **much money** etc.):

☐ Did you buy **much food**?
☐ We don't have **much luggage**.
☐ How **much money** do you want?
☐ A: Do you have any **money**?
B: I have some, but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun*
(**many books** / **many people** etc.):

☐ Did you buy **many books**?
☐ We don't know **many people**.
☐ How **many photos** did you take?
☐ A: Did you take any **photos**?
B: I took some, but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:

☐ We bought **a lot of food**.
☐ Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free **time**.

☐ We bought **a lot of books**.
☐ Did they ask **a lot of questions**?

We say:

☐ There **is** a lot of **food**/**money**/**water** ... *(singular verb)*

☐ There **are** a lot of **trees**/**shops**/**people** ... *(plural verb)*
☐ A lot of **people speak** English. (*not* speaks)

B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

☐ Do you drink **much coffee**?
☐ I don't drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*:

☐ I drink **a lot of coffee**. (*not* I drink much coffee)
☐ 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, **a lot**.' (*not* Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

☐ We have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
☐ We don't have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
☐ Do you have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends?

C

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

☐ Amy spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
☐ 'Do you watch TV **much**?' 'No, **not much**.' (= not often)
☐ We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. (*not* go to the cinema much)
☐ I don't like him very **much**.

countable/uncountable ➜ **Units 67–68**

Exercises

83.1 Write **much** or **many**.

1 Did you buy ....much.... food?
2 There aren't .... hotels in this town.
3 We don't have .... petrol. We need to stop and get some.
4 Were there .... people on the train?
5 Did .... students fail the exam?
6 Paula doesn't have .... money.
7 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat ....
8 I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for .... years.

Write **How much** or **How many**.

9 .... people are coming to the party?
10 .... milk do you want in your coffee?
11 .... bread did you buy?
12 .... players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

1 I don't read very much. I don't have ....many books.... .
2 Hurry up! We don't have ....
3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to .... ?
4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know ....
5 'Do you have .... ?' 'No, only this bag.'
6 I know Tokyo well. I've been there ....

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use **a lot of** + these words:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

1 I like reading. I have ....a lot of books.... .
2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw ....
3 This road is very dangerous. There are ....
4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had ....
5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was ....

83.4 In some of these sentences **much** is not natural. Change the sentences or write *OK*.

1 Do you drink much coffee? ....OK....
2 I drink much tea. ....a lot of tea....
3 It was a cold winter. We had much snow. ....
4 There wasn't much snow last winter. ....
5 It costs much money to travel around the world. ....
6 We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much. ....
7 Do you know much about computers? ....
8 'Do you have any luggage?' 'Yes, much.' ....

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use **much** and **a lot**.

1 James loves films. (go to the cinema) ....He goes to the cinema a lot....
2 Nicola thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) ....She doesn't watch TV much....
3 Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She ....
4 Mark doesn't like driving. (use his car) He ....
5 Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out) ....
6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel) ....

Unit
84

(a) little (a) few

A

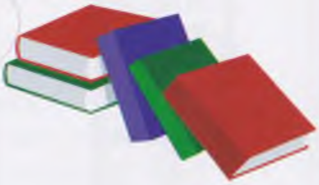
(**a**) **little** + *uncountable noun*:

(**a**) **little water**
(**a**) **little time**
(**a**) **little money**
(**a**) **little soup**

a little water

(**a**) **few** + *plural noun*:

(**a**) **few books**
(**a**) **few questions**
(**a**) **few people**
(**a**) **few days**



a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
- I speak **a little Spanish**.
  (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?
  B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many

- Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
- We're going away for **a few days**.
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- A: Are there any shops near here?
  B: Yes, **a few**.

C

✗**little** (without **a**) = nearly no *or* nearly nothing

- There was **little food** in the fridge.
  It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (= nearly nothing)

✗**few** (without **a**) = nearly no

- There were **few people** in the theatre.
  It was nearly empty.

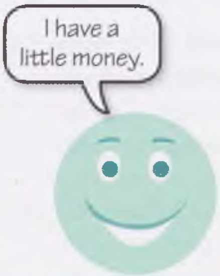
You can say **very few**:

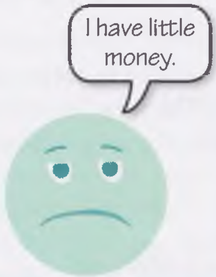
- Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.

D

Compare **little** and **a little**:

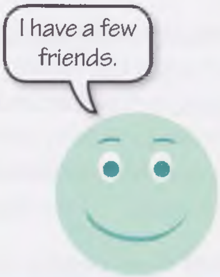
- They have **a little** money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)
- They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

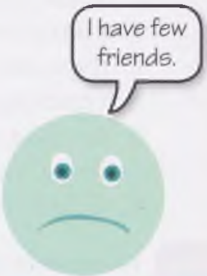

I have a little money.


I have little money.

Compare **few** and **a few**:

- I have **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)
- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have **few** friends. (= nearly no friends)


I have a few friends.


I have few friends.

countable/uncountable ➜ **Units 67–68**

Exercises

84.1 Answer the questions with **a little** or **a few**.

1 'Do you have any money?' 'Yes, ...a little... .'
2 'Do you have any envelopes?' 'Yes, ...'
3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, ... , please.'
4 'Did you take any photos when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, ...'
5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, ...'
6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes, ...'

84.2 Write **a little** or **a few** + these words:

chairs **days** **fresh air** **friends** **milk** **Russian** **times** **~~years~~**

1 Mark speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for ...a few years... .
2 Can I have .... in my coffee, please?
3 'When did Amy go away?' '.................................... ago.'
4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak ....'
5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with ....'
6 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'Yes, ...'
7 There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and ....
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need ....

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use **very little** or **very few** + these words:

coffee **hotels** **~~mistakes~~** **people** **rain** **time** **work**

1 Your English is very good. You make ...very few mistakes... .
2 I drink .... I prefer tea.
3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is ....
4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ....
5 Hurry up. We have ....
6 The town is very quiet at night. .... go out.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do ....

84.4 Write **little / a little** or **few / a few**.

1 There was ...little... food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2 'When did Sarah go out?' '.................................... minutes ago.'
3 I can't decide now. I need .... time to think about it.
4 There was .... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are .... buses after 9 o'clock.
6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, ... , please.'
7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have .... opportunity.

84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1 We're going away for few days next week. ...for a few days...
2 Everybody needs little luck. ....
3 I can't talk to you now – I have few things to do. ....
4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. ....
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? ....
6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty. ....
7 Mark is a very private person. Few people know him well. ....

Unit
85

old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

A

adjective + *noun* (**nice day** / **blue eyes** etc.)

adjective	+ noun
It's a **nice**	**day** today.
Laura has **brown**	**eyes**.
There's a very **old**	**bridge** in this village.
Do you like **Italian**	**food**?
I don't speak any **foreign**	**languages**.
There are some **beautiful yellow**	**flowers** in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

○ They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
○ Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

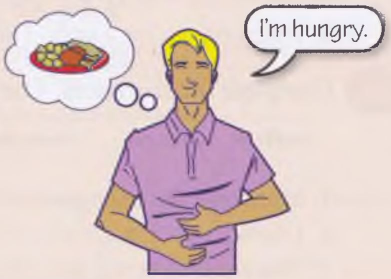
The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a **different place** **different** places (*not* differents)

B

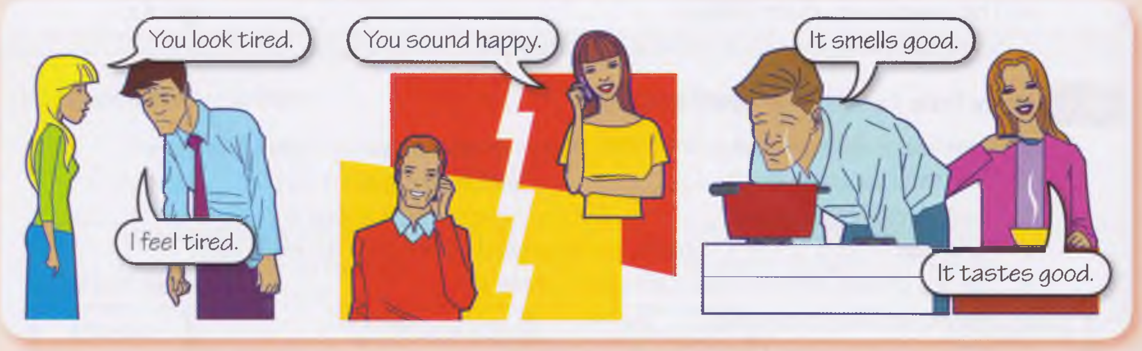
be (**am**/**is**/**was** etc.) + *adjective*

○ The weather **is nice** today.
○ These flowers **are** very **beautiful**.
○ **Are** you **cold**? Shall I close the window?
○ **I'm hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
○ The film **wasn't** very **good**. It **was boring**.
○ Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.



C

look/**feel**/**smell**/**taste**/**sound** + *adjective*


You look tired.
I feel tired.
You sound happy.
It smells good.
It tastes good.

○ A: You **look tired**.
B: Yes, I **feel tired**.
○ Joe told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting**.
○ I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	**is** **feels** **looks**	**tired**.

They	**are** **look** **sound**	**happy**.

It	**is** **smells** **tastes**	**good**.

get + adjective (**get hungry**/**tired** etc.) ➜ **Unit 56** **something**/**anybody** + adjective ➜ **Unit 79**

Exercises

85.1 Put the words in the right order.

1 (new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house.
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) I ……………………
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do ……………………
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) ……………………
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) ……………………

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (**black/foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air/job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air **clouds** **~~foreign~~** **holiday** **job** **~~languages~~** **sharp**
black **dangerous** **fresh** **hot** **knife** **long** **water**

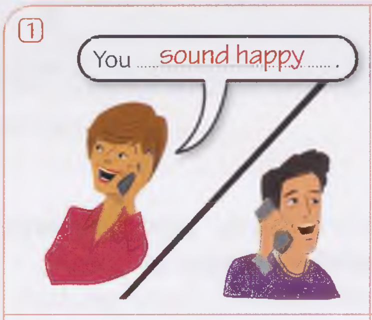
1 Do you speak any foreign languages ?
2 Look at those …………………… . It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a …………………… .
4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no …………………… .
5 Can you open the window? We need some …………………… .
6 I need a …………………… to cut these onions.
7 Fire-fighting is a …………………… .

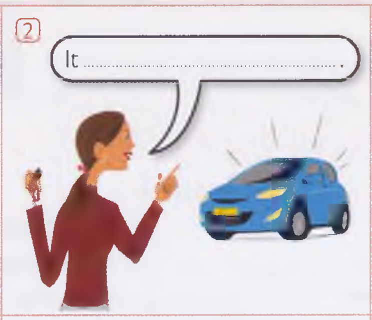
85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

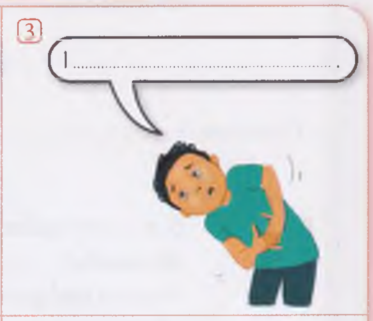
feel(s) **look(s)** **~~sound(s)~~**
look(s) **smell(s)** **taste(s)**

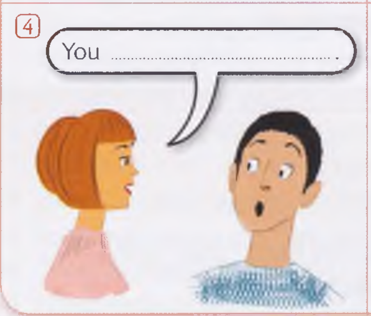
+

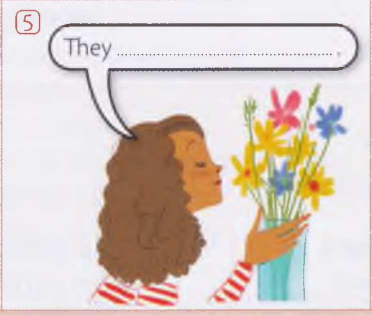
~~happy~~ **ill** **nice**
horrible **new** **surprised**

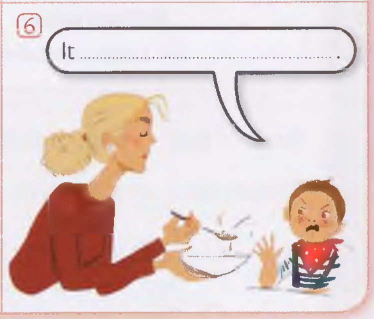
1


2


3


4


5


6


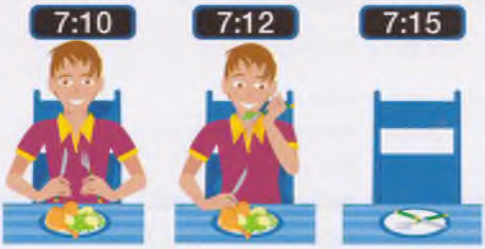
85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use **feel/look** etc.

	A	B	
1	You look tired.	Do I? I don't feel tired .	(feel)
2	This is a new coat.	Is it? It doesn't …………………… .	(look)
3	I'm American.	Are you? You …………………… .	(sound)
4	You look cold.	Do I? I …………………… .	(feel)
5	These bags are heavy.	Are they? They …………………… .	(look)
6	That soup looks good.	Maybe, but it …………………… .	(taste)

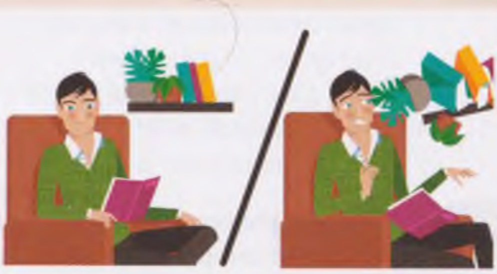
Unit
86

quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

A



He ate his dinner very **quickly**.



Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and **suddenly** are adverbs.

adjective + **-ly** → adverb:

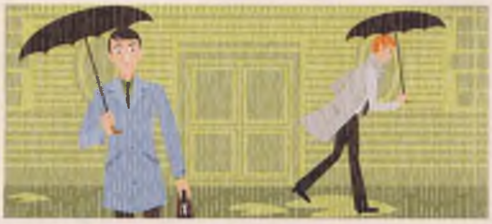
adjective	**quick**	**bad**	**sudden**	**careful**	**heavy**	
adverb	**quickly**	**badly**	**suddenly**	**carefully**	**heavily**	etc.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → eas**ily** heavy → heav**ily**

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

○ The train **stopped suddenly**.
○ I **opened** the door **slowly**.
○ Please **listen carefully**.
○ I **understand** you **perfectly**.



It's **raining heavily**.

Compare:

adjective	*adverb*
○ Sue is very **quiet**.	○ Sue **speaks** very **quietly**. (*not* speaks very quiet)
○ **Be careful**!	○ **Listen carefully**! (*not* listen careful)
○ It was **a bad game**.	○ Our team **played badly**. (*not* played bad)
○ I **felt nervous**. (= I was nervous)	○ I **waited nervously**.

C

hard **fast** **late** **early**

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

○ Sue's job **is** very **hard**.	○ Sue **works** very **hard**. (*not* hardly)
○ Ben is **a fast runner**.	○ Ben can **run fast**.
○ The bus **was late**/**early**.	○ I **went** to bed **late**/**early**.

D

good (*adjective*) → **well** (*adverb*)

○ Your English **is** very **good**.	○ You **speak** English very **well**. (*not* very good)
○ It was **a good game**.	○ Our team **played well**.

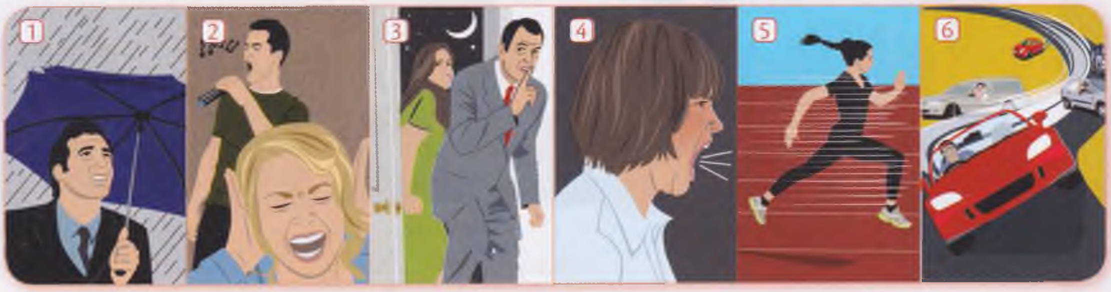
But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):
○ 'How are you?' '**I'm** very **well**, thank you. And you?'

adjectives ➜ **Unit 85**

Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily **badly** **dangerously** **fast** ~~**heavily**~~ **quietly**



1 It's raining ......heavily...... .
2 He sings very ....
3 They came in ....
4 She shouted at me ....
5 She can run very ....
6 He was driving ....

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come **know** **sleep** **win**
explain ~~**listen**~~ **think** **work**

+

~~**carefully**~~ **clearly** **hard** **well**
carefully **easily** **quickly** **well**

1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please ......listen carefully...... .
2 They .... At the end of the day they're always tired.
3 I'm tired this morning. I didn't .... last night.
4 You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always
....
5 .... before you answer the question.
6 I've met Alice a few times, but I don't .... her very ....
7 Our teacher doesn't .... things very .... We never understand him.
8 Helen! I need your help. .... !

86.3 Which is right?

1 Don't eat so ~~quick~~/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly *is right*)
2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5 Sam is a very careful/carefully driver.
6 Amy is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
7 'Where's Anna?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
11 I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

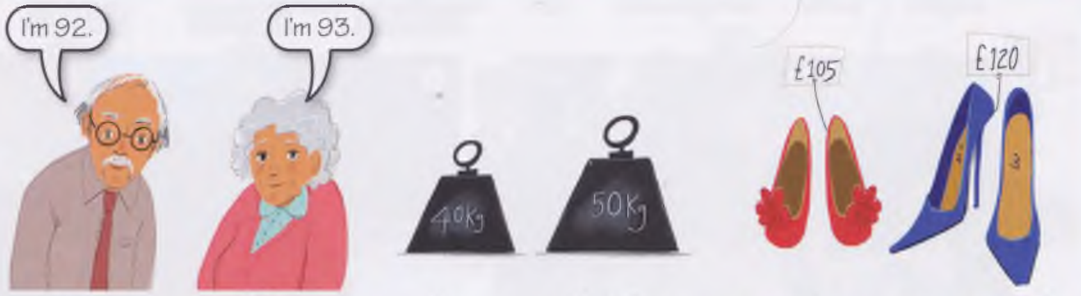
86.4 Write **good** or **well**.

1 Your English is very ......good...... . You speak it very ......well...... .
2 Jackie did very .... in her exams.
3 The party was very .... I enjoyed it very much.
4 Mark has a difficult job, but he does it ....
5 How are your parents? Are they .... ?
6 Did you have a .... holiday? Was the weather .... ?

Unit
87

old/older   expensive / more expensive

A



old   **older**   heavy   **heavier**   expensive   **more expensive**

Older / **heavier** / **more expensive** are *comparative* forms.
The comparative is **-er** (**older**) or **more** … (**more expensive**).

B

older/**heavier** etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**:
old → **older**   slow → **slower**   cheap → **cheaper**
nice → **nicer**   late → **later**   big → **bigger**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):   big → bi**gg**er   hot → ho**tt**er   thi**n** → thi**nn**er

Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**:
easy → **easier**   heavy → **heavier**   early → **earlier**

- Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- Don't take the bus. It's **easier** to take a taxi. (*not* more easy)

far → further:
- A: How far is it to the station? A mile?
  B: No, it's **further**. About two miles.

C

more …

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more** … :
careful → **more careful**   polite → **more polite**
expensive → **more expensive**   interesting → **more interesting**

- You must be **more careful**.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

D

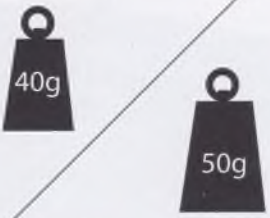
good/well → better   **bad → worse**
- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- 'Do you feel **better** today?' 'No, I feel **worse**.'
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

older than … / **more expensive than** … ➔ Unit 88   **the oldest** / **the most expensive** ➔ Unit 90

Exercises

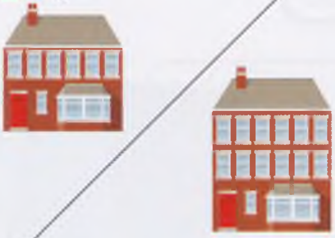
87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (**older** / **more interesting** etc.).

1 heavy

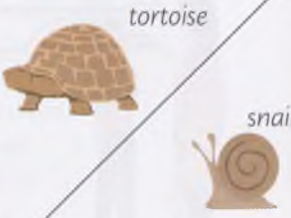


heavier

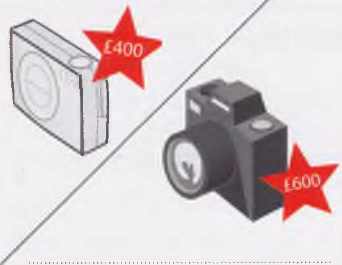
2 big



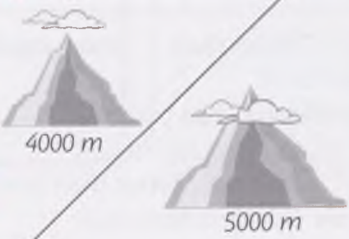
3 slow



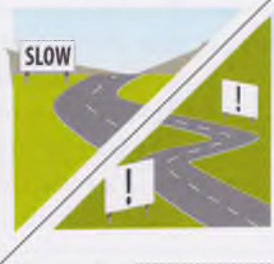
4 expensive



5 high



6 dangerous



87.2 Write the comparative.

1 old older
2 strong
3 happy
4 modern
5 important
6 good
7 large
8 serious
9 pretty
10 crowded

87.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger older
2 colder
3 cheaper
4 better
5 nearer
6 easier

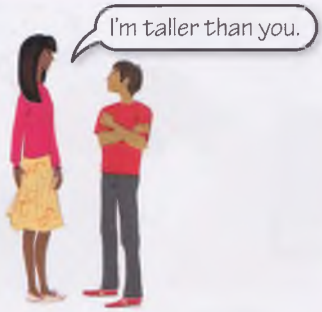
87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.
2 My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting .
3 You're not very tall. Your brother is ....
4 David doesn't work very hard. I work ....
5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is ....
6 Your idea isn't very good. My idea is ....
7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are ....
8 My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is ....
9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm .... in history.
10 It isn't very warm today. It was .... yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted ....
12 Britain isn't very big. France is ....
13 London isn't very beautiful. Paris is ....
14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a .... one?
15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were ....
16 The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much ....

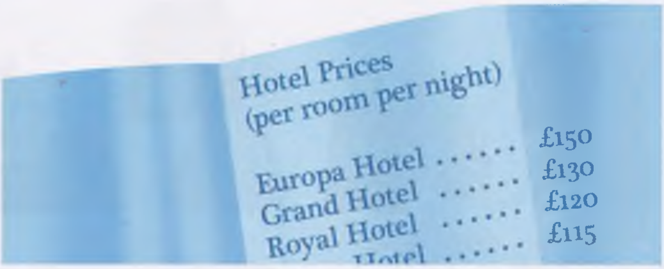
Unit
88

older than ... more expensive than ...

A


I'm taller than you.

She's **taller than** him.



Hotel Prices
(per room per night)
Europa Hotel £150
Grand Hotel £130
Royal Hotel £120
Hotel £115

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

We use **than** after comparatives (**older than** ... / **more expensive than** ... etc.):

- ☐ Athens is **older than** Rome.
- ☐ Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- ☐ It's **easier** to take a taxi **than** to take the bus.
- ☐ 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. **Better than** yesterday.'
- ☐ The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

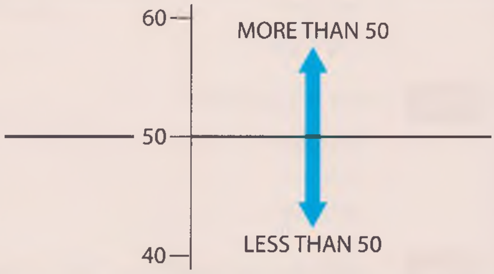
We usually say: than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them**.
You can say:

- ☐ I can run faster **than him**. *or* I can run faster **than he can**.
- ☐ You are a better singer **than me**. *or* You are a better singer **than I am**.
- ☐ I got up earlier **than her**. *or* I got up earlier **than she did**.

C

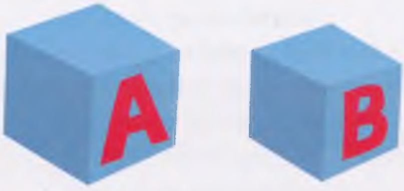
more/less than ...

- ☐ A: How much did your shoes cost? £60?
  B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** £60)
- ☐ The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- ☐ They have **more money than** they need.
- ☐ You go out **more than** me.

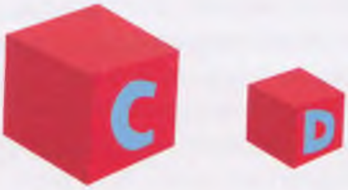


D

a bit older / **much older** etc.



Box A is **a bit bigger** than Box B.



Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

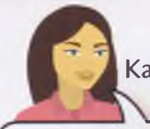
a bit **much**	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than ...

- ☐ Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- ☐ Sue is **a bit older** than Joe – she's 25 and he's 24.
- ☐ The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- ☐ You go out **much more** than me.

old → older, expensive → more expensive ➔ Unit 87 **not as ... as ➔ Unit 89**

Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Kate and Ben. Use **than**.



Kate

1 I'm 26.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
5 I don't work very hard.
6 I don't have much money.
7 I'm a very good driver.
8 I'm not very patient.
9 I'm not a very good dancer.
10 I'm very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.
12 I don't go to the cinema very much.

Ben

1 I'm 24.
2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
4 I start work at 8.30.
5 I work very hard.
6 I have a lot of money.
7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm very patient.
9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I don't speak French very well.
12 I go to the cinema a lot.

1 Kate ..is older than Ben.......... .
2 Ben ..is a better swimmer than Kate.......... .
3 Kate is ....
4 Kate starts .... Ben.
5 Ben ....
6 Ben has ....
7 Kate is a ....
8 Ben ....
9 Ben ....
10 Kate ....
11 Kate ....
12 Ben ....

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use **than**.

1 He isn't very tall. You're ..taller than him (OR taller than he is).......... .
2 She isn't very old. You're ....
3 I don't work very hard. You work ....
4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You ....
5 I'm not a very good cook. You ....
6 We don't know many people. You ....
7 They don't have much money. You ....
8 I can't run very fast. You can ....
9 She hasn't been here very long. You ....
10 They didn't get up very early. You ....
11 He wasn't very surprised. You ....

88.3 Complete the sentences with **a bit** or **much** + comparative (**older**/**better** etc.).

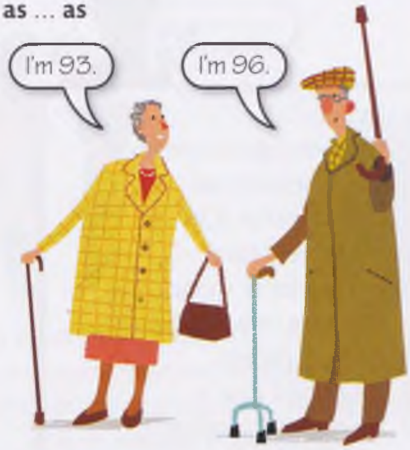
1 Emma is 25. Joe is $24\frac{1}{2}$.
Emma ..is a bit older than Joe.......... .
2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
Jack's mother ....
3 My camera cost £120. Yours cost £112.
My camera ....
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
I feel ....
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
It's ....
6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not a very good player.
Sarah ....

Unit
89

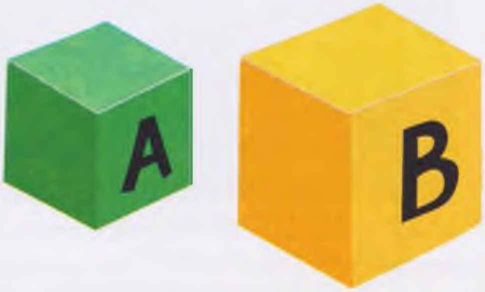
not as ... as

A

not as ... **as**



She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.



Box A is**n't as big as** Box B.

○ Rome **is not as old as** Athens.
(= Athens is **older**)
○ The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive as** the Europa.
(= the Europa is **more expensive**)
○ I **don't** play tennis **as often as** you.
(= you play **more often**)
○ The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold**.
(= as cold **as it was yesterday**)

B

not as much as ... / **not as many as** ...

○ I don't have **as much money as** you. (= you've got **more money**)
○ I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
○ I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as** ... **as** and **than**:

○ Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* older as Rome)

○ Tennis **isn't as popular as** football.
Football is **more popular than** tennis.

○ I **don't** go out **as much as** you.
You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her** etc.
You can say:
○ She's not as old **as him**. *or* She's not as old **as he is**.
○ You don't work as hard **as me**. *or* You don't work as hard **as I do**.

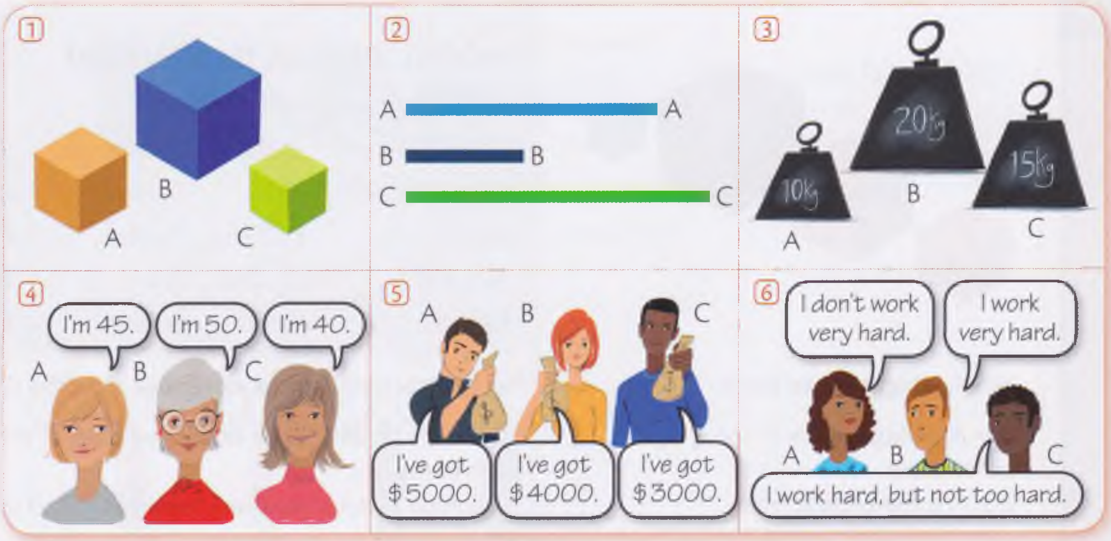
E

We say **the same as** ... :
○ The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
○ My hair is **the same colour as** yours.
○ I arrived at **the same time as** Tom.

much/many → Unit 83 **older than ... / more expensive than ... → Unit 88**

Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.


1
A
B
C
2
A
B
C
3
10kg
20kg
15kg
A
B
C
4
I'm 45.
I'm 50.
I'm 40.
A
B
C
5
A
B
C
I've got $5000.
I've got $4000.
I've got $3000.
6
I don't work very hard.
I work very hard.
A
B
C
I work hard, but not too hard.

1 A is bigger than C, but not as big as B.
2 A is .... B, but not .... C.
3 C is .... A, but ....
4 A is .... , but ....
5 B has got ....
6 C works ....

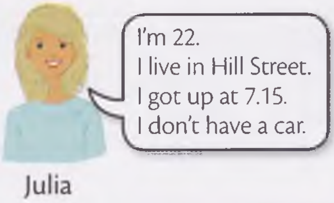
89.2 Write sentences with **as ... as ...** .

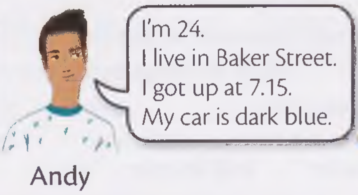
1 Athens is older than Rome.	Rome isn't as old as Athens.
2 My room is bigger than yours.	Your room isn't ....
3 You got up earlier than me.	I didn't ....
4 We played better than them.	They ....
5 I've been here longer than you.	You ....
6 She's more nervous than him.	He ....

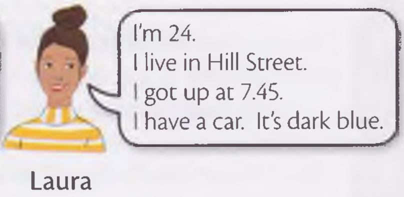
89.3 Write **as** or **than**.

1 Athens is older than Rome.
2 I don't watch TV as much .... you.
3 You eat more .... me.
4 I'm more tired today .... I was yesterday.
5 Joe isn't as intelligent .... he thinks.
6 Belgium is smaller .... Switzerland.
7 Brazil isn't as big .... Canada.
8 I can't wait longer .... an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use **the same age** / **the same street** etc.


I'm 22.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.15.
I don't have a car.
Julia


I'm 24.
I live in Baker Street.
I got up at 7.15.
My car is dark blue.
Andy

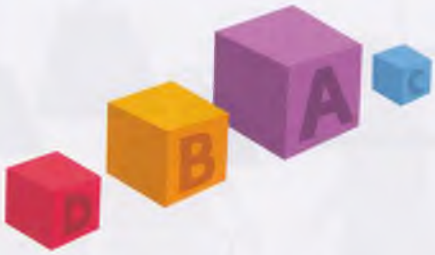

I'm 24.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.45.
I have a car. It's dark blue.
Laura

1 (age) Andy is the some age as Laura.
2 (street) Julia lives ....
3 (time) Julia got up ....
4 (colour) Andy's ....

Unit
90

the oldest the most expensive

A



HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON
(Per room per night)

Europa Hotel	£150	Grosvenor	£110
Grand Hotel	£130	Bennets	£100
Royal	£120	Carlton	£98
Astoria	£115	Star	£85
Palace	£115	Station	£75

Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.
Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.
The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

Bigger and **more expensive** etc. are *comparative* forms (→ Unit 87).
Biggest and **most expensive** etc. are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most** ... (**most expensive**).

Short words (**old**/**cheap**/**nice** etc.) → **the -est**:
old → **the oldest** cheap → **the cheapest** nice → **the nicest**
but good → **the best** bad → **the worst**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → the bigg**est** hot → the hott**est**

Words ending in **-y** (**easy**/**heavy** etc.) → **the -iest**:
easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (**careful**/**expensive**/**interesting** etc.) → **the most** ... :
careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say **the** oldest ... / **the** most expensive ... etc. (with **the**):

○ The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
(= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
○ What is **the longest** river in the world?
○ Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
○ Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest** / **the best** / **the most expensive** etc. without a noun:

○ Luke is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team.
(**the best** = the best player)

E

You can use *superlative* + **I've ever** ... / **you've ever** ... etc. :

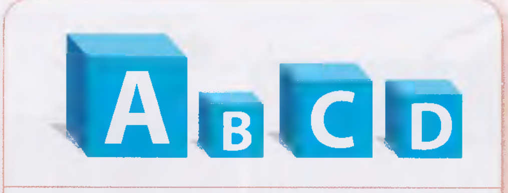
○ The film was very bad. I think it's **the worst** film **I've ever seen**.
○ What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever done**?

present perfect + **ever** ➔ **Unit 17** **older** / **more expensive** ➔ **Units 87–88**

Exercises

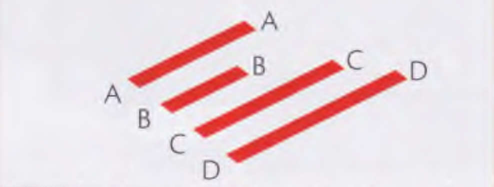
90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (**older** etc.) and superlatives (**the oldest** etc.).

1



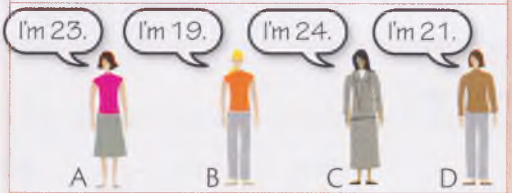
big/small
(A/D) A is bigger than D.
(A) A is the biggest.
(B) B is the smallest.

2



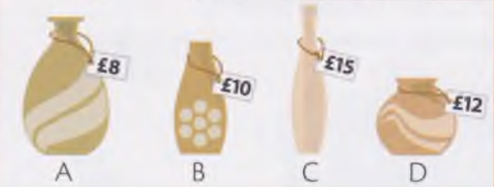
long/short
(C/A) C is .... A.
(D) D is ....
(B) B ....

3


I'm 23.
I'm 19.
I'm 24.
I'm 21.
A
B
C
D

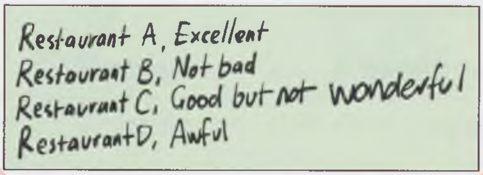
young/old
(D/C) D ....
(B) ....
(C) ....

4



expensive/cheap
(D/A) ....
(C) ....
(A) ....

5


Restaurant A, Excellent
Restaurant B, Not bad
Restaurant C, Good but not wonderful
Restaurant D, Awful

good/bad
(A/C) ....
(A) ....
(D) ....

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**the oldest** etc.).

1 This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
2 It was a very happy day. It was .... of my life.
3 It's a very good film. It's .... I've ever seen.
4 She's a very popular singer. She's .... in the country.
5 It was a very bad mistake. It was .... I've ever made.
6 It's a very pretty village. It's .... I've ever seen.
7 It was a very cold day. It was .... of the year.
8 He's a very boring person. He's .... I've ever met.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (**the longest** etc.). Choose from the boxes.

~~Sydney~~ Alaska
Everest the Nile
Brazil Jupiter

high
large
long

country river
~~city~~ state
mountain planet

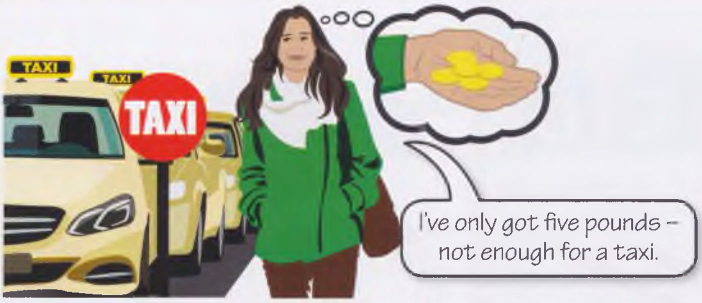
Africa South America
~~Australia~~ the world
the USA the solar system

1 Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2 Everest ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

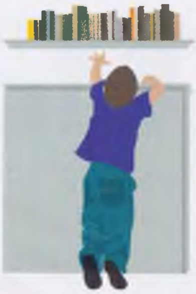
Unit
91

enough

A


TAXI
TAXI
TAXI
I've only got five pounds – not enough for a taxi.

She isn't going to take a taxi.
She hasn't got **enough money**.



He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't **tall enough**.

B

enough + *noun* (**enough money** / **enough people** etc.)

- ☐ A: Is there **enough milk** in your coffee?
  B: Yes, thank you.
- ☐ We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- ☐ Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not* money enough)

enough *without a noun*

- ☐ I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- ☐ A: Would you like some more to eat?
  B: No, thanks. I've had **enough**.
- ☐ You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

C

adjective + **enough** (**good enough** / **tall enough** etc.)

- ☐ A: Shall we sit outside?
  B: No, it isn't **warm enough**. (*not* enough warm)
- ☐ Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- ☐ Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + *noun*	but	*adjective* + **enough**
enough money		tall **enough**
enough time		good **enough**
enough people		old **enough**

D

We say:

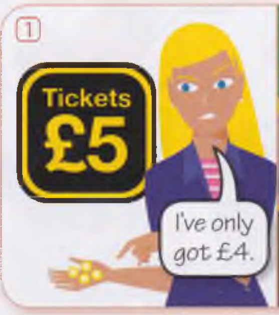
enough for somebody/something	☐ This pullover isn't **big enough for me**. ☐ I haven't got **enough money for a new car**.
enough to do something	☐ I haven't got **enough money to buy** a new car. (*not* for buy) ☐ Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (*not* for have)
enough for somebody/something **to do** something	☐ There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

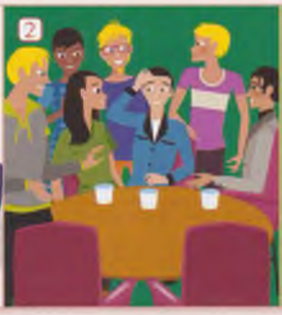
to ... and **for** ... ➜ Unit 54 **too** ➜ Unit 92

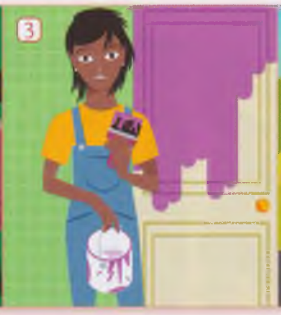
Exercises

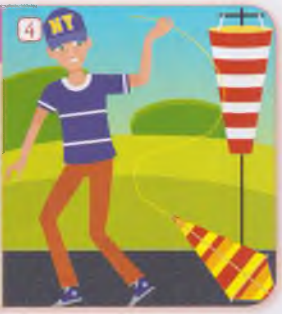
91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + these words:

chairs **~~money~~** **paint** **wind**





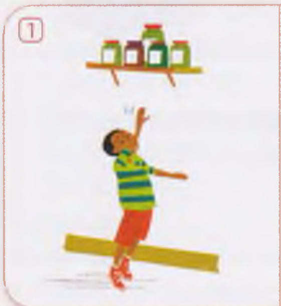


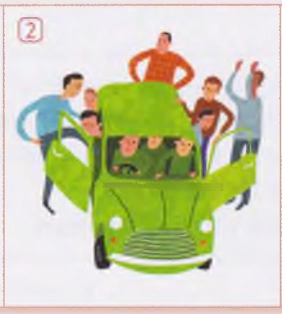


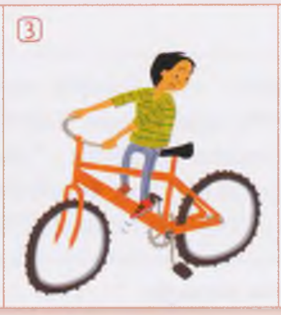
1 She hasn't got ....enough money.................... .
2 There aren't ....
3 She hasn't got ....
4 There isn't ....

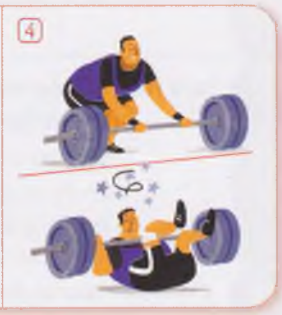
91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + **enough**:

big **long** **strong** **~~tall~~**









1 He ....isn't tall enough.................... .
2 The car ....
3 His legs aren't ....
4 He ....

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

big **eat** **~~loud~~** **~~milk~~** **old** **practise** **space** **time** **tired**

1 'Is there ....enough milk.... in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
2 Can you hear the radio? Is it ....loud enough.... for you?
3 He can leave school if he wants – he's ....
4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have .... to see all the things I wanted to see.
5 This house isn't .... for a large family.
6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't ....
7 My office is very small. There isn't ....
8 It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not ....
9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't ....

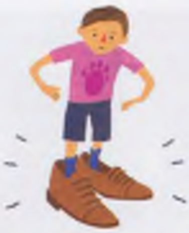
91.4 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

1 We haven't got ....enough money to buy.... a new car. (money/buy)
2 This knife isn't .... tomatoes. (sharp/cut)
3 The water wasn't .... swimming. (warm/go)
4 Have we got .... sandwiches? (bread/make)
5 We played well, but not .... the game. (well/win)
6 I don't have .... newspapers. (time/read)

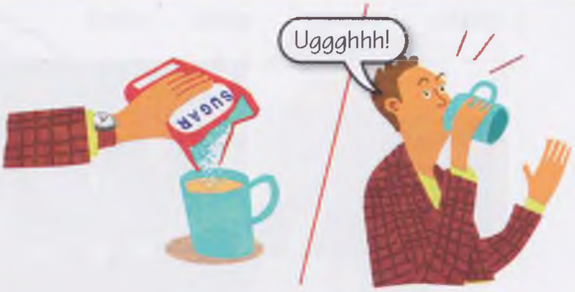
Unit
92

too

A



His shoes are **too big** for him.



There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + *adjective* / *adverb* (**too big** / **too hard** etc.)

○ Can you turn the radio down?
It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
○ I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
○ I think you work **too hard**.

It's too loud.

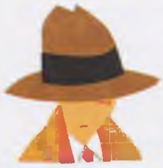
C

too much / **too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

○ I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
○ Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
○ Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
○ Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

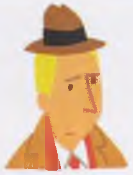
D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:



too big

○ The hat is **too big** for him.
○ The music is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
○ There's **too much sugar** in my coffee.
(= more sugar than I want)
○ I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.



not big enough

○ The hat is**n't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
○ The music is**n't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
○ There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee.
(= I need more sugar)
○ You're very thin. You do**n't** eat **enough**.

E

We say:

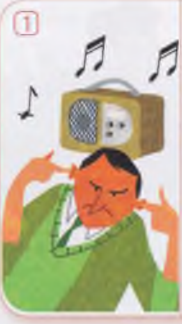
too … **for** somebody/something	○ These shoes are **too big for me**. ○ It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
too … **to do** something	○ I'm **too tired to go** out. (*not* for go out) ○ It's **too cold to sit** outside.
too … **for** somebody **to do** something	○ She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

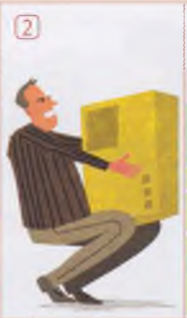
to … and **for** … ➜ **Unit 54** **much/many** ➜ **Unit 83** **enough** ➜ **Unit 91**

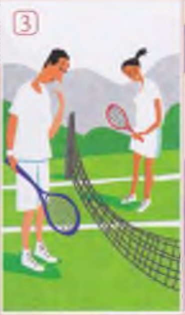
Exercises

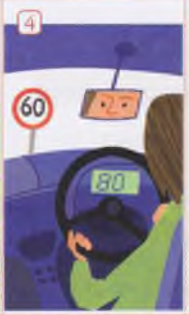
92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + these words:

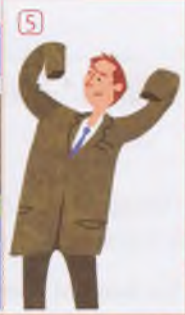
big **crowded** **fast** **heavy** **~~loud~~** **low**

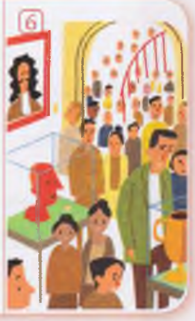












1 The music is ....too loud.......... .
2 The box is ....
3 The net is ....
4 She's driving ....
5 His jacket is ....
6 The museum is ....

92.2 Write **too** / **too much** / **too many** or **enough**.

1 You're always at home. You don't go out ....enough.... .
2 I don't like the weather here. There's ....too much.... rain.
3 I can't wait for them. I don't have .... time.
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were .... people.
5 You're always tired. I think you work .... hard.
6 'Did you have .... to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
7 You drink .... coffee. It's not good for you.
8 You don't eat .... vegetables. You should eat more.
9 I don't like the weather here. It's .... cold.
10 Our team didn't play well. We made .... mistakes.
11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not ....'

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with these words:

1 I couldn't work. I ....was too tired.................... . (tired)
2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It ....isn't loud enough.......... . (loud)
3 I don't want to walk home. It's .... (far)
4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It .... (expensive)
5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It .... (big)
6 I couldn't do the exercise. It .... (difficult)
7 Your work needs to be better. It .... (good)
8 I can't talk to you now. I .... (busy)
9 I thought the film was boring. It .... (long)

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to ...** .

1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's ....too cold to go out.................... .
2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's ....
3 (they're not getting married / young) They're ....
4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous)
It's ....
5 (don't phone Sue now / late)
It's ....
6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)
I was ....

Unit
93

He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)

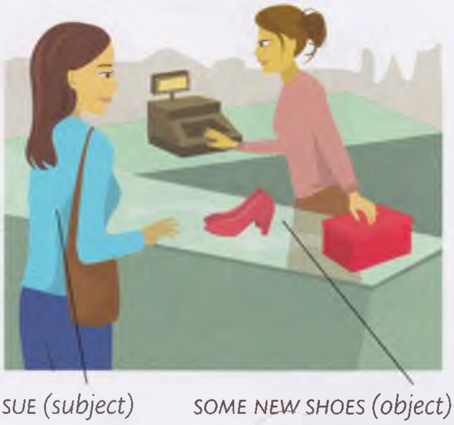
A

verb + object

Sue **bought** **some new shoes** yesterday.
subject *verb* *object*

The *verb* (**bought**) and the *object* (**some new shoes**) are usually together. We say:

- Sue **bought some new shoes** yesterday. (*not* Sue bought yesterday some new shoes)



	verb + object	
He **speaks**	**English** very well.	(*not* He speaks very well English)
I **like**	**Italian food** very much.	(*not* I like very much ...)
Did you **watch**	**TV** all evening?	(*not* ... watch all evening TV)
Paul often **wears**	**a black hat**.	(*not* Paul wears often ...)
We **invited**	**a lot of people** to the party.	
I **opened**	**the door** slowly.	
Why do you always **make**	**the same mistake**?	
I'm going to **borrow**	**some money** from a friend.	

B

where and when

We went **to a party** **last night**.
where? *when?*

Place (*where?*) is usually before time (*when?*). We say:

- We went **to a party last night**. (*not* We went last night to a party)

	place (*where?*)	+ time (*when? how long? how often?*)	
Lisa walks	**to work**	**every day**.	(*not* ... every day to work)
Will you be	**at home**	**this evening**?	(*not* ... this evening at home)
I usually go	**to bed**	**early**.	(*not* ... early to bed)
We arrived	**at the airport**	**at 7 o'clock**.	
They've lived	**in the same house**	**for 20 years**.	
Joe's father has been	**in hospital**	**since June**.	

word order in questions ➔ Units 44–46 **always/usually/often** etc. ➔ Unit 94

Exercises

93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1 Did you watch all evening TV? .... Did you watch TV all evening?
2 Sue bought some new shoes yesterday. .... OK
3 I like very much this picture. ....
4 Tom started last week his new job. ....
5 I want to speak English fluently. ....
6 Jessica bought for her friend a present. ....
7 I drink every day three cups of coffee. ....
8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly! ....
9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds. ....

93.2 Put the words in order.

1 (the door / opened / I / slowly) .... I opened the door slowly.
2 (a new phone / I / last week / got) I ....
3 (finished / Paul / quickly / his work) ....
4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak) ....
5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday) ....
6 (London / do you know / well?) ....
7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) ....
8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained) ....
9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met) ....
10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?) ....
11 (every day / do / the same thing / we) ....
12 (football / don't like / very much / I) ....

93.3 Put the words in order.

1 (to work / every day / walks / Lisa) .... Lisa walks to work every day.
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I ....
3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia) Julia ....
4 (we / since 1998 / here / have lived) We ....
5 (in London / Sue / in 1990 / was born)
Sue ....
6 (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
Paul ....
7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)
Helen ....
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
I ....
9 (in September / Amy / to university / is going)
Amy ....
10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
I ....
11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)
My ....
12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
I ....
13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)
Are ....
14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
I ....

Unit
94

always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

A

These words (**always**/**never** etc.) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always	**often**	**ever**	**rarely**	**also**	**already**	**all**
usually	**sometimes**	**never**	**seldom**	**just**	**still**	**both**

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She**'s always** late.
- Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (*or* **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- A: Don't forget to phone Laura.
  B: I**'ve already phoned** her.
- I've got three sisters. They**'re all** married.

B

Always/**never** etc. go *before* the verb:

	verb
always	**go**
often	**play**
never	**have**
etc.	etc.

- I **always drink** coffee in the morning.
  (*not* I drink always coffee)
- Helen **often goes** to London.
  (*not* Helen goes often)
- You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely watch** TV. *or*
  We **seldom watch** TV.
- Richard is a good footballer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball.
  (*not* He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all live** in London.

But **always**/**never** etc. go *after* **am**/**is**/**are**/**was**/**were**:

am **is** **are** **was** **were**	**always** **often** **never** etc.

- I **am always tired**.
  (*not* I always am tired)
- They **are never** at home during the day.
- It **is usually** very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I **was often** late for school.
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She**'s still** in bed.
- I've got two brothers. They**'re both** doctors.

C

Always/**never** etc. go *between* two verbs (**have** … **been** / **can** … **find** etc.):

verb 1		*verb 2*
will **can** **do** etc.	**always** **often** **never** etc.	**go** **find** **remember** etc.
have **has**		**gone** **been** etc.

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- **Do** you **usually go** to work by car?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- **Have** you **ever been** to Egypt?
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She**'s just gone** out. (She's = She has)
- My friends **have all gone** to the cinema.

always/**never** + present simple ➜ Unit 5 **just**/**already** + present perfect ➜ Unit 16 **all** ➜ Units 80–81
both ➜ Unit 82 **still** ➜ Unit 95

Exercises

94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with **often/never** etc.

			Paul
1	Do you ever play tennis?	Yes, often.	Paul often plays tennis.
2	Do you get up early?	Yes, always.	He ....
3	Are you ever late for work?	No, never.	He ....
4	Do you ever get angry?	Sometimes.	....
5	Do you ever go swimming?	Rarely.	....
6	Are you at home in the evenings?	Yes, usually.	....

94.2 Write these sentences with **never/always/usually** etc.

1 My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan ....
3 I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I ....
4 Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah ....
5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) ....
6 The bus isn't late. (usually) ....
7 I don't eat fish. (often) ....
8 I will forget what you said. (never) ....
9 Have you lost your passport? (ever) ....
10 Do you work in the same place? (still) ....
11 They stay in the same hotel. (always) ....
12 Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) ....
13 Is Tina here? (already) ....
14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually) ....
15 I can remember his name. (never) ....

94.3 Write sentences with **also**.

1	Do you play football? (tennis)	Yes, and I also play tennis.
2	Do you speak Italian? (French)	Yes, and I ....
3	Are you tired? (hungry)	Yes, and ....
4	Have you been to England? (Ireland)	Yes, ...
5	Did you buy any clothes? (some books)	....

94.4 Write sentences with **both** and **all**.

I live in London.
I play football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

I live in London.
I play football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

1 They both live in London.
They .... football.
.... students.
.... cars.

I'm married. I was born in England.
I live in New York.

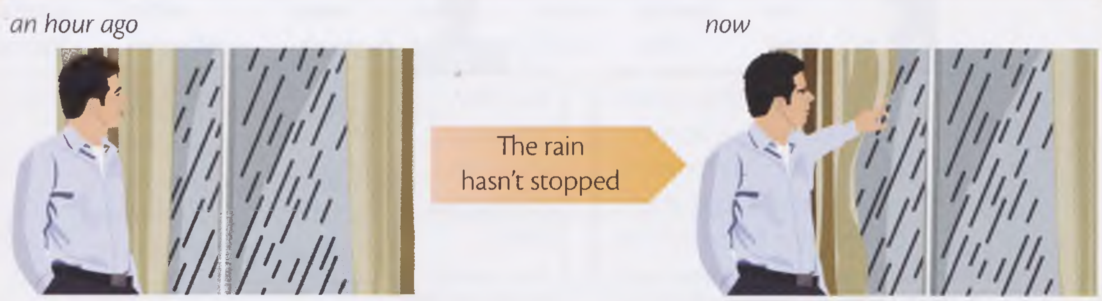
2 They .... married.
They .... England.
....

Unit 95

still yet already

A

still



An hour ago it was raining.

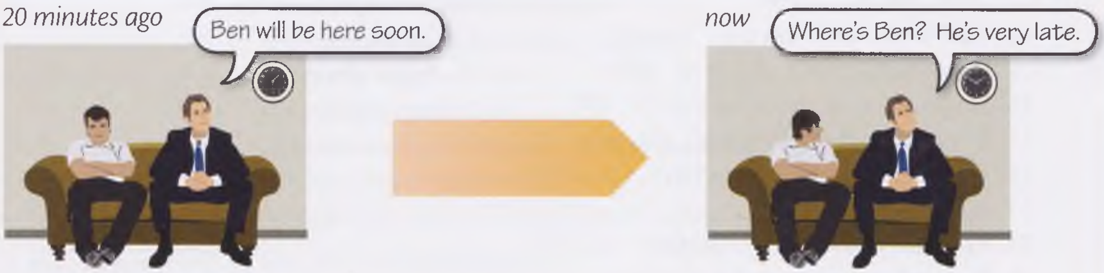
It is **still** raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've **still** got it.'
- 'Do you **still** live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

B

yet


20 minutes ago
Ben will be here soon.
now
Where's Ben? He's very late.

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Ben.

They are **still** waiting for Ben. Ben **hasn't come yet**.

yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has he** come yet?).
Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Emma?
  B: She **isn't** here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
  B: I **don't** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don't know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go **yet**?
  B: **Not yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper **yet**?
  B: No, I'm still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is yet here)
- I haven't finished eating **yet**. = I'm **still** eating.

C

already = earlier than expected:

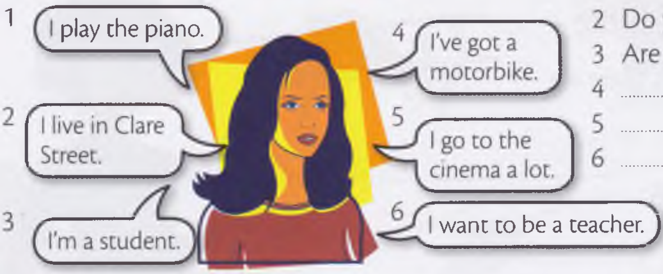
- 'What time is Joe coming?' 'He's **already** here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I **already** know.'
- Sarah isn't coming to the cinema with us. She has **already** seen the film.

already/**yet** + present perfect ➜ **Unit 16** word order (**still**/**already**) ➜ **Unit 94**

Exercises

95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.

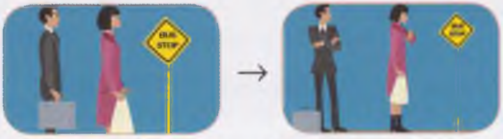
Tina – two years ago


1 I play the piano.
2 I live in Clare Street.
3 I'm a student.
4 I've got a motorbike.
5 I go to the cinema a lot.
6 I want to be a teacher.

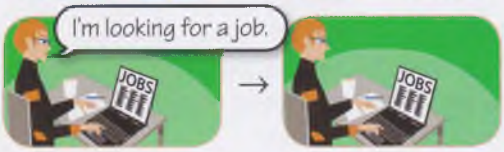
1 .... Do you still play the piano?
2 Do you ....
3 Are ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

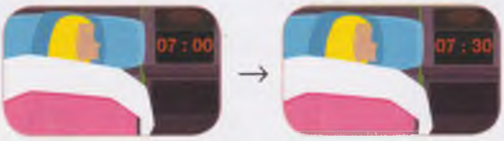
before *now*

1


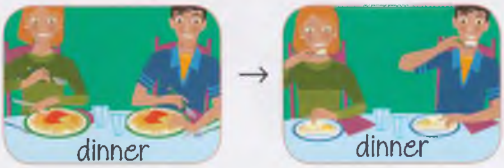
(*before*) They were waiting for the bus.
(still) They are still waiting.
(yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

2

I'm looking for a job.
JOBS
JOBS

(*before*) He was ....
(still) He ....
(yet) .... yet.

3


(*before*) She .... asleep.
(still) ....
(yet) ....

4

dinner
dinner

(*before*) They ....
(still) ....
(yet) ....

95.3 Write questions with **yet**.

1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now.
You ask her: .... Are you ready yet?
2 You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now.
You ask somebody: .... Helen ....
3 Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now.
You ask her: .... you ....
4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now.
You ask him: ....

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use **already**.

1	What time is Joe coming?	He's already .... here.
2	Do they want to see the film?	No, ... they've already seen .... it.
3	I have to see Julia before she goes.	It's too late. She ....
4	Do you need a pen?	No, thanks. I .... one.
5	Shall I pay the bill?	No, it's OK. I ....
6	Shall I tell Paul about the meeting?	No, he .... I told him.

Unit
96

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give lend pass send show

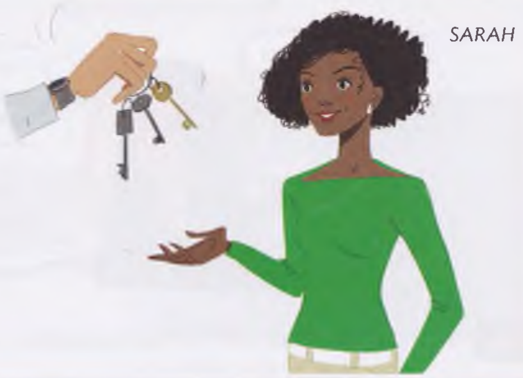
After these verbs (**give**/**lend** etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody

- I gave **the keys to Sarah**.

give somebody something

- I gave **Sarah the keys**.



B

give **something to somebody**

		something	**to** somebody
That's my book.	**Give**	it	**to** me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	**give**	them	**to** her?
Can you	**give**	these flowers	**to** your mother?
I	**lent**	my car	**to** a friend of mine.
Did you	**send**	the money	**to** Kate?
We've seen these photos. You	**showed**	them	**to** us.

C

give somebody something

		somebody	something
	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	**gave**	his mother	some flowers.
I	**lent**	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	**lend**	him?	
I	**sent**	you	an email. Did you get it?
Nicola	**showed**	us	her holiday photos.
Can you	**pass**	me	the salt, please?

You can also say '**buy**/**get** somebody something':

- I **bought my mother** some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother.)
- I'm going to the shop. Can I **get you** anything? (= get anything for you)

D

You can say:

- I **gave** the keys **to Sarah**.

and I **gave Sarah** the keys.
(*but not* I gave to Sarah the keys)

- That's my book. Can you **give** it **to me**?

and Can you **give me** that book?
(*but not* Can you give to me that book?)

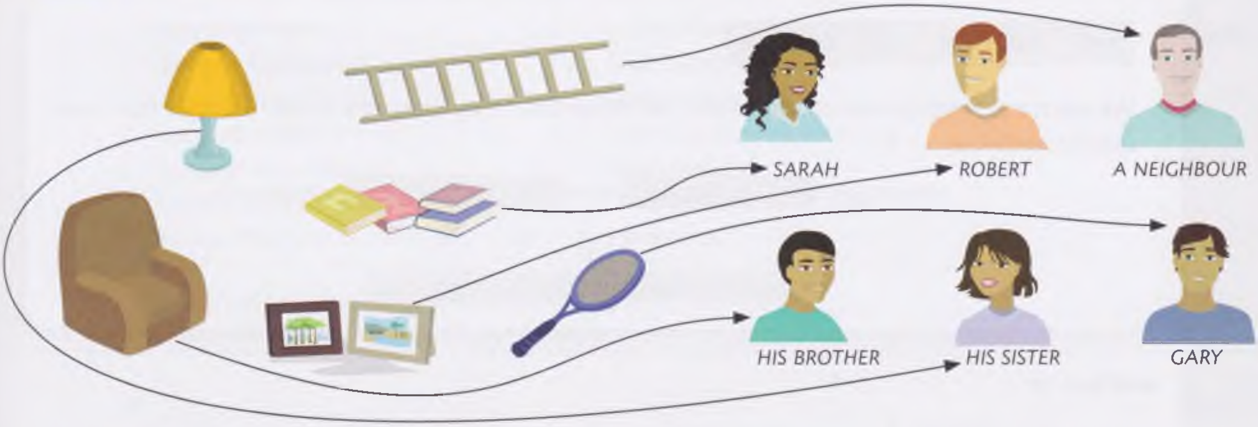
We prefer the first structure (**give** something **to** somebody) with **it** or **them**:

- I gave **it to her**. (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not* Give your father them)

it/him/them etc. ➜ Unit 59

Exercises

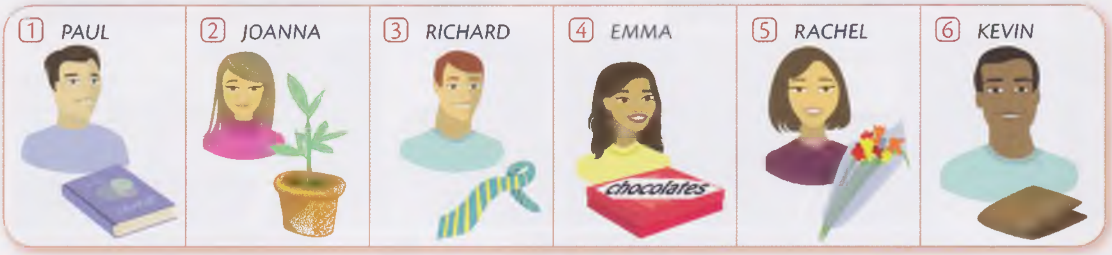
96.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning **He gave ...** .

1 What did Mark do with the armchair? He gave it to his brother.
2 What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave ……
3 What happened to the books? He ……
4 What about the lamp? ……
5 What did he do with the pictures? ……
6 And the ladder? ……

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.



1 I gave Paul a book.
2 I gave ……
3 I ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……

96.3 Write questions beginning **Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ?** etc.

1 (you want the salt) (pass) Can you pass me the salt?
2 (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you ……
3 (you want my address) (give) Can …… your ……
4 (you need twenty pounds) (lend) ……
5 (you want more information) (send) ……
6 (you want to see the letter) (show) ……

96.4 Which is right?

1 ~~I gave to Sarah the keys.~~ / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys *is right*)
2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3 Did you send the bill me? / Did you send the bill to me?
4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6 This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

Unit 97

and but or so because

A

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. — The driver got out. *sentence B*

The car stopped **and** the driver got out.

B

and/but/or

sentence A		*sentence B*
We stayed at home	**and**	(we)* watched television.
My sister is married	**and**	(she)* lives in London.
He doesn't like her,	**and**	she doesn't like him.
I bought a sandwich,	**but**	I didn't eat it.
It's a nice house,	**but**	it doesn't have a garden.
Do you want to go out,	**or**	are you too tired?

* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

In lists, we use commas (**,**). We use **and** before the last thing:

○ I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair **and** fell asleep.
↗ ↗ ↗

○ Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping **and** Chris is playing football.

C

so (the result of something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
It was very hot,	**so**	I opened the window.
Joe does a lot of sport,	**so**	he's very fit.
They don't like travelling,	**so**	they haven't been to many places.

D

because (the reason for something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
I opened the window	**because**	it was very hot.
Joe can't come to the party	**because**	he's going away.
Lisa is hungry	**because**	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:

○ **Because it was very hot**, I opened the window.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

○ It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.

○ I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

when/while/before etc. ➜ **Unit 98**

Exercises

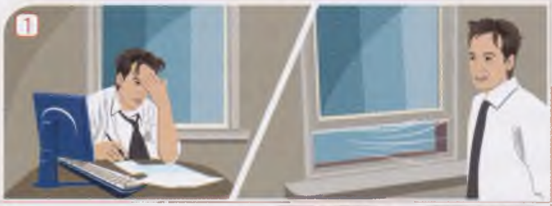
97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use **and/but/or**.

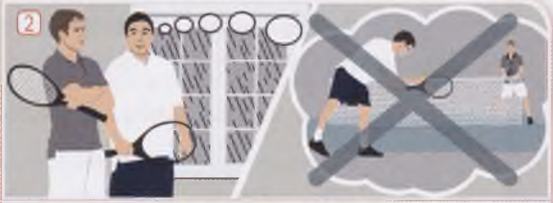
~~I stayed at home.~~
~~I bought a sandwich.~~
I went to the window.
I wanted to phone you.
I jumped into the river.
I usually drive to work.
Do you want me to come with you?

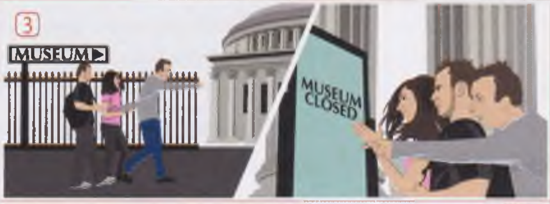
I didn't have your number.
Shall I wait here?
~~I didn't eat it.~~
I went by bus this morning.
~~I watched TV.~~
I swam to the other side.
I looked out.

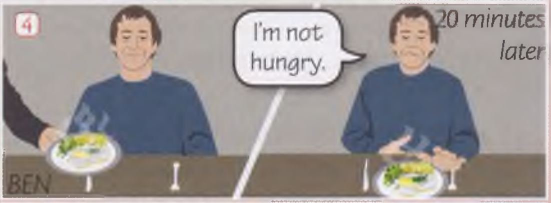
1 I stayed at home and watched TV.
2 I bought a sandwich, but I didn't eat it.
3 I ……
4 ……
5 ……
6 ……
7 ……

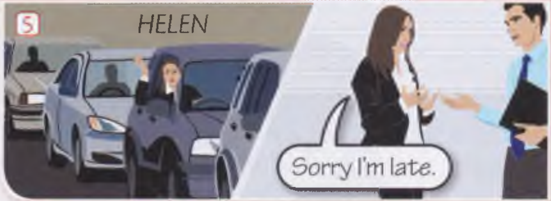
97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **and/but/so/because**.

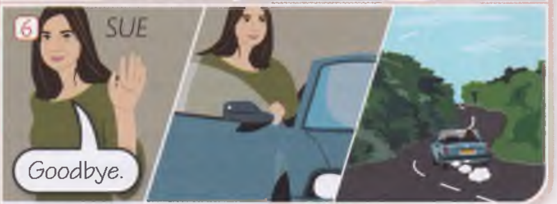





3
MUSEUM
MUSEUM CLOSED


4
I'm not hungry.
20 minutes later
BEN


5
HELEN
Sorry I'm late.


6
SUE
Goodbye.

1 It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2 They couldn't play tennis ……
3 They went to the museum, ……
4 Ben wasn't hungry, ……
5 Helen was late ……
6 Sue said ……

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use **and/but** etc.

1 (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3 (but) ……
4 (and) ……
5 (so) ……
6 (because) ……

Unit
98

When ...

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

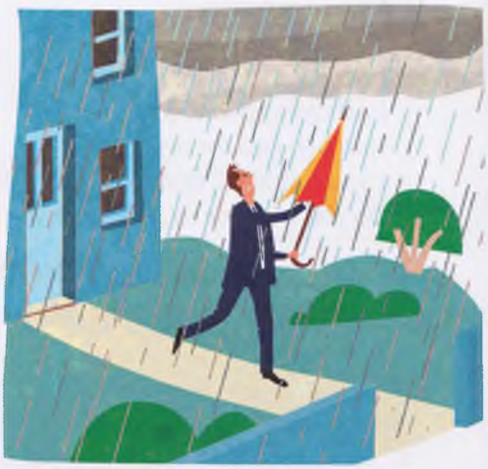
when I went out + **it was raining**

You can say:

- **When I went out**, it was raining. *or*
  It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if **When** ... is at the beginning:

- **When** you're tired, don't drive.
  Don't drive **when** you're tired.
- Helen was 25 **when** she got married.
  When Helen got married, she was 25.



We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

- Always look both ways **before** you cross the road.
  Before you cross the road, always look both ways.
- **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
  After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

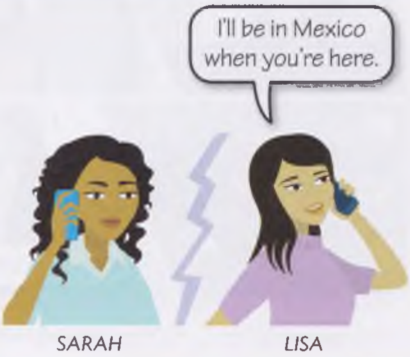
B

When I am ... / **When I go** ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico.
So they won't see each other in New York.

Lisa **will be** in Mexico **when** Sarah **is** in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:
... **when** Sarah **is** in New York.
(*not* when Sarah will be)


I'll be in Mexico when you're here.
SARAH
LISA

We use the *present* (**I am** / **I go** etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

- **When** I **get** home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
  (*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when** I **have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you **go** out.
  (*not* before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our flat **while** we **are** away.
  (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you **come** back.
  (*not* until you will come back)

if and **when** ➔ Unit 99 **until** ➔ Unit 104 **before/while/after** ➔ Unit 105

Exercises

98.1 Write sentences beginning with **when**. Choose from the boxes.

When +

- ~~I went out~~
- I'm tired
- I knocked on the door
- I go on holiday
- the programme ended
- I got to the hotel

+

- I turned off the TV
- I always go to the same place
- there were no rooms
- ~~it was raining~~
- there was no answer
- I like to watch TV

1 When I went out, it was raining.
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house
~~before they crossed the road~~
they went to live in New Zealand
before they came here
while they were away
when they heard the news
they didn't believe me

1 They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2 They were very surprised ....
3 After they got married, ...
4 Their house was damaged in a storm ....
5 Where did they live .... ?
6 While we were asleep, ...
7 When I told them what happened, ...

98.3 Which is right?

1 ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (I'll stay *and* you come *are right*)
2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3 We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4 Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6 We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
7 When I come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
8 I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9 Let's go out for a walk before it gets / it will get dark.
10 I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

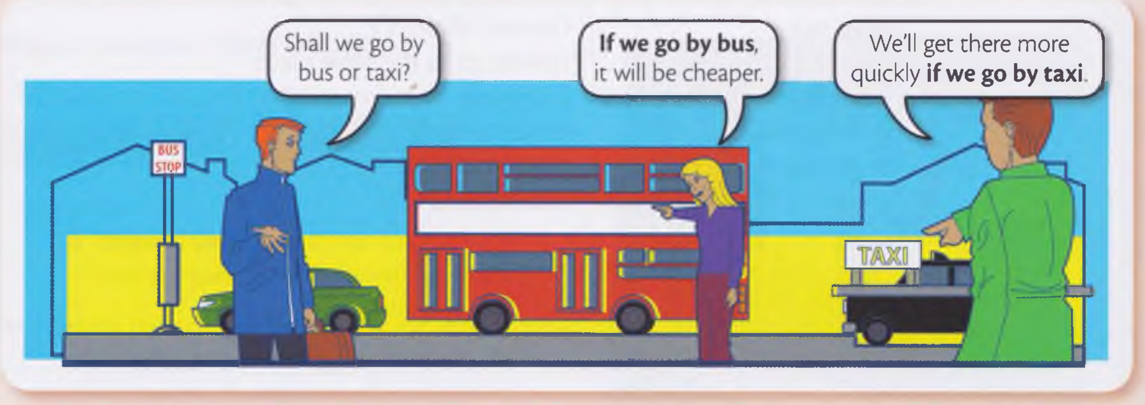
98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Can you close the window before you go out ?
2 What are you going to do when .... ?
3 When I have enough money, ...
4 I'll wait for you while ....
5 When I start my new job, ...
6 Will you be here when .... ?

Unit
99

If we go ... If you see ... etc.

A


Shall we go by bus or taxi?
If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
We'll get there more quickly **if we go by taxi**.
BUS STOP
TAXI

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we go by bus,	it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry,	you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry,	have something to eat.
If the phone rings,	can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

It will be cheaper	**if** we go by bus.
You'll miss the train	**if** you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert	**if** I can get a ticket.
Is it OK	**if** I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:

- 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, **if I can get a ticket**.'

B

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After **if**, we use the present (*not* will). We say '**if** you **see** ...' (*not* if you will see):

- **If** you **see** Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- **If I'm** late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What shall we do **if** it **rains**? (*not* if it will rain)
- **If** I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

C

if and **when**

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. **If I go out**, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the windows.

Compare **when** and **if**:

- **When** I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- **If** I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis **if** it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)

when ➜ Unit 98 **if I had / if we went** ... etc. ➜ Unit 100

Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with **if**. Choose from the boxes.

If +

~~you don't hurry~~
you pass the exam
you fail the exam
you don't want this magazine
you want those pictures
you're busy now
you're hungry
you need money

+

we can have lunch now
you can have them
I can lend you some
you'll get a certificate
~~you'll be late~~
I'll throw it away
we can talk later
you can do it again

1 *If you don't hurry, you'll be late.*
2 If you pass ....
3 If ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

99.2 Which is right?

1 If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late this evening, don't wait for me. (*I'm is right*)
2 Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
3 If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening.
5 I'm / I'll be surprised if Michael and Jane get / will get married.
6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I'm going to the concert if *I can get a ticket.*
2 If you don't hurry, *you'll miss the train.*
3 I don't want to disturb you if ....
4 If you go to bed early tonight, ...
5 Turn the TV off if ....
6 Tina won't pass her exams if ....
7 If I have time tomorrow, ...
8 We can go to the beach tomorrow if ....
9 I'll be surprised if ....

99.4 Write **if** or **when**.

1 *If* I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2 I'm going to do some shopping now. .... I come back, we can have lunch.
3 I'm thinking of going to see Tom. .... I go, will you come with me?
4 .... you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5 Is it OK .... I close the window?
6 John is still at school. .... he leaves school, he wants to go to college.
7 Shall we have a picnic tomorrow .... the weather is good?
8 We're going to Madrid next week. We don't have anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel .... we get there. I don't know what we'll do .... we don't find a room.

Unit
100

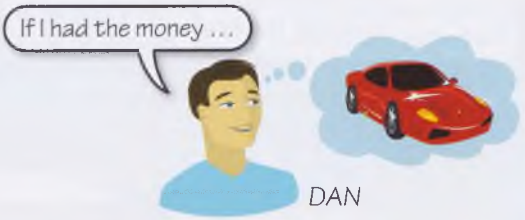
If I had ...   If we went ...   etc.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one.
He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. **If** he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).


If I had the money ...
DAN

If	I	**had** / **knew** / **lived** (etc.) ... ,	I	**would** ...
	you	**didn't have** / **didn't know** (etc.) ... ,	you	**wouldn't** ...
	it	**were** ... ,	it	**could** ...
	they	**could** ... ,	they	**couldn't** ...

You can say:

○ **If he had** the money, he would buy a car.

or He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

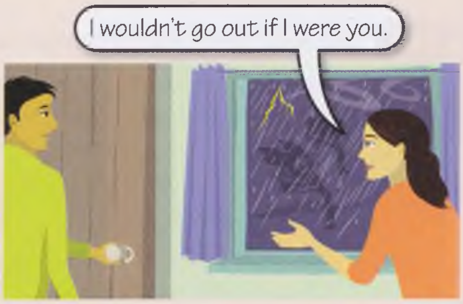
I'd / **she'd** / **they'd** etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would** etc. :

○ I don't know the answer. **If** I **knew** the answer, I**'d tell** you.
○ It's raining, so we're not going out. We**'d get** wet **if** we **went** out.
○ Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be** happy **if** she **lived** in the country.
○ **If** you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you *have* a job)
○ I'm sorry I can't help you. I**'d help** you **if** I **could**. (but I *can't*)
○ **If** we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we *don't* have a car, so we *can't* travel much)

B

If (I) **was/were** ...

You can say: **if** I/he/she/it **was** *or*
if I/he/she/it **were**


I wouldn't go out if I were you.

○ It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there **if I were you**. (*or* ... **if I was** you)
○ It would be nice **if the weather was** better. (*or* ... **if the weather were** better)
○ What would Tom do **if he were** here? (*or* ... **if he was** here)

C

Compare:

if I have / **if it is** etc.

○ I must go and see Helen.
If I **have** time, I **will go** today.
(= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)

○ I like that jacket.
I**'ll buy** it **if** it **isn't** too expensive.
(= maybe it will not be too expensive)

○ I**'ll help** you **if** I **can**. (= maybe I can)

if I had / **if it was** etc.

○ I must go and see Helen.
If I **had** time, I **would go** today.
(= I don't have time today, so I will not go)

○ I like this jacket, but it's very expensive.
I**'d buy** it **if** it **wasn't** so expensive.
(= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)

○ I**'d help** you **if** I **could**, but I can't.

if we go / **if I have** / **if I can** etc. ➜ **Unit 99**

Exercises

100.1 Complete the sentences.

1 I don't know the answer. If I ....knew.... the answer, I'd tell you.
2 I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I ....didn't have.... a car.
3 I don't want to go out. If I .... to go out, I'd go.
4 We don't have a key. If we .... a key, we could get into the house.
5 I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I .... hungry.
6 Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she .... it.
7 He can't speak any foreign languages. If he .... speak a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
8 You don't try hard enough. If you .... harder, you would have more success.
9 I have a lot to do today. If I .... so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1 If ....he had.... the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2 Jane likes living in a city. ....She wouldn't be.... happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3 If I wanted to learn Italian, ... to Italy. (I go)
4 I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if .... (she/know)
5 If .... a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6 What would you do if .... a lot of money? (you/win)
7 It's not a very good hotel. .... there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
8 If .... nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9 It's a shame you have to go now. .... nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10 I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if .... better. (the salary/be)
11 I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, ... what to do. (I/not/know)
12 If you could change one thing in the world, what .... ? (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house
we (buy) a bigger house
we (have) some pictures on the wall
every day (be) the same
~~**it (be) a bit cheaper**~~
the air (be) cleaner
I (watch) it
I (be) bored

1 I'd buy that jacket if ....it was a bit cheaper.... .
2 If there was a good film on TV tonight, ...
3 This room would be nicer if ....
4 If there wasn't so much traffic, ...
5 Life would be boring if ....
6 If I had nothing to do, ...
7 We could invite all our friends to stay if ....
8 If we had more money, ...

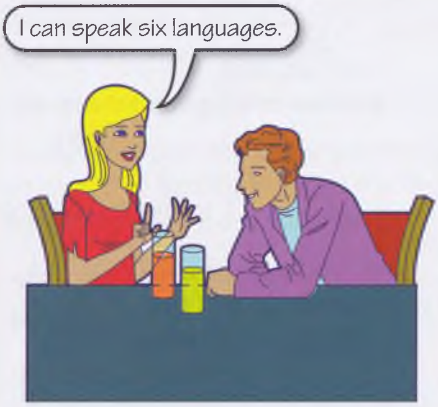
100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1 I'd be happier if ....I could get a better job.... .
2 If I could go anywhere in the world, ...
3 I wouldn't be very happy if ....
4 I'd buy .... if ....
5 If I saw an accident in the street, ...
6 The world would be a better place if ....

Unit 101

a person **who** ... a thing **that/which** ... (relative clauses 1)

A


I can speak six languages.

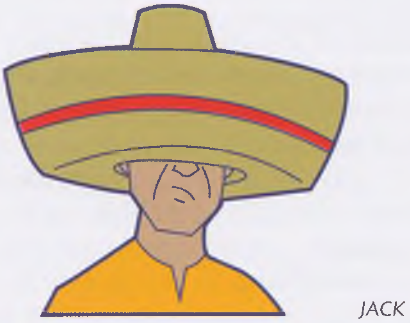
I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.

2 sentences

she → **who**

1 sentence

I met **a woman who** can speak six languages.



Jack was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.

2 sentences

it → **that** *or* **which**

1 sentence

Jack was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.

or

Jack was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

B

who is for people (not things):

A thief is **a person**	**who** steals things.	
Do you know **anybody**	**who** can play the piano?	
The man	**who** phoned	didn't give his name.
The people	**who** work in the office	are very friendly.

C

that is for things or people:

An airplane is **a machine**	**that** flies.	
Emma lives in **a house**	**that** is 400 years old.	
The people	**that** work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

D

which is for things (not people):

An airplane is **a machine**	**which** flies. (*not* a machine who ...)
Emma lives in **a house**	**which** is 400 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- Do you remember **the woman who** was playing the piano at the party? (*not* the woman which ...)

who and **which** in questions ➜ **Units 45, 47** **the people we met** (relative clauses 2) ➜ **Unit 102**

Exercises

101.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: **A ... is a person who ...** . Use a dictionary if necessary.

~~a thief~~
a butcher
a musician
a patient
a dentist
a fool
a genius
a liar

doesn't tell the truth
takes care of your teeth
is very intelligent
plays a musical instrument
is ill in hospital
~~steals things~~
does stupid things
sells meat

1 A thief is a person who steals things.
2 A butcher is a person ....
3 A musician ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

101.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
The man who phoned didn't give his name.

2 (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
The woman .... a yellow dress.

3 (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
Most of the students ....

4 (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
The ....

101.3 Write **who** or **which**.

1 I met a woman ...who... can speak six languages.
2 What's the name of the man .... has just started work in your office?
3 What's the name of the river .... flows through the town?
4 Where is the picture .... was hanging on the wall?
5 Do you know anybody .... wants to buy a car?
6 You always ask questions .... are difficult to answer.
7 I have a friend .... is very good at repairing cars.
8 I think everybody .... went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9 Why does he always wear clothes .... are too small for him?

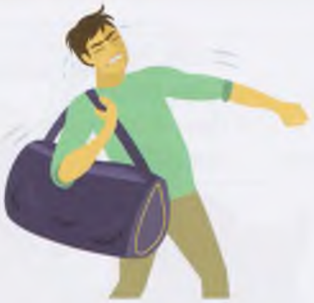
101.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1 A thief is a person which steals things. ...a person who steals...
2 An airplane is a machine that flies. ...OK...
3 A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. ....
4 What's happened to the money that was on the table? ....
5 I don't like people which never stop talking. ....
6 I know somebody that can help you. ....
7 I know somebody who works in that shop. ....
8 Correct the sentences who are wrong. ....
9 My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000 ....

Unit 102

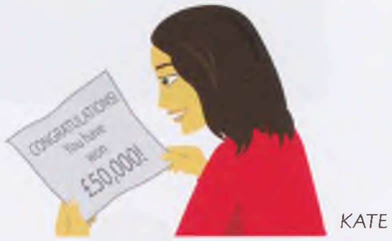
the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

A



The man is carrying a bag.
It's very heavy. } *2 sentences*

The bag (**that**) **he is carrying** is very heavy.
1 sentence


CONGRATULATIONS!
You have won
£50,000!
KATE

Kate won some money.
What is she going to do with it? } *2 sentences*

What is Kate going to do with **the money** (**that**) **she won**?
1 sentence

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying ... *or* The bag he is carrying ... (with or without **that**)
- ... the money **that** Kate won? *or* ... the money Kate won?

You do not need **that**/**who**/**which** when it is the *object*:

subject	*verb*	*object*	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ **the bag** (that) **the man was carrying**
Kate	won	some money	→ **the money** (that) **Kate won**
You	wanted	some books	→ **the books** (that) **you wanted**
We	met	some people	→ **the people** (who) **we met**

- Did you find **the books you wanted**? (*or* ... the books **that** you wanted?)
- **The people we met** were very friendly. (*or* The people **who** we met ...)
- **Everything I said** was true. (*or* Everything **that** I said ...)

We say:

- The film **we saw** was very good. (*not* The film we saw it was ...)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to**/**in**/**at** etc.) after the verb:

Eve **is talking to** a man. → Do you know **the man Eve is talking to**?
We **stayed at** a hotel. → **The hotel we stayed at** was near the station.
I **told** you **about** some books. → These are **the books I told you about**.

We say:

... the books **I told you about**. (*not* the books I told you about them)

You can say '(a place) **where** ...':

- **The hotel where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

C

You must use **who**/**that**/**which** when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 101):

- I met a woman **who can speak** six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat **that was** too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

a person who ... , **a thing that/which** ... (relative clauses 1) ➔ **Unit 101**

Exercises

102.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
Have you seen the pictures Helen took?
2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
I've lost the ……
3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
I like the ……
4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
Where are the …… ?
5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I ……
6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How …… ?

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
The ……
3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
The shoes ……
4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
The ……

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ?
2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
Who are the people …… ?
3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
Did you find the …… ?
4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
Where is the …… ?
5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
What's the name of …… ?
6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
What's that …… ?
7 Your friend applied for a job. You ask:
Did you get …… ?

102.4 Complete the questions. Use **where**.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
Did you like the hotel where you stayed ?
2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
What's the name of the restaurant …… ?
3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
How big is the …… ?
4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
Where exactly is …… ?

Unit
103

at 8 o'clock on Monday in April

A

at

at	8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.

- I start work **at 8 o'clock**.
- The shops close **at 5.30**.

on

on	Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.

- Bye! I'll see you **on Friday**.
- What do you usually do **on Sundays**?
- The concert is **on 22 November**.

in

in	April/June etc. 2013/1988 etc. summer/spring etc.

- I'm going on holiday **in October**.
- Emma was born **in 1995**.
- The park is beautiful **in spring**.

B

We say:

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas
at the end of ...
at the moment

- Are you going away **at the weekend**?
- I can't sleep **at night**.
- Where will you be **at Christmas**? (*but* **on** Christmas **Day**)
- I'm going on holiday **at the end of** October.
- Are you busy **at the moment**?

C

in the morning / **in the afternoon** / **in the evening**

- I always feel good **in the morning**.
- Do you often go out **in the evening**?

but

on Monday morning / **on Tuesday afternoon** / **on Friday evening** / **on Saturday night** etc. :

- I'm meeting Jackie **on Monday morning**.
- Are you doing anything **on Saturday night**?

D

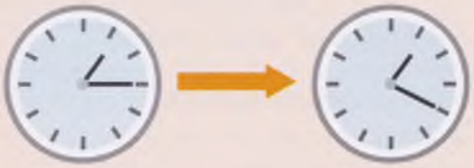
We do *not* use **at**/**on**/**in** before:

this ... (**this morning** / **this week** etc.)
last ... (**last August** / **last week** etc.)
next ... (**next Monday** / **next week** etc.)
every ... (**every day** / **every week** etc.)

- Are you going out **this evening**?
- We go on holiday **every summer**. **Last summer** we went to Canada.
- I'm leaving **next Monday**. (*not* on next Monday)

E

in five minutes / **in a few days** / **in six weeks** / **in two years** etc.


now
in five minutes

- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**. (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Bye! I'll see you **in a few days**. (= a few days from now)

in/**on**/**at** (places) → Units 106–107

Exercises

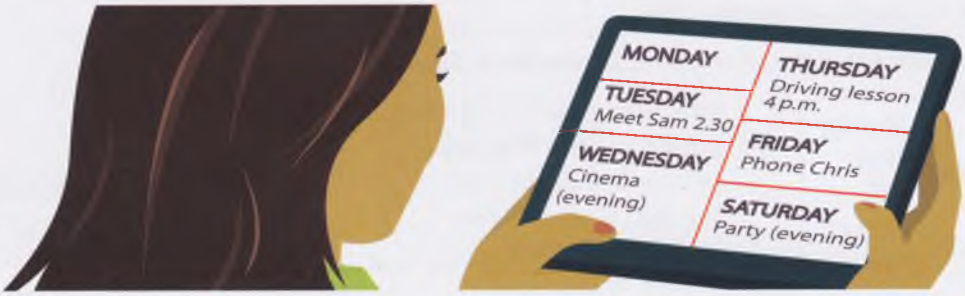
103.1 Write **at/on/in**.

1 ......on...... 6 June
2 ......in...... the evening
3 .... half past two
4 .... Wednesday
5 2007
6 .... September
7 .... 24 September
8 .... Thursday
9 .... 11.45
10 .... Christmas Day
11 .... Christmas
12 .... the morning
13 .... Friday morning
14 .... Saturday night
15 .... night
16 .... the end of the day
17 .... the weekend
18 .... winter

103.2 Write **at/on/in**.

1 Bye! See you ......on...... Friday.
2 Where were you .... 28 February?
3 I got up .... 8 o'clock this morning.
4 I like getting up early .... the morning.
5 My sister got married .... May.
6 Jessica and I first met .... 2006.
7 Did you go out .... Tuesday?
8 Did you go out .... Tuesday evening?
9 Do you often go out .... the evening?
10 Let's meet .... 7.30 tomorrow evening.
11 I often go away .... the weekend.
12 I'm starting my new job .... 3 July.
13 We often go to the beach .... summer.
14 George isn't here .... the moment.
15 Jane's birthday is .... December.
16 Do you work .... Saturdays?
17 The company started .... 1999.
18 I like to look at the stars .... night.
19 I'll send you the money .... the end of the month.

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.



1 Lisa is going to the cinema ......on Wednesday evening.. .
2 She has to phone Chris ....
3 She isn't doing anything special ....
4 She's got a driving lesson ....
5 She's going to a party ....
6 She's meeting Sam ....

103.4 Write sentences with **in ...** .

1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30. ......The train leaves in five minutes.......
2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. I'll .... days.
3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June. My ....
4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30. Tom ....

103.5 Write **at/on/in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I'm going ......on...... Friday.
2 I'm going ......–...... next Friday. *(already complete)*
3 I always feel tired .... the evening.
4 Will you be at home .... this evening?
5 We went to France .... last summer.
6 Laura was born .... 1997.
7 What are you doing .... the weekend?
8 I phone Robert .... every Sunday.
9 Shall we play tennis .... next Sunday?
10 I can't go to the party .... Sunday.
11 I'm going out. I'll be back .... an hour.
12 I don't often go out .... night.

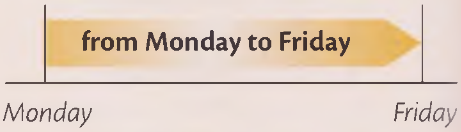
Unit 104

from ... to   until   since   for

A

from ... **to** ...

○ We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **to** 2010.
○ I work **from** Monday **to** Friday.



You can also say **from** ... **until** ... :

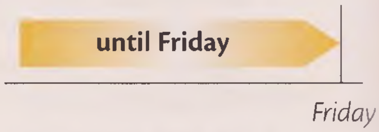
○ We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **until** 2010.

B

until ...

until	Friday December 3 o'clock I come back

○ They're going away tomorrow.
They'll be away **until Friday**.
○ I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired.
I read a book **until 3 o'clock**.
○ Wait here **until I come back**.



You can also say **till** (= **until**):

○ Wait here **till** I come back.

Compare:

○ '**How long** will you be away?' '**Until** Monday.'
○ '**When** are you coming back?' '**On** Monday.'

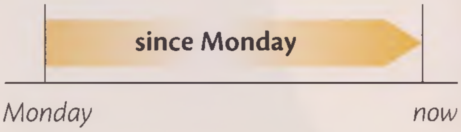
C

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have done** etc.):

since	Monday 1998 2.30 I arrived

○ Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital **since Monday**.
(= from Monday to now)
○ Sue and Dave have been married **since 1998**.
(= from 1998 to now)
○ It has been raining **since I arrived**.



Compare:

○ We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **to** 2010.
We lived in Japan **until** 2010.
○ Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada **in** 2010.
We have lived in Canada **since** 2010. (= from 2010 until now)

We use **for** (*not* **since**) + a period of time (**three days** / **ten years** etc.):

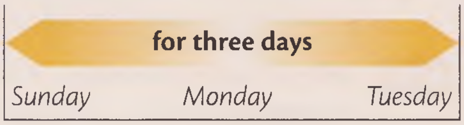
○ Joe has been in hospital **for three days**. (*not* since three days)

D

for + a period of time

for	three days ten years five minutes a long time

○ Gary stayed with us **for three days**.
○ I'm going away **for a few weeks**.
○ I'm going away **for the weekend**.
○ They've been married **for ten years**.

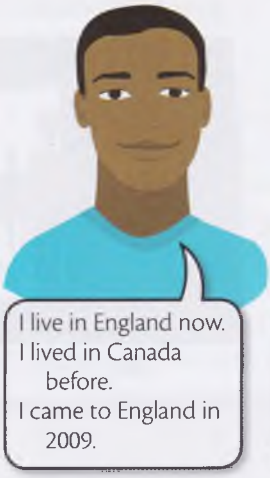


present perfect + **for**/**since** ➔ Units 18–19   present perfect (**I have lived**) and past simple (**I lived**) ➔ Unit 20

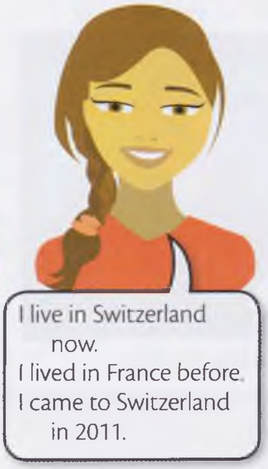
Exercises

104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use **from ... to / until / since.**

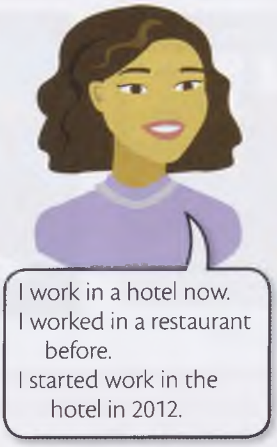
ALEX


I live in England now.
I lived in Canada before.
I came to England in 2009.

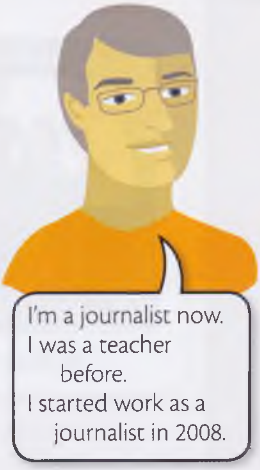
KAREN


I live in Switzerland now.
I lived in France before.
I came to Switzerland in 2011.

CLARE


I work in a hotel now.
I worked in a restaurant before.
I started work in the hotel in 2012.

ADAM


I'm a journalist now.
I was a teacher before.
I started work as a journalist in 2008.

1 (Alex / Canada / 2001 → 2009) Alex lived in Canada from 2001 to 2009 …….
2 (Alex / Canada / → 2009) Alex lived in Canada …… 2009.
3 (Alex / England / 2009 →) Alex has lived in England …….
4 (Karen / France / → 2011) Karen lived in …….
5 (Karen / Switzerland / 2011 →) Karen has lived in …….
6 (Clare / a restaurant / 2010 → 2012) Clare worked …… 2010 …….
7 (Clare / a hotel / 2012 →) Clare has worked …….
8 (Adam / a teacher / 2002 → 2008) Adam was a …….
9 (Adam / a journalist / 2008 →) Adam has been …….

Now write sentences with **for.**

10 (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years …….
11 (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England …….
12 (Karen / Switzerland) Karen has …….
13 (Clare / a restaurant) Clare worked …….
14 (Clare / a hotel) Clare …….
15 (Adam / a teacher) Adam …….
16 (Adam / a journalist) Adam …….

104.2 Write **until/since/for.**

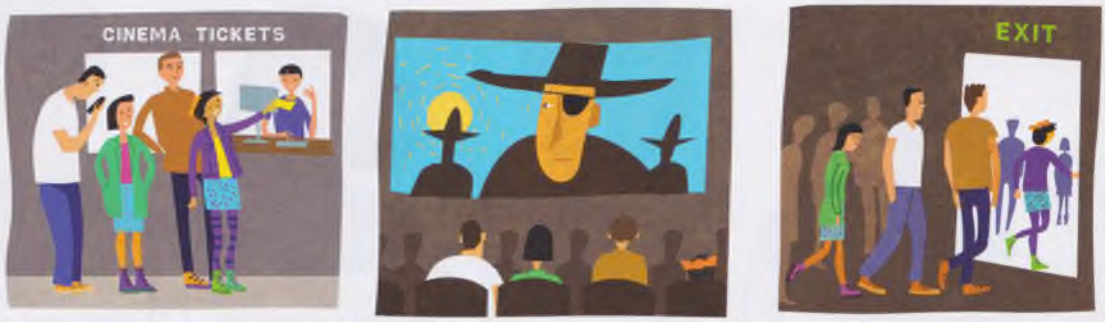
1 Sue and Dave have been married since 1998.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed …… 10 o'clock.
3 We waited for Sue …… half an hour, but she didn't come.
4 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here …… half past seven.'
5 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '…… midnight.'
6 Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other …… ten years.
7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down …… a few minutes.
8 Don't open the door of the train …… the train stops.
9 This is my house. I've lived here …… I was seven years old.
10 Jack has gone away. He'll be away …… Wednesday.
11 Next week I'm going to Paris …… three days.
12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work …… six.
13 'How long have you known Anna?' '…… we were at school together.'
14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you …… twenty minutes.

Unit
105

before after during while

A

before, **during** and **after**

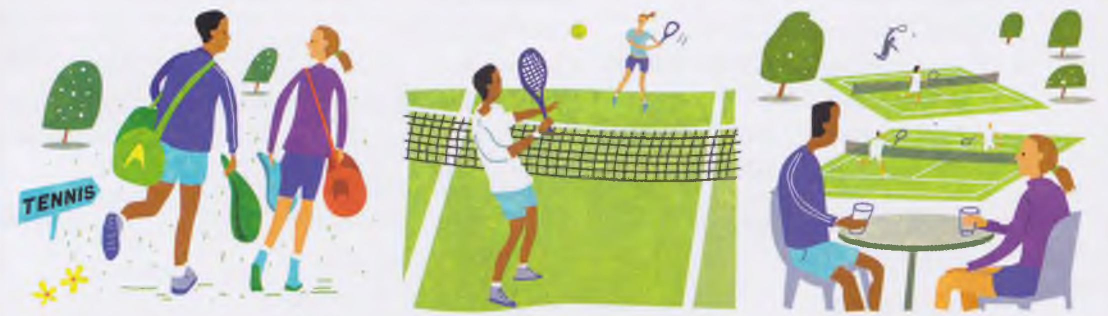


before the film **during** the film **after** the film

- Everybody feels nervous **before exams**.
- I fell asleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

B

before, **while** and **after**



before we played **while** we were playing **after** we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often fall asleep **while I'm reading**.
- They went home **after they did the shopping**.

C

during, **while** and **for**

We use **during** + *noun* (during **the film**). We use **while** + *verb* (while **I'm reading**):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.

but We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (**three days** / **two hours** / **a year** etc.):

- We played tennis **for two hours**. (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in London **for a year**. (*not* during a year)

D

You can use **before/after** + **-ing** (**before going** / **after eating** etc.):

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After doing** the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

We say **before going** (*not* before to go), **after doing** (*not* after to do) etc. :

- **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

past continuous (**I was -ing**) ➜ Units 13–14 **before/after/while/when** ➜ Unit 98 **for** ➜ Unit 104
prepositions + **-ing** ➜ Unit 112

Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after **during**
before **while**

+

lunch **the end** **they went to Australia**
the concert ~~**the exam**~~ **you're waiting**
the course **the night**

1 Everybody was nervous before the exam.
2 I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours ....
3 The film was really boring. We left ....
4 Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot ....
5 My aunt and uncle lived in London ....
6 A: Somebody broke a window .... Did you hear anything?
B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7 Would you like to sit down .... ?
8 A: Are you going home .... ?
B: Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.

105.2 Write **during/while/for.**

1 We didn't speak while we were eating.
2 We didn't speak during the meal.
3 Gary called .... you were out.
4 Amy went to Italy and stayed in Rome .... five days.
5 I didn't check my email .... I was away.
6 The students looked very bored .... the lesson.
7 I fell out of bed .... I was asleep.
8 Last night I watched TV .... three hours.
9 I don't usually watch TV .... the day.
10 Do you ever watch TV .... you are having dinner?

105.3 Complete the sentences. Use **-ing (doing, having** etc.).

1 After doing the shopping, they went home.
2 I felt sick after .... too much chocolate.
3 I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before .... it.
4 I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after .... a shower.
5 After .... my work, I left the office and went home.
6 Before .... to a foreign country, it's good to try and learn a little of the language.

105.4 Write sentences with **before** + **-ing** and **after** + **-ing.**

1 They did the shopping. Then they went home.
After doing the shopping, they went home.

2 John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
John worked ....

3 I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
Before ....

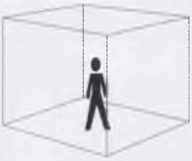
4 We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
After ....

5 Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
Let's ....

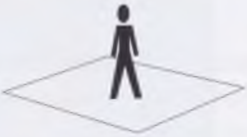
Unit 106

in at on (places 1)

A in



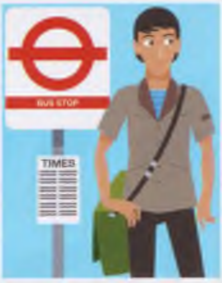
in a room
in a shop
in a car
in the water



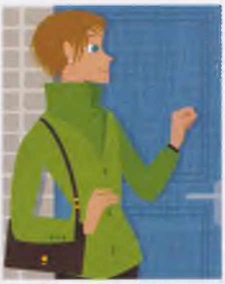
in a garden
in a town
in the city centre
in Brazil

☐ 'Where's David?' '**In the kitchen**. / **In the garden**. / **In London**.'
☐ What's **in that box** / **in that bag** / **in that cupboard**?
☐ Rachel works **in a shop** / **in a bank** / **in a factory**.
☐ I went for a swim **in the river** / **in the pool** / **in the sea**.
☐ Milan is **in the north of Italy**. Naples is **in the south**.
☐ I live **in a big city**, but I'd like to live in the country.

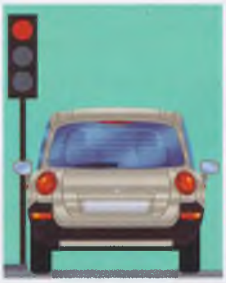
B at



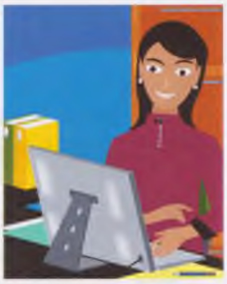
at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic lights

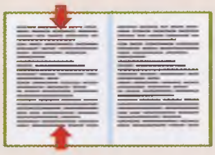


at her desk

☐ There's somebody **at the bus stop** / **at the door**.
☐ The car is waiting **at the traffic lights**.
☐ Vicky is working **at her desk**.

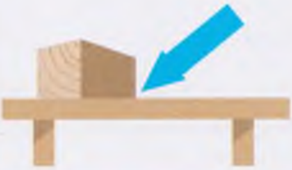
at the top / **at the bottom** / **at the end** (of ...):
☐ Write your name **at the top of the page**.
☐ My house is **at the end of the street**.

at the top (of the page)

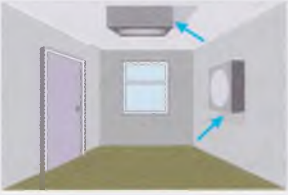


at the bottom (of the page)

C on



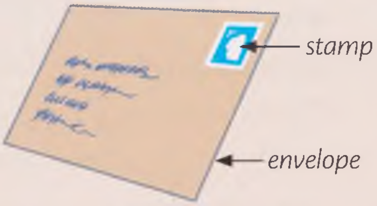
on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor
etc.



on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling
etc.

☐ There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
☐ There are a lot of apples **on those trees**.
☐ Don't sit **on the grass**. It's wet.
☐ There is a stamp **on the envelope**.

on a horse / **on a bicycle** / **on a motorbike**:
☐ Who is that man **on the motorbike**?

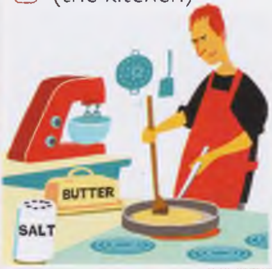


the top / **the bottom** → Unit 70   **at**/**on**/**in** (time) → Unit 103   **in**/**at**/**on** (places) → Unit 107

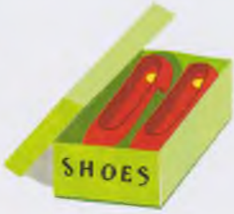
Exercises

106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.

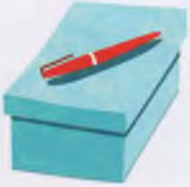
① (the kitchen)



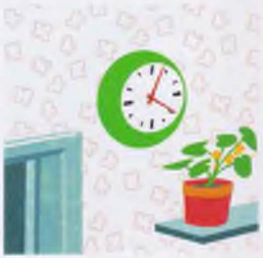
② (the box)



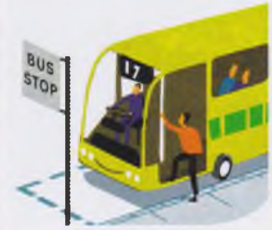
③ (the box)



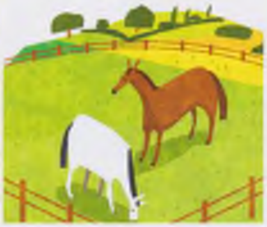
④ (the wall)



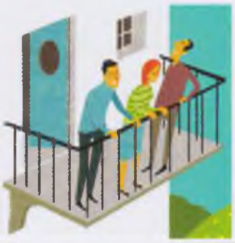
⑤ (the bus stop)



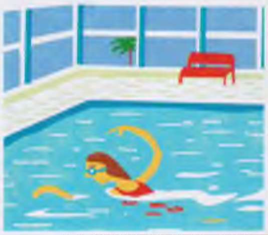
⑥ (the field)



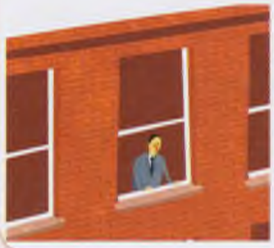
⑦ (the balcony)



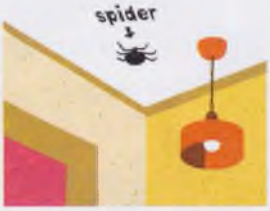
⑧ (the pool)



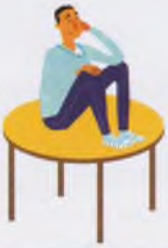
⑨ (the window)



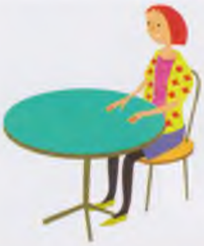
⑩ (the ceiling)



⑪ (the table)



⑫ (the table)



1 Where is he? In the kitchen.
2 Where are the shoes? ....
3 Where is the pen? ....
4 Where is the clock? ....
5 Where is the bus? ....
6 Where are the horses? ....
7 Where are they standing? ....
8 Where is she swimming? ....
9 Where is he standing? ....
10 Where is the spider? ....
11 Where is he sitting? ....
12 Where is she sitting? ....

106.2 Write **in/at/on**.

1 Don't sit ...on... the grass. It's wet.
2 What do you have .... your bag?
3 Look! There's a man .... the roof. What's he doing?
4 There are a lot of fish .... this river.
5 Our house is number 45 – the number is .... the door.
6 'Is the hospital near here?' 'Yes, turn left .... the traffic lights.'
7 It's difficult to park .... the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.
8 My sister lives .... Brussels.
9 There's a small park .... the top of the hill.
10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody .... the door.
11 Munich is a large city .... the south of Germany.
12 There are a few shops .... the end of the street.
13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things .... a bike.
14 I looked at the list of names. My name was .... the bottom.
15 There is a mirror .... the wall .... the living room.

in at on (places 2)

A

in

in bed
in hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / **in** a book
in a photo(graph) / **in** a picture
in a car / **in** a taxi
in the middle (of ...)

- ☐ 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **in bed**.'
- ☐ David's father is ill. He's **in hospital**.
- ☐ I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- ☐ What's the largest city **in the world**?
- ☐ I read about the accident **in the newspaper**.
- ☐ You look sad **in this picture**.
- ☐ Did you come here **in your car**?
- ☐ There's a big tree **in the middle** of the garden.

B

at

at home
at work / **at** school
at university / **at** college
at the station / **at** the airport
at Lisa's (house) / **at** my sister's (house) / **at** the doctor's / **at** the hairdresser's etc.
at a concert / **at** a party / **at** a football match etc.

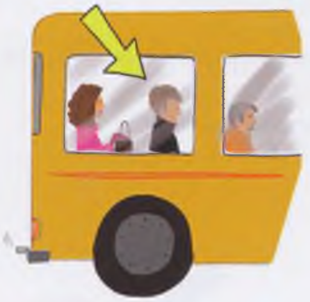
- ☐ Will you be **at home** this evening?
- ☐ 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **at work**.'
- ☐ Helen is studying law **at university**.
- ☐ I'll meet you **at the station**, OK?
- ☐ A: Where were you yesterday?
  B: **At my sister's**.
- ☐ I saw Tom **at the doctor's**.
- ☐ There weren't many people **at the party**.

Often it is possible to use **in** or **at** for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):

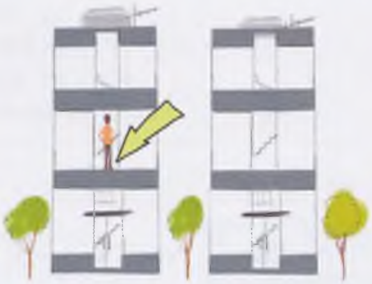
☐ We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C

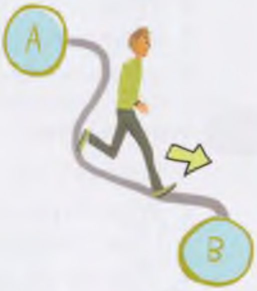
on



on a bus



on the first floor



on the way from A to B

on a bus / **on** a train / **on** a plane / **on** a ship
on the ground floor / **on** the first floor etc.
on the way (to ...) / **on** the way home

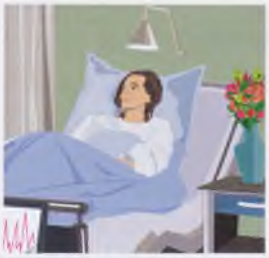
- ☐ Did you come here **on the bus**?
- ☐ The office is **on the first floor**.
- ☐ I met Anna **on the way** to work / **on the way** home.

in/at/on (places) ➜ **Unit 106** **to/in/at** ➜ **Unit 108** **on the left/right** ➜ **Unit 109**

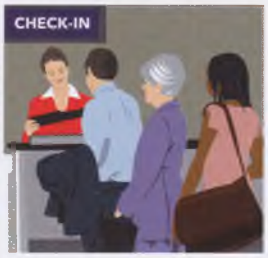
Exercises

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.

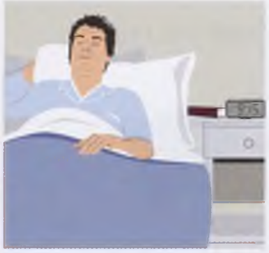
① (hospital)



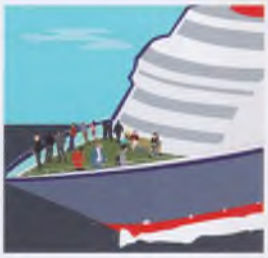
② (the airport)



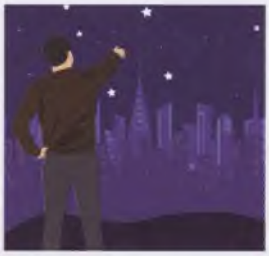
③ (bed)



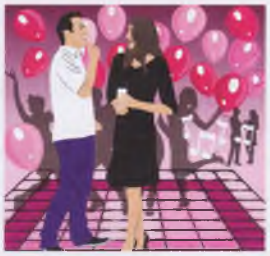
④ (a ship)



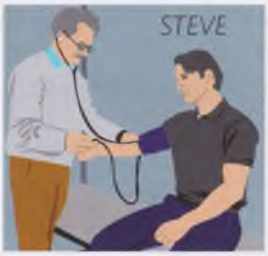
⑤ (the sky)



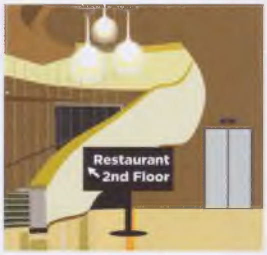
⑥ (a party)



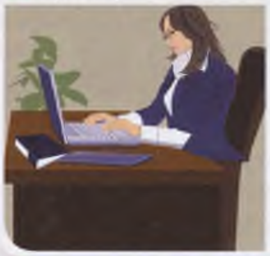
⑦ (the doctor's)



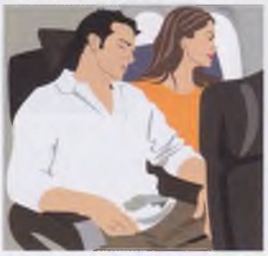
⑧ (the second floor)



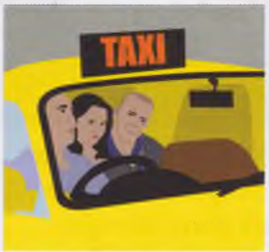
⑨ (work)



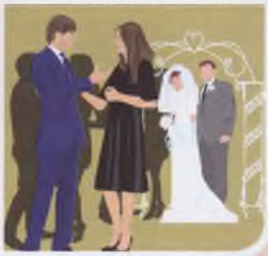
⑩ (a plane)



⑪ (a taxi)



⑫ (a wedding)



1 Where is she? In hospital.
2 Where are they? ....
3 Where is he? ....
4 Where are they? ....
5 Where are the stars? ....
6 Where are they? ....
7 Where is Steve? ....
8 Where is the restaurant? ....
9 Where is she? ....
10 Where are they? ....
11 Where are they? ....
12 Where are they? ....

107.2 Write **in/at/on**.

1 Helen is studying law ...at... university.
2 There was a big table .... the middle of the room.
3 What is the longest river .... the world?
4 Were there many people .... the concert last night?
5 Will you be .... home tomorrow afternoon?
6 Who is the man .... this photo? Do you know him?
7 Where are your children? Are they .... school?
8 Gary is coming by train. I'm going to meet him .... the station.
9 Charlie is .... hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10 How many pages are there .... this book?
11 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had something to eat .... the train.'
12 I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down .... the way here.
13 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's .... his friend's house.'
14 Don't believe everything you see .... the newspaper!
15 I walked to work, but I came home .... the bus.

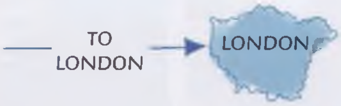
Unit
108

to in at (places 3)

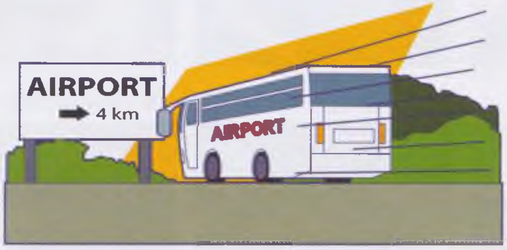
A

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) **to** ...



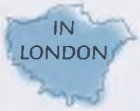
☐ We're **going to London** on Sunday.
☐ I want to **go to Italy** next year.
☐ We **walked** from my house **to the centre of town**.
☐ What time do you **go to bed**?



☐ The bus is **going to the airport**.
☐ Karen didn't **go to work** yesterday.
☐ I **went to a party** last night.
☐ You must **come to our house**.

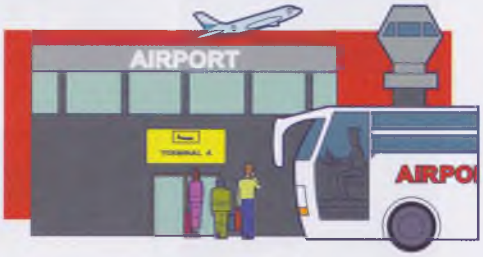
in/at (→ Units 106–107)

be/stay/do something (etc.) **in** ...



☐ Piccadilly Circus **is in London**.
☐ My brother **lives in Italy**.
☐ The main shops **are in the centre of town**.
☐ I like **reading in bed**.

be/stay/do something (etc.) **at** ...



☐ The bus **is at the airport**.
☐ Sarah **wasn't at work** yesterday.
☐ I **met a lot of people at the party**.
☐ Helen **stayed at her brother's house**.

B

home

go/come/walk (etc.) **home** (without **to**):

☐ I'm tired. I'm **going home**.
(*not* to home)
☐ Did you **walk home**?

be/stay/do something (etc.) **at home**:

☐ I'm **staying at home** tonight.
☐ Dan doesn't work in an office.
He **works at home**.

C

arrive and **get**

arrive in a country or town (**arrive in Italy** / **arrive in Paris** etc.):

☐ They **arrived in this country** last week. (*not* arrived to this country)

arrive at other places (**arrive at the station** / **arrive at work** etc.):

☐ What time did you **arrive at the hotel**? (*not* arrive to the hotel)

get to (**a place**):

☐ What time did you **get to the hotel**?
☐ What time did you **get to Paris**?

get home / **arrive home** (no preposition):

☐ I was tired when **I got home**. *or* I was tired when I **arrived home**.

been to → **Unit 17** **get** (to ...) → **Unit 56** **in/at** → **Units 106–107**

Exercises

108.1 Write **to** or **in**.

1 I like reading .....in..... bed.
2 We're going .... Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday .... Italy at the moment.
4 I have to go .... the hospital tomorrow.
5 I was tired, so I stayed .... bed late.
6 What time do you usually go .... bed?
7 Does this bus go .... the centre?
8 Would you like to live .... another country?

108.2 Write **to** or **at** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Paula didn't go .....to..... work yesterday.
2 I'm tired. I'm going .....–..... home. *(already complete)*
3 Tina is not very well. She has gone .... the doctor.
4 Would you like to come .... a party on Saturday?
5 'Is Lisa .... home?' 'No, she's gone .... work.'
6 There were 20,000 people .... the football match.
7 Why did you go .... home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam .... the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting .... the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal .... a restaurant, and then we went back .... the hotel.

108.3 Write **to**, **at** or **in** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying .....at..... home.
2 We're going .... a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went .... New York last year.
4 How long did you stay .... New York?
5 Next year we hope to go .... Canada to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go .... the cinema this evening?
7 Did you park your car .... the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken .... hospital.
9 How often do you go .... the dentist?
10 'Is Sarah here?' 'No, she's .... Helen's.'
11 My house is .... the end of the street on the left.
12 I went .... Maria's house, but she wasn't .... home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk .... home.
14 'Who did you meet .... the party?' 'I didn't go .... the party.'

108.4 Write **to**, **at** or **in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 What time do you usually get .... work?
2 What time do you usually get .... home?
3 What time did you arrive .... the party?
4 When did you arrive .... London?
5 What time does the train get .... Paris?
6 We arrived .... home very late.

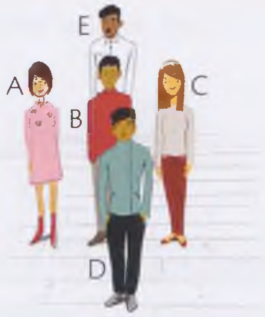
108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use **to/in/at**.

1 At 3 o'clock this morning I was .....in bed..
2 Yesterday I went ....
3 At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was ....
4 One day I'd like to go ....
5 I don't like going ....
6 At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was ....

Unit
109

under, behind, opposite etc.

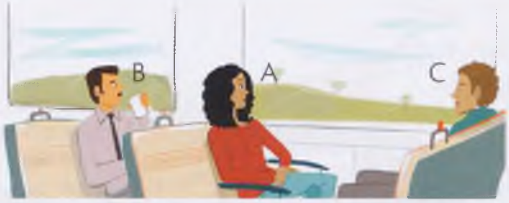
A next to / beside / between / in front of / behind



A is **next to** B. *or* A is **beside** B.
B is **between** A and C.
D is **in front of** B.
E is **behind** B.

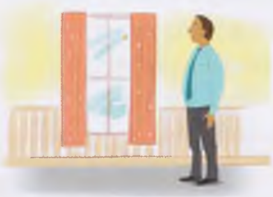
also
A is **on the left**.
C is **on the right**.
B is **in the middle** (of the group).

B opposite / in front of



A is sitting **in front of** B.
A is sitting **opposite** C.
C is sitting **opposite** A.

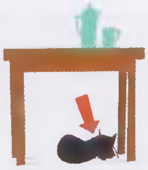
C by (= next to / beside)



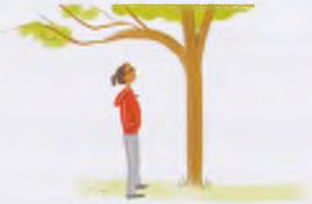
by the window

○ Our house is **by the sea**. (= beside the sea)
○ Who is that man standing **by the window**?
○ If you feel cold, why don't you sit **by the fire**?

D under



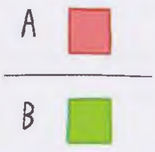
under the table



under a tree

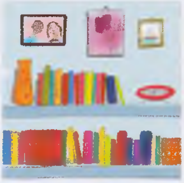
○ The cat is **under the table**.
○ The girl is standing **under a tree**.
○ I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E above and below



A is **above the line**.
(= higher than the line)

B is **below the line**.
(= lower than the line)



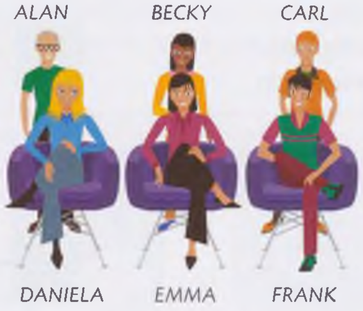
The pictures are
above the shelves.

The shelves are
below the pictures.

up/over/through etc. ➜ Unit 110   by ➜ Unit 111

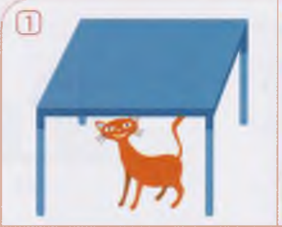
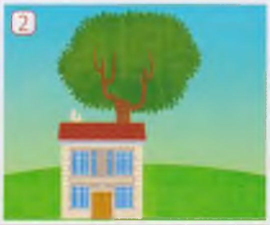
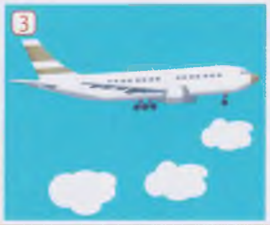
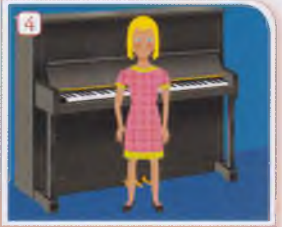
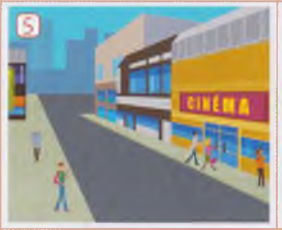
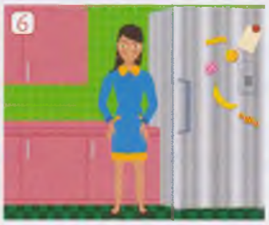
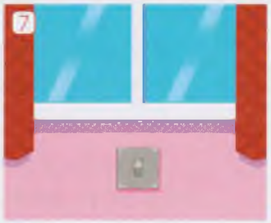
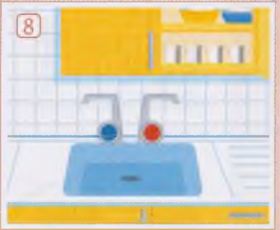
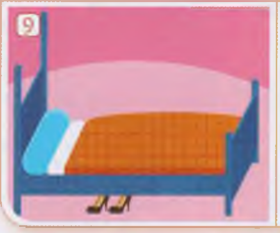
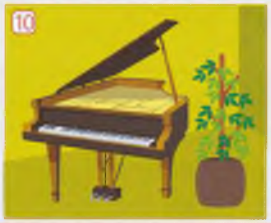
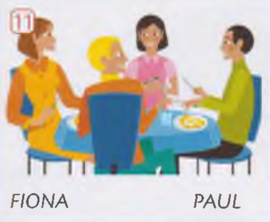
Exercises

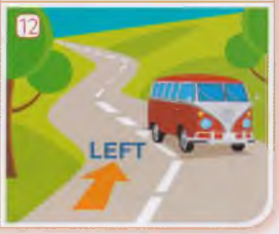
109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.


ALAN
BECKY
CARL
DANIELA
EMMA
FRANK

1 Carl is standing ....behind.... Frank.
2 Frank is sitting .... Emma.
3 Emma is sitting .... Becky.
4 Emma is sitting .... Daniela and Frank.
5 Daniela is sitting .... Emma.
6 Frank is sitting .... Carl.
7 Alan is standing .... Daniela.
8 Alan is standing .... left.
9 Becky is standing .... middle.

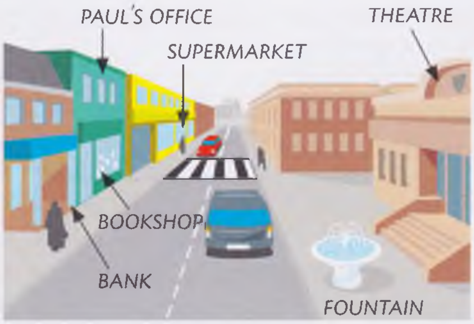
109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11


12


1 The cat is ....under.... the table.
2 There is a big tree .... the house.
3 The plane is flying .... the clouds.
4 She is standing .... the piano.
5 The cinema is .... the right.
6 She's standing .... the fridge.
7 The switch is .... the window.
8 The cupboard is .... the sink.
9 There are some shoes .... the bed.
10 The plant is .... the piano.
11 Paul is sitting .... Fiona.
12 In Britain people drive .... the left.

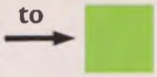
109.3 Write sentences about the picture.


PAUL'S OFFICE
THEATRE
SUPERMARKET
BOOKSHOP
BANK
FOUNTAIN

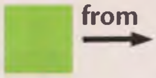
1 (next to) ....The bank is next to the bookshop.
2 (in front of) The .... in front of ....
3 (opposite) ....
4 (next to) ....
5 (above) ....
6 (between) ....

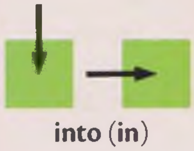
Unit 110

up, over, through etc.



- ○ Jane is going **to** France next week.
- ○ We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
- ○ A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

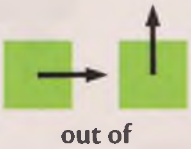


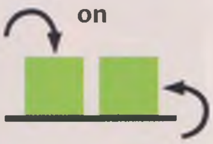


- ○ We jumped **into** the water.
- ○ A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
- ○ Why are you looking **out of** the window?
- ○ I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.

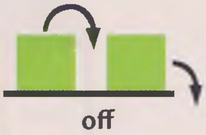
We say **put** something **in** … (*not usually* into):

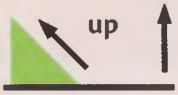
- ○ I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.



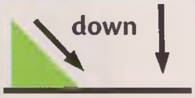


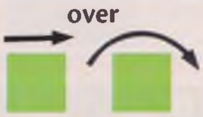
- ○ Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- ○ Please take your feet **off** the table.
- ○ I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- ○ Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bike.
- ○ We got **on** the bus in Princes Street.



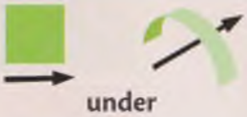


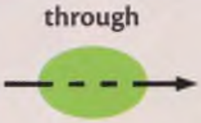
- ○ We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- ○ Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.





- ○ The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- ○ I jumped **over** the wall into the garden.
- ○ Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.

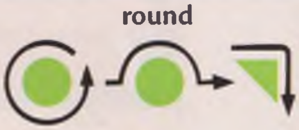


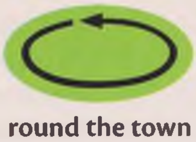


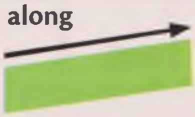
- ○ A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- ○ The old road goes **through** the village.
- ○ The new road goes **round** the village.
- ○ The bus stop is just **round** the corner.
- ○ I walked **round** the town and took some photographs.

You can also use **around** (= round):

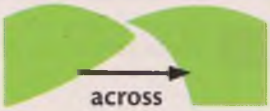
- ○ We walked **around** the town.

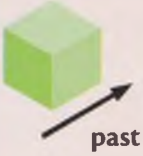




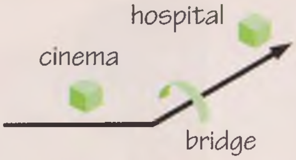


- ○ I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
- ○ Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- ○ The dog swam **across** the river.





- ○ They walked **past** me without speaking.
- ○ A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this road, **past** the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.

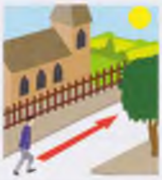


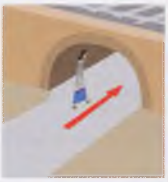
get in/on etc. ➜ Unit 56 **in/on** ➜ Units 106–107 **to** ➜ Unit 108 **fall off** / **run away** etc. ➜ Unit 114

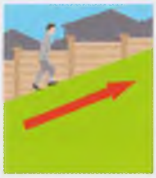
Exercises

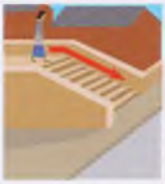
110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place.
You say which way to go. Look at the pictures
and write sentences beginning **Go ...** .

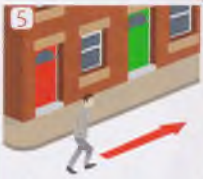
Excuse me, where is ... ?
Go ...

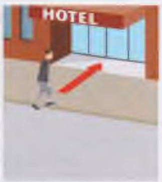
1

Go past the church.

2

Go .... the bridge.

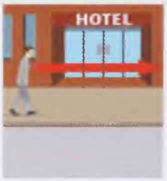
3

.... the hill.

4

.... the steps.

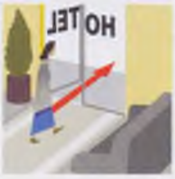
5

.... this street.

6


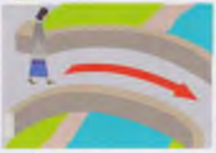
....
....

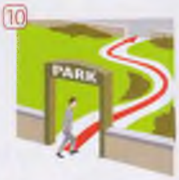
7


....
....

8


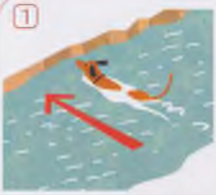
....
....

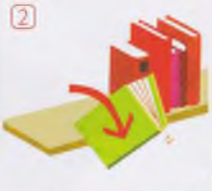
9

....
....

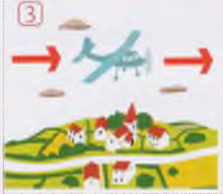
10


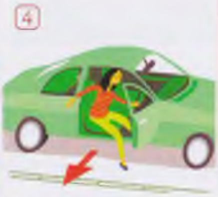
....
....

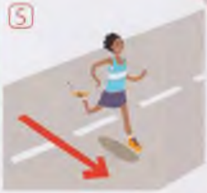
110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

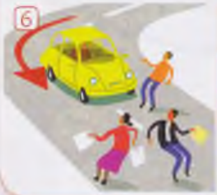
1


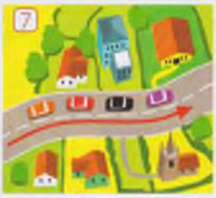
2


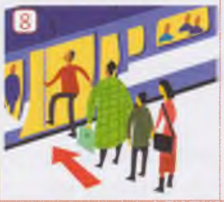
3


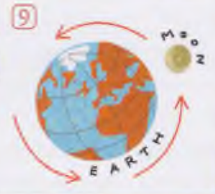
4


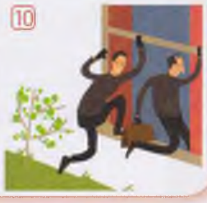
5


6


7


8


9


10


1 The dog swam ...across... the river.
2 A book fell .... the shelf.
3 A plane flew .... the village.
4 A woman got .... the car.
5 A girl ran .... the road.
6 Suddenly a car came .... the corner.
7 They drove .... the village.
8 They got .... the train.
9 The moon travels .... the earth.
10 They got .... the house .... a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use **over/from/into** etc.

1 I looked .... the window and watched the people in the street.
2 My house is very near here. It's just .... the corner.
3 'Where's my phone?' 'You put it .... your bag.'
4 How far is it .... here .... the airport?
5 We walked .... the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6 You can put your coat .... the back of the chair.
7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball .... the net.
8 Silvia took a key .... her bag and opened the door.

Unit
111

on at by with about

A

on

on holiday	☐ Jane isn't at work this week. She's **on holiday**.
on television	☐ We watched the news **on TV**.
on the radio	☐ We listened to the news **on the radio**.
on the phone	☐ I spoke to Rachel **on the phone** last night.
on fire	☐ The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade.
on time (= not late)	☐ 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**.'

B

at

at (**the age of**) **21** / **at 50 kilometres an hour** / **at 100 degrees** etc. :

- ☐ Lisa got married **at 21**. (*or*... **at the age of 21**.)
- ☐ A car uses more petrol **at 120 kilometres an hour** than **at 90**.
- ☐ Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

C

by

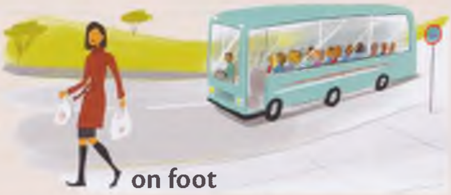
by car / **by bus** / **by plane** / **by bike** etc. :

- ☐ Do you like travelling **by train**?
- ☐ Jane usually goes to work **by bike**.

but **on foot**:

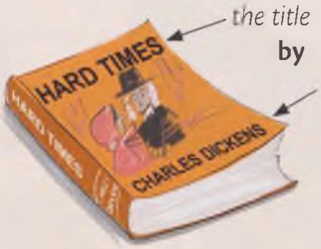
- ☐ You can't get there **by car**. You have to go **on foot**. (= you have to walk)

by bus



a book **by** ... / a painting **by** ... / a piece of music **by** ... etc. :

- ☐ Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- ☐ **Who** is that painting **by**? Picasso?



by after the passive (→ Unit 21):

- ☐ I was bitten **by a dog**.

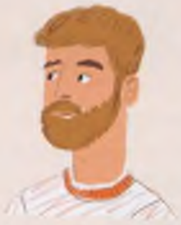
D

with/without

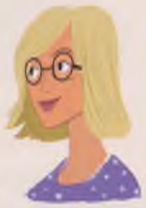
- ☐ Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?
- ☐ Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- ☐ Do you like your coffee **with** or **without milk**?
- ☐ I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses etc. :

- ☐ Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- ☐ I'd like to have a house **with a big garden**.



a man **with** a beard



a woman **with** glasses

E

about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... :

- ☐ Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- ☐ I don't **know** much **about cars**.

a book / **a question** / **a programme** / **information** (etc.) **about** ... :

- ☐ There was **a programme about** volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?

by → Units 21, 63, 109 **at/on** → Units 103, 106–107 preposition + **-ing** → Unit 112

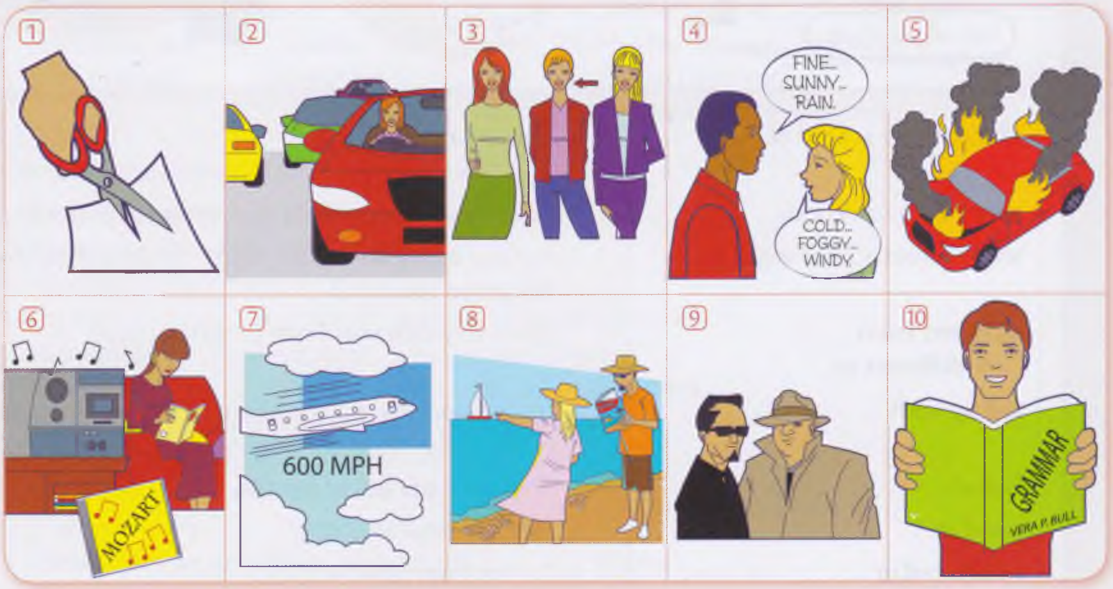
Exercises

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + these words:

holiday **the phone** ~~**the radio**~~ **TV** **time**

1 We heard the news on the radio .
2 Please don't be late. Try to be here …… .
3 I won't be here next week. I'm going …… .
4 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her …… .'
5 'What's …… this evening?' 'Nothing that I want to watch.'

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **at/by/with** etc.



1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
2 She usually goes to work …… car.
3 Who is the woman …… short hair?
4 They are talking …… the weather.
5 The car is …… fire.
6 She's listening to some music …… Mozart.
7 The plane is flying …… 600 miles an hour.
8 They're …… holiday.
9 Do you know the man …… sunglasses?
10 He's reading a book …… grammar …… Vera P. Bull.

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use **at/by/with** etc.

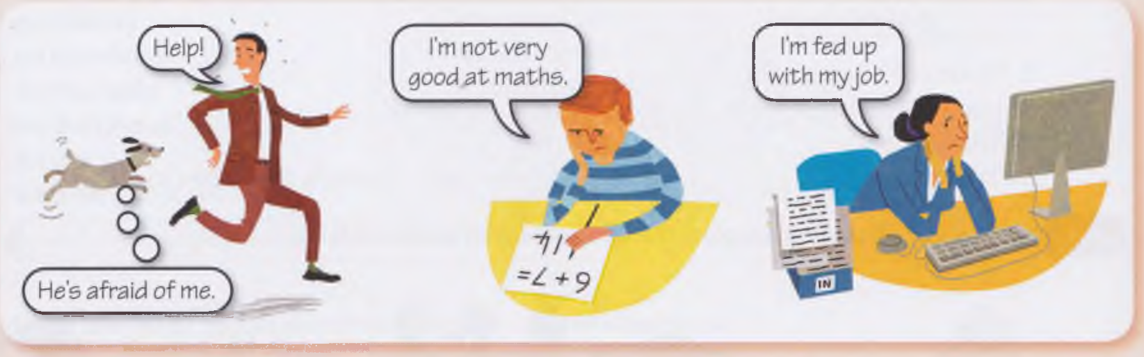
1 In tennis, you hit the ball …… a racket.
2 It's cold today. Don't go out …… a coat.
3 *Hamlet*, *Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays …… William Shakespeare.
4 Do you know anything …… computers?
5 My grandmother died …… the age of 98.
6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles …… plane?
7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it …… TV.
8 My house is the one …… the red door on the right.
9 These trains are very fast. They can travel …… very high speeds.
10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go …… bike.
11 Can you give me some information …… hotels in this town?
12 I was arrested …… two policemen and taken to the police station.
13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always …… time.
14 What would you like to drink …… your meal?
15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow …… train.
16 The museum has some paintings …… Rembrandt.

Unit
112

afraid of ... , good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

A

afraid of ... / **good at** ... etc. (*adjective + preposition*)


Help!
He's afraid of me.
I'm not very good at maths.
I'm fed up with my job.

afraid of ... / **scared of** ...	○ Are you **afraid of** dogs?
angry with somebody	○ Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?
angry about something	○ Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
different from ... *or* **different to** ...	○ Lisa is very **different from** (*or* **to**) her sister.
fed up with ...	○ I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
full of ...	○ The room was **full of people**.
good at ...	○ Are you **good at** maths?
interested in ...	○ I'm not **interested in** sport.
married to ...	○ Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
nice/**kind of** somebody to ...	○ It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
be **nice**/**kind to** somebody	○ David is very friendly. He's always very **nice to** me.
sorry about a situation	○ I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
sorry for/**about** doing something	○ I'm **sorry for**/**about** not phoning you yesterday. (*or* I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
be/feel **sorry for** somebody	○ I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

B

of/**at**/**for** (etc.) + **-ing**

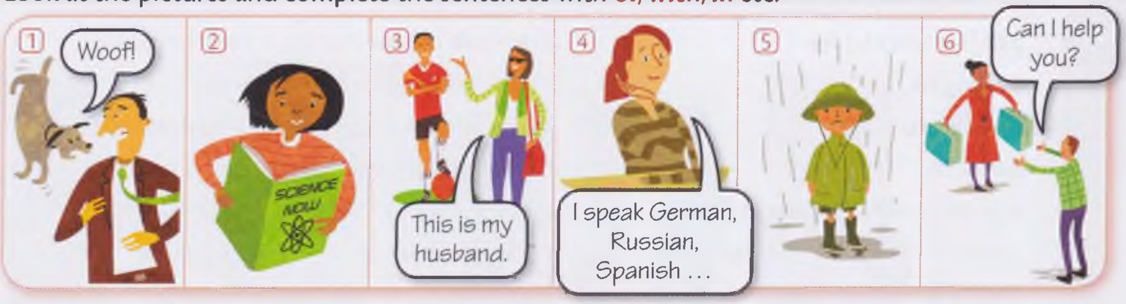
After a preposition (**of**/**at**/**for** etc.), a verb ends in **-ing**:

I'm not very good **at**	**telling**	stories.
Are you fed up **with**	**doing**	the same thing every day?
I'm sorry **for**	not **phoning**	you yesterday.
Thank you **for**	**helping**	me.
Mark is thinking **of**	**buying**	a new car.
Tom left **without**	**saying**	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	**doing**	the shopping, they went home.

before/after -ing ➜ Unit 105 **think about/of** ➜ Unit 113

Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **of/with/in** etc.



1 He's afraid ...of... dogs.
2 She's interested .... science.
3 She's married .... a footballer.
4 She's very good .... languages.
5 He's fed up .... the weather.
6 A: Can I help you?
B: Thanks, that's very kind .... you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with **in/of/with** etc.

1 I'm not interested ...in... sport.
2 I'm not very good .... sport.
3 I like Sarah. She's always very kind .... me.
4 I'm sorry .... your broken window. It was an accident.
5 He's very brave. He isn't scared .... anything.
6 It was very nice .... Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7 Life today is very different .... life 50 years ago.
8 Are you interested .... politics?
9 I feel sorry .... her, but I can't help her.
10 Chris was angry .... what happened.
11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full .... books.
12 I'm sorry .... getting angry .... you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I'm not very ...good at telling... stories. (good/tell)
2 I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't .... (interested/go)
3 Sue isn't very .... up in the morning. (good/get)
4 Let's go! I'm .... (fed up / wait)
5 I'm .... you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
6 Sorry I'm late! .... (thank you / wait)

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use **without -ing**.

1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) ...Tom left without saying goodbye....
2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
Sue walked ....
3 (Don't do anything / ask me first)
Don't ....
4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
I ....

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (interested) ...I'm interested in sport....
2 (scared) I'm ....
3 (not very good) I'm not ....
4 (not interested) ....
5 (fed up) ....

listen to … , look at … etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) **for** …	☐ Don't **ask** me **for** money. I don't have any.
belong to …	☐ This house doesn't **belong to** me. (= it's not mine)
happen to …	☐ I can't find my phone. What's **happened to** it?
listen to …	☐ **Listen to** this music. It's great.
talk to somebody (**about** …)	☐ Did you **talk to** Paul **about** the problem?
speak to somebody (**about** …)	☐ I'd like to **speak to** the manager, please.
thank somebody **for** …	☐ **Thank** you very much **for** your help.
think about … *or* **think of** …	☐ He never **thinks about** (*or* **of**) other people. ☐ Mark is **thinking of** (*or* **about**) buying a car.
wait for …	☐ **Wait for** me. I'm nearly ready.

Note that we say **call**/**phone**/**text**/**email** somebody (no preposition):

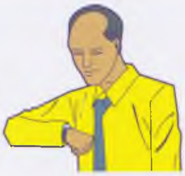
☐ I have to **phone my parents** today.
(*not* phone to my parents)

☐ Shall I **text you** or **email you**?

B

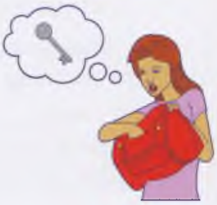
look at / **look for** / **look after**

look at …



☐ He's **looking at** his watch.
☐ **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.
☐ Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for …
(= try to find)



☐ She's lost her key. She's **looking for** it.
☐ I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after …
(= take care of, keep safe)

☐ When Emily is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her children.
☐ Don't lose this book. **Look after** it.
(= Keep it safe.)

C

depend

We say **depend on** … :

☐ A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not* it depends of)

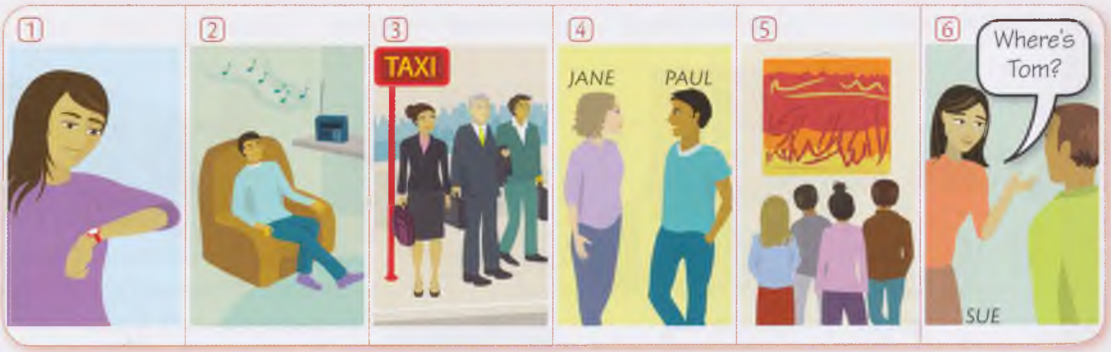
You can say **it depends what**/**where**/**how** (etc.) with or without **on**:

☐ A: Do you want to come out with us?
B: It **depends where** you're going. *or* It **depends on where** you're going.

wait ➔ **Unit 54** preposition + **-ing** ➔ **Unit 112**

Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **to/for/at** etc.



1 She's looking ...at... her watch.
2 He's listening ...... the radio.
3 They're waiting ...... a taxi.
4 Paul is talking ...... Jane.
5 They're looking ...... a picture.
6 Sue is looking ...... Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with **to/for/about** etc. Two sentences are already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Thank you very much ...for... your help.
2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs ...... a friend of mine.
3 I saw Steve, but I didn't speak ...... him.
4 Don't forget to phone ...... your mother tonight.
5 Thank you ...... the present. It was lovely.
6 What happened ...... Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
7 We're thinking ...... going to Australia next year.
8 We asked the waiter ...... coffee, but he brought us tea.
9 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends ...... the book.'
10 John was talking, but nobody was listening ...... what he was saying.
11 We waited ...... Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
12 I texted ...... Lisa to tell her I would be late.
13 He's alone all day. He never talks ...... anybody.
14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends ...... the type of room.'
15 Catherine is thinking ...... changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use **at/for/after**.

1 I looked ...... the letter, but I didn't read it carefully.
2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look ...... you.
3 Excuse me, I'm looking ...... Hill Street. Is it near here?
4 Bye! Have a great holiday and look ...... yourself.
5 I want to take a picture of you. Please look ...... the camera and smile.
6 Ben is looking ...... a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with **It depends ...** .

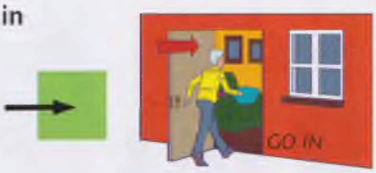
1	Do you want to go out with us?	It depends where you're going.
2	Do you like eating in restaurants?	It depends on the restaurant.
3	Do you enjoy watching TV?	It depends ......
4	Can you do something for me?	It ......
5	Are you going away this weekend?	......
6	Can you lend me some money?	......

Unit
114

go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

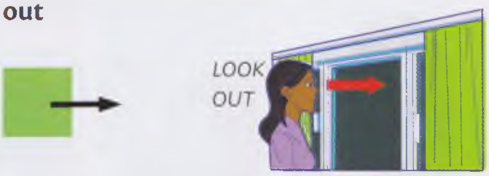
A *phrasal verb* is a verb (**go**/**look**/**be** etc.) + **in**/**out**/**up**/**down** etc.

in



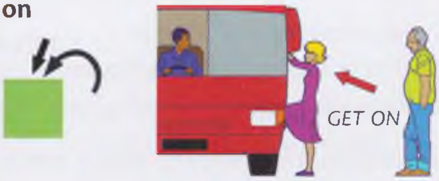
☐ I waited outside the shop. I didn't **go in**.
☐ Sarah opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= **into** the car)

out



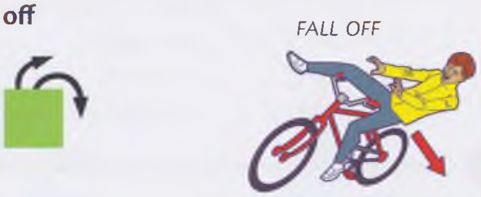
☐ I went to the window and **looked out**.
☐ The car stopped and a woman **got out**. (= **out of** the car)

on



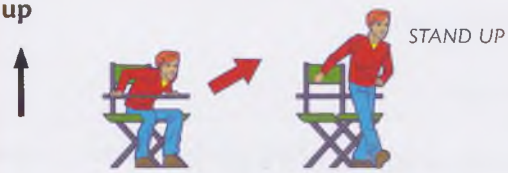
☐ The bus came, and I **got on**.

off



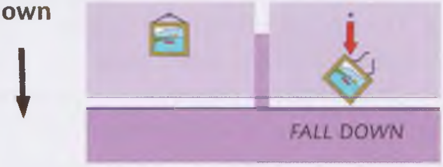
☐ Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

up



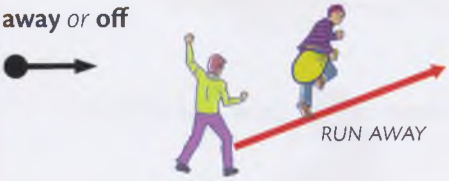
☐ He **stood up** and left the room.
☐ I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
☐ We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

down



☐ The picture **fell down**.
☐ Would you like to **sit down**?
☐ **Lie down** on the floor.

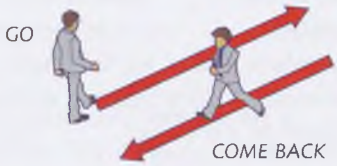
away *or* **off**



☐ The thief **ran away**. (*or* ... **ran off**)
☐ Emma got into the car and **drove away**. (*or* ... **drove off**)

be/go away (= in/to another place)
☐ Tom has **gone away** for a few days.

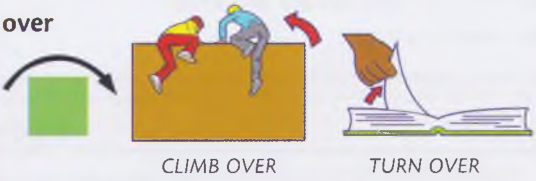
back



☐ Go away and don't **come back**!
☐ We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

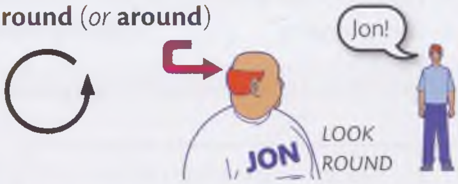
be back
☐ Tom is away. He'll **be back** on Monday.

over



☐ The wall wasn't very high, so we **climbed over**.
☐ **Turn over** and look at the next page.

round (*or* **around**)



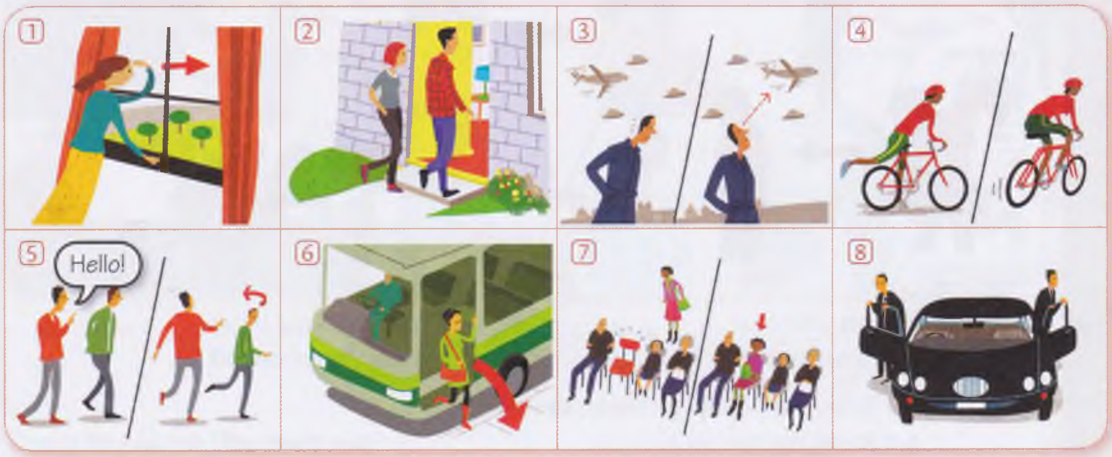
☐ Somebody shouted my name, so I **looked round** (*or* **around**).
☐ We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned round** (*or* **around**) and went back.

get ➔ Unit 56 **put on** / **take off** etc. (phrasal verbs 2) ➔ Unit 115 more phrasal verbs ➔ Appendix 6

Exercises

114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + **in/out/up** etc.

got got ~~looked~~ looked rode sat turned went



1 I went to the window and looked out.
2 The door was open, so we ....
3 He heard a plane, so he ....
4 She got on her bike and ....
5 I said hello, and he ....
6 The bus stopped, and she ....
7 There was a free seat, so she ....
8 A car stopped, and two men ....

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use **out/away/back** etc.

1 'What happened to the picture on the wall?' 'It fell down.'
2 Wait a minute. Don't go .... I want to ask you something.
3 Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked .... to see what it was.
4 I'm going .... now to do some shopping. I'll be .... at 5 o'clock.
5 I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie .... on the sofa.
6 When you have read this page, turn .... and read the other side.
7 Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go .... to Canada.
8 We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't get ....
9 I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get ....
10 A: When are you going .... ?
B: On the 5th. And I'm coming .... on the 24th.

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250). Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + **on/off/up** etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break fall give hold speak ~~wake~~
carry get go slow take

+ on/off/up/down/over

1 I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and woke up at 8 o'clock the next morning.
2 'It's time to go.' '........................ a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
3 The train .... and finally stopped.
4 I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane ....
5 How are your children? How are they .... at school?
6 It's difficult to hear you. Can you .... a little?
7 This car isn't very good. It has .... many times.
8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes ....
9 The hotel isn't far from here. If you .... along this road, you'll see it on the left.
10 I tried to find a job, but I .... It was impossible.
11 The fire alarm .... and everyone had to leave the building.

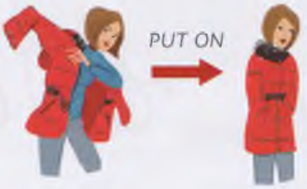
Unit 115

put on your shoes **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

A

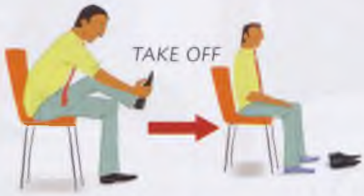
Sometimes a phrasal verb (**put on** / **take off** etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb *object*
put on your coat



You can say:
put on your coat
or **put** your coat **on**

verb *object*
take off your shoes



You can say:
take off your shoes
or **take** your shoes **off**

But **it**/**them** (*pronouns*) always go before **on**/**off** etc. :

put **it on** (*not* put on it)

take **them off** (*not* take off them)

☐ It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.
or … I **put** my coat **on**.
☐ Here's your coat. **Put it on**.

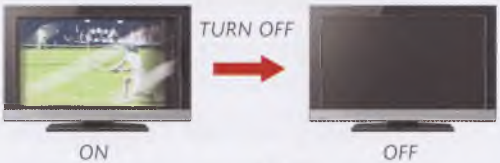
☐ I'm going to **take off** my shoes.
or … **take** my shoes **off**.
☐ Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

B

Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

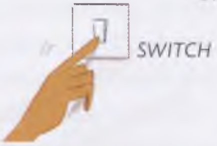
turn on / **turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):

☐ It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.
or … I **turned** the light **on**.
☐ I don't want to watch this programme.
You can **turn it off**.



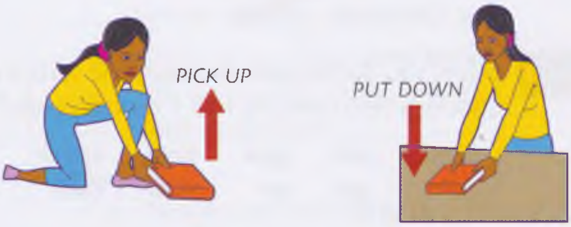
also **switch on** / **switch off** (lights, machines etc.):

☐ I **switched on** the light and **switched off** the television.



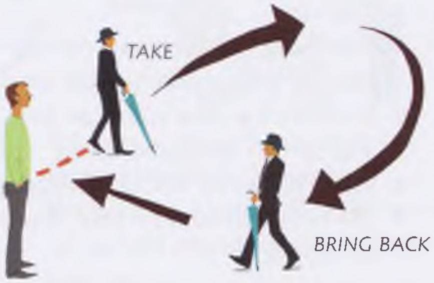
pick up / **put down**:

☐ Those are my keys on the floor.
Can you **pick them up** for me?
☐ I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**.
or … **put down** my book.



bring back / **take back** / **give back** / **put back**:

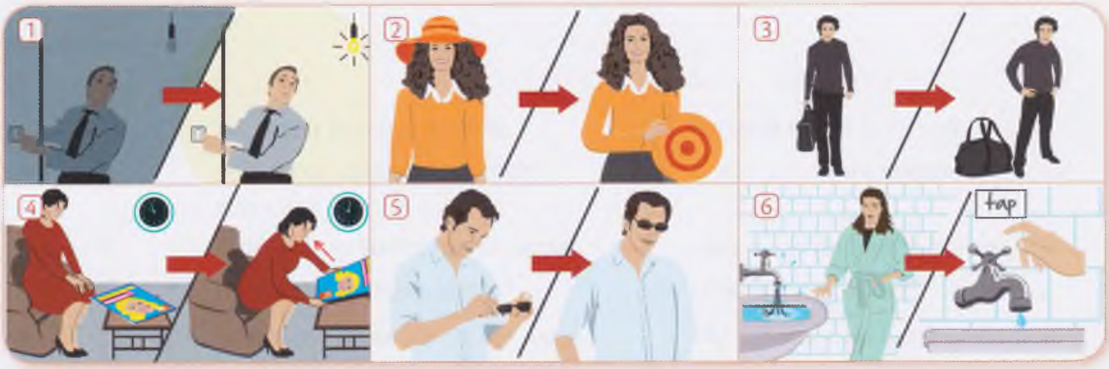
☐ You can take my umbrella, but please **bring it back**.
☐ I **took** my new sweater **back** to the shop. It was too small for me.
☐ I've got Rachel's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
☐ I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.



go in / **fall off** etc. (phrasal verbs 1) ➔ **Unit 114** more phrasal verbs + object ➔ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



1 He turned on the light.
2 She ....
3 He ....
4 She ....
5 He ....
6 She ....

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned on the radio.	I turned the radio on.	I turned it on.
2	He put on his jacket.	He	He ....
3	She	She took her glasses off.	....
4	I picked up the phone.	....	....
5	They gave back the key.	....	....
6	....	We turned the lights off.	....

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with **it** or **them**.

bring back **pick up** **switch off** **take back** ~~**turn on**~~

1 I wanted to watch something on TV, so I turned it on .
2 My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to .... to the shop.
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I .... and put them on the table.
4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I ....
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to ....

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use **it/them/me**.

fill in ~~**knock down**~~ **look up** **show round** ~~**turn down**~~
give up **knock over** **put out** **throw away** **try on**

1 They knocked a lot of houses down when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down ?
3 I .... a glass and broke it.
4 'What does this word mean?' 'Why don't you .... ?'
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don't ....
6 I .... a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them.
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers ....
8 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I .... after a month.'
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ....
10 Smoking isn't allowed here. Please .... your cigarette ....

Appendix 1
Active and passive

1.1 Present and past

	active	*passive*
present simple	○ We **make** butter from milk.	○ Butter **is made** from milk.
	○ Somebody **cleans** these rooms every day.	○ These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
	○ People never **invite** me to parties.	○ I **am** never **invited** to parties.
	○ How **do** they **make** butter?	○ How **is** butter **made**?
past simple	○ Somebody **stole** my car last week.	○ My car **was stolen** last week.
	○ Somebody **stole** my keys yesterday.	○ My keys **were stolen** yesterday.
	○ They **didn't invite** me to the party.	○ I **wasn't invited** to the party.
	○ When **did** they **build** these houses?	○ When **were** these houses **built**?
present continuous	○ They **are building** a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished)	○ A new airport **is being built** at the moment.
	○ They **are building** some new houses near the river.	○ Some new houses **are being built** near the river.
past continuous	○ When I was here a few years ago, they **were building** a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	○ When I was here a few years ago, a new airport **was being built**.
present perfect	○ Look! They **have painted** the door.	○ Look! The door **has been painted**.
	○ These shirts are clean. Somebody **has washed** them.	○ These shirts are clean. They **have been washed**.
	○ Somebody **has stolen** my car.	○ My car **has been stolen**.
past perfect	○ Tina said that somebody **had stolen** her car.	○ Tina said that her car **had been stolen**.

1.2 **will** / **can** / **must** / **have to** etc.

active	*passive*
○ Somebody **will clean** the office tomorrow.	○ The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.
○ Somebody **must clean** the office.	○ The office **must be cleaned**.
○ I think they**'ll invite** you to the party.	○ I think you**'ll be invited** to the party.
○ They **can't repair** my watch.	○ My watch **can't be repaired**.
○ You **should wash** this sweater by hand.	○ This sweater **should be washed** by hand.
○ They **are going to build** a new airport.	○ A new airport **is going to be built**.
○ Somebody **has to wash** these clothes.	○ These clothes **have to be washed**.
○ They **had to take** the injured man to hospital.	○ The injured man **had to be taken** to hospital.

Appendix 2

List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle*
be	**was/were**	**been**
beat	**beat**	**beaten**
become	**became**	**become**
begin	**began**	**begun**
bite	**bit**	**bitten**
blow	**blew**	**blown**
break	**broke**	**broken**
bring	**brought**	**brought**
build	**built**	**built**
buy	**bought**	**bought**
catch	**caught**	**caught**
choose	**chose**	**chosen**
come	**came**	**come**
cost	**cost**	**cost**
cut	**cut**	**cut**
do	**did**	**done**
draw	**drew**	**drawn**
drink	**drank**	**drunk**
drive	**drove**	**driven**
eat	**ate**	**eaten**
fall	**fell**	**fallen**
feel	**felt**	**felt**
fight	**fought**	**fought**
find	**found**	**found**
fly	**flew**	**flown**
forget	**forgot**	**forgotten**
get	**got**	**got**
give	**gave**	**given**
go	**went**	**gone**
grow	**grew**	**grown**
hang	**hung**	**hung**
have	**had**	**had**
hear	**heard**	**heard**
hide	**hid**	**hidden**
hit	**hit**	**hit**
hold	**held**	**held**
hurt	**hurt**	**hurt**
keep	**kept**	**kept**
know	**knew**	**known**
leave	**left**	**left**
lend	**lent**	**lent**

infinitive	*past simple*	*past participle*
let	**let**	**let**
lie	**lay**	**lain**
light	**lit**	**lit**
lose	**lost**	**lost**
make	**made**	**made**
mean	**meant**	**meant**
meet	**met**	**met**
pay	**paid**	**paid**
put	**put**	**put**
read (reed)*	**read** (red)*	**read** (red)*
ride	**rode**	**ridden**
ring	**rang**	**rung**
rise	**rose**	**risen**
run	**ran**	**run**
say	**said**	**said**
see	**saw**	**seen**
sell	**sold**	**sold**
send	**sent**	**sent**
shine	**shone**	**shone**
shoot	**shot**	**shot**
show	**showed**	**shown**
shut	**shut**	**shut**
sing	**sang**	**sung**
sit	**sat**	**sat**
sleep	**slept**	**slept**
speak	**spoke**	**spoken**
spend	**spent**	**spent**
stand	**stood**	**stood**
steal	**stole**	**stolen**
swim	**swam**	**swum**
take	**took**	**taken**
teach	**taught**	**taught**
tear	**tore**	**torn**
tell	**told**	**told**
think	**thought**	**thought**
throw	**threw**	**thrown**
understand	**understood**	**understood**
wake	**woke**	**woken**
wear	**wore**	**worn**
win	**won**	**won**
write	**wrote**	**written**

* *pronunciation*

Some verbs can be regular (**-ed**) *or* irregular (**-t**):

infinitive	*past simple / past participle*
burn	**burned** *or* **burnt**
dream	**dreamed** *or* **dreamt**

infinitive	*past simple / past participle*
learn	**learned** *or* **learnt**
smell	**smelled** *or* **smelt**

Appendix 3
Irregular verbs in groups

The past simple and past participle are the same:

1

cost → **cost**
cut → **cut**
hit → **hit**
hurt → **hurt**

let → **let**
put → **put**
shut → **shut**

2

lend → **lent**
send → **sent**
spend → **spent**
build → **built**

lose → **lost**
shoot → **shot**
get → **got**
light → **lit**
sit → **sat**

burn → **burnt**
learn → **learnt**
smell → **smelt**

keep → **kept**
sleep → **slept**

feel → **felt**
leave → **left**
meet → **met**
dream → **dreamt** (dremt)*
mean → **meant** (ment)*

3

bring → **brought** (brort)*
buy → **bought** (bort)*
fight → **fought** (fort)*
think → **thought** (thort)*

catch → **caught** (kort)*
teach → **taught** (tort)*

4

sell → **sold**
tell → **told**

find → **found**
have → **had**
hear → **heard**
hold → **held**
read → **read** (red)*
say → **said** (sed)*

pay → **paid**
make → **made**

stand → **stood**
understand → **understood**

* *pronunciation*

The past simple and past participle are different:

1

break → **broke** **broken**
choose → **chose** **chosen**
speak → **spoke** **spoken**
steal → **stole** **stolen**
wake → **woke** **woken**

2

drive → **drove** **driven**
ride → **rode** **ridden**
rise → **rose** **risen**
write → **wrote** **written**

beat → **beat** **beaten**
bite → **bit** **bitten**
hide → **hid** **hidden**

3

eat → **ate** **eaten**
fall → **fell** **fallen**
forget → **forgot** **forgotten**
give → **gave** **given**
see → **saw** **seen**
take → **took** **taken**

4

blow → **blew** **blown**
grow → **grew** **grown**
know → **knew** **known**
throw → **threw** **thrown**
fly → **flew** **flown**
draw → **drew** **drawn**
show → **showed** **shown**

5

begin → **began** **begun**
drink → **drank** **drunk**
swim → **swam** **swum**

ring → **rang** **rung**
sing → **sang** **sung**

run → **ran** **run**

6

come → **came** **come**
become → **became** **become**

Appendix 4

Short forms (**he's / I'd / don't** etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce '**I am**' as one word. The short form (**I'm**) is a way of writing this:

I am	→	**I'm**
it is	→	**it's**
they have	→	**they've**
		etc.

○ **I'm** feeling tired this morning.
○ 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, **it's** nice.'
○ 'Where are your friends?' '**They've** gone home.'

When we write short forms, we use ' (*an apostrophe*):

I ~~a~~m → I'**m** he ~~i~~s → he'**s** you ~~ha~~ve → you'**ve** she ~~wi~~ll → she'**ll**

4.2 We use these forms with **I/he/she** etc. :

am	→	**'m**	**I'm**						
is	→	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
are	→	**'re**					**we're**	**you're**	**they're**
have	→	**'ve**	**I've**				**we've**	**you've**	**they've**
has	→	**'s**		**he's**	**she's**	**it's**			
had	→	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**
will	→	**'ll**	**I'll**	**he'll**	**she'll**		**we'll**	**you'll**	**they'll**
would	→	**'d**	**I'd**	**he'd**	**she'd**		**we'd**	**you'd**	**they'd**

○ I**'ve** got some new shoes.
○ We**'ll** probably go out this evening.
○ It**'s** 10 o'clock. You**'re** late again.

's = **is** *or* **has**:

○ She**'s** going out this evening. (she**'s** going = she **is** going)
○ She**'s** gone out. (she**'s** gone = she **has** gone)

'd = **would** *or* **had**:

○ A: What would you like to eat?
B: I**'d** like a salad, please. (I**'d** like = I **would** like)
○ I told the police that I**'d** lost my passport. (I**'d** lost = I **had** lost)

Do not use **'m**/**'s**/**'d** etc. at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):

○ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (*not* Yes, I'm.)
○ She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* he's)

4.3 We use short forms with **I**/**you**/**he**/**she** etc., but you can use short forms (especially **'s**) with other words too:

○ **Who's** your favourite singer? (= who **is**)
○ **What's** the time? (= what **is**)
○ **There's** a big tree in the garden. (= there **is**)
○ **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister **is** working)
○ **Paul's** gone out. (= Paul **has** gone out)
○ **What colour's** your car? (= What colour **is** your car?)

4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

isn't (= is not)
aren't (= are not)
wasn't (= was not)
weren't (= were not)
hasn't (= has not)
haven't (= have not)
hadn't (= had not)

don't (= do not)
doesn't (= does not)
didn't (= did not)

can't (= cannot)
couldn't (= could not)
won't (= will not)
wouldn't (= would not)
shouldn't (= should not)
mustn't (= must not)

- We went to her house, but she **wasn't** at home.
- 'Where's David?' 'I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.'
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 **'s** (*apostrophe* + **s**)

's can mean different things:

(1) **'s** = **is** *or* **has** (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)

- It**'s** raining. (= It **is** raining)
- It**'s** stopped raining. (= It **has** stopped)

(2) let's = let **us** (→ Units 35, 53)

- It's a lovely day. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)

(3) Kate**'s** camera = her camera
my brother**'s** car = his car
the manager**'s** office = his/her office etc.
(→ Unit 64)

Compare:

- **Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- **Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = Kate **is**)
- **Kate's** got a new camera. (Kate**'s** got = Kate **has** got)

Appendix 5
Spelling

5.1 Words + **-s** and **-es** (bird**s**/watch**es** etc.)

noun + **s** (plural) (→ Unit 66)
bird → bird**s**　　mistake → mistake**s**　　hotel → hotel**s**

verb + **s** (he/she/it **-s**) (→ Unit 5)
think → think**s**　　live → live**s**　　remember → remember**s**

but

+ **es** after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x**
bu**s** → bus**es**　　pa**s**s → pass**es**　　addre**ss** → address**es**
di**sh** → dish**es**　　wa**sh** → wash**es**　　fini**sh** → finish**es**
wat**ch** → watch**es**　　tea**ch** → teach**es**　　sandwi**ch** → sandwich**es**
bo**x** → box**es**

also
potato → potato**es**　　tomato → tomato**es**
do → do**es**　　go → go**es**

-f / **-fe** → **-ves**
shel**f** → shel**ves**　　kni**fe** → kni**ves**　　*but* roof → roof**s**

5.2 Words ending in **-y** (bab**y** → bab**ies** / stud**y** → stud**ied** etc.)

-y → **-ies**
stud**y** → stud**ies** (*not* studys)　　famil**y** → famil**ies** (*not* familys)
stor**y** → stor**ies**　　cit**y** → cit**ies**　　bab**y** → bab**ies**
tr**y** → tr**ies**　　marr**y** → marr**ies**　　fl**y** → fl**ies**

-y → **-ied** (→ Unit 11)
stud**y** → stud**ied** (*not* studyed)
tr**y** → tr**ied**　　marr**y** → marr**ied**　　cop**y** → cop**ied**

-y → **-ier**/**-iest** (→ Units 87, 90)
eas**y** → eas**ier**/eas**iest** (*not* easyer/easyest)
happ**y** → happ**ier**/happ**iest**　　luck**y** → luck**ier**/luck**iest**
heav**y** → heav**ier**/heav**iest**　　funn**y** → funn**ier**/funn**iest**

-y → **-ily** (→ Unit 86)
eas**y** → eas**ily** (*not* easyly)
happ**y** → happ**ily**　　heav**y** → heav**ily**　　luck**y** → luck**ily**

y does not change to **i** if the ending is **-ay**/**-ey**/**-oy**/**-uy**:
holid**ay** → holid**ays** (*not* holidaies)
enj**oy** → enj**oys**/enj**oyed**　　st**ay** → st**ays**/st**ayed**　　b**uy** → b**uys**　　k**ey** → k**eys**

but
say → **said**　　**pay** → **paid**　　(*irregular verbs*)

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in **-e** (mak**e**/writ**e**/driv**e** etc.) → **-~~e~~ing**:

mak**e** → mak**ing**   writ**e** → writ**ing**   com**e** → com**ing**   danc**e** → danc**ing**

Verbs that end in **-ie** → **-ying**:

l**ie** → l**ying**   d**ie** → d**ying**   t**ie** → t**ying**

5.4 sto**p** → sto**pp**ed, bi**g** → bi**gg**er etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters:	a	e	i	o	u										
Consonant letters:	b	c	d	f	g	k	l	m	n	p	r	s	t	w	y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: st**op**, b**ig**, g**et**.
Before **-ing**/**-ed**/**-er**/**-est**, **p**/**g**/**t** etc. become **pp**/**gg**/**tt** etc.

For example:

		V+C				
stop	ST	**O**	**P**	p → **pp**	sto**pp**ing	sto**pp**ed
run	R	**U**	**N**	n → **nn**	ru**nn**ing	
get	G	**E**	**T**	t → **tt**	ge**tt**ing	
swim	SW	**I**	**M**	m → **mm**	swi**mm**ing	
big	B	**I**	**G**	g → **gg**	bi**gg**er	bi**gg**est
hot	H	**O**	**T**	t → **tt**	ho**tt**er	ho**tt**est
thin	TH	**I**	**N**	n → **nn**	thi**nn**er	thi**nn**est

V = *vowel*
C = *consonant*

This does *not* happen
(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

		C+C			
help	HE	**L**	**P**	hel**p**ing	hel**p**ed
work	WO	**R**	**K**	wor**k**ing	wor**k**ed
fast	FA	**S**	**T**	fas**t**er	fas**t**est

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

		V+V+C				
need	N	**E**	**E**	**D**	nee**d**ing	nee**d**ed
wait	W	**A**	**I**	**T**	wai**t**ing	wai**t**ed
cheap	CH	**E**	**A**	**P**	chea**p**er	chea**p**est

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

	stress		
happen	**HAP**-pen	→	happe**n**ing/happe**n**ed (*not* happenned)
visit	**VIS**-it	→	visi**t**ing/visi**t**ed
remember	re-**MEM**-ber	→	remembe**r**ing/remembe**r**ed

but

prefer	pre-**FER**	(*stress at the end*)	→ prefe**rr**ing/prefe**rr**ed
begin	be-**GIN**	(*stress at the end*)	→ begi**nn**ing

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.)

enjo**y** → enjo**y**ing/enjo**y**ed   sno**w** → sno**w**ing/sno**w**ed   fe**w** → fe**w**er/fe**w**est

Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (**take off** / **give up** etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

on

carry on = *continue*

☐ Don't stop working. **Carry on**. (= continue working)

☐ A: Excuse me, where is the station?
B: **Carry on** along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)

also **go on** / **walk on** / **drive on** etc. = *continue going/walking/driving* etc.

☐ Don't stop here. **Drive on**.

come on = *be quick*

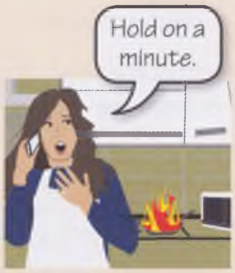
☐ **Come on**! Everybody is waiting for you.

get on = *manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)*

☐ How was your exam? How did you **get on**?
(= how did you do?)

hold on = *wait*

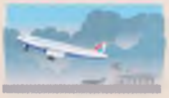
☐ Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)


Hold on a minute.

off

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*

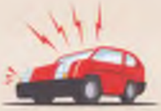
☐ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.


TAKE OFF

go off = *explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)*

☐ A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.

☐ A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.


GO OFF

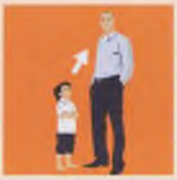
up

give up = *stop trying*

☐ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**.
(= don't stop trying)

grow up = *become an adult*

☐ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?


GROW UP

hurry up = *do something more quickly*

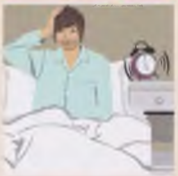
☐ **Hurry up**! We haven't got much time.

speak up = *speak more loudly*

☐ I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

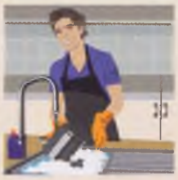
wake up = *stop sleeping*

☐ I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.


WAKE UP

wash up = *wash the plates etc. after a meal*

☐ Do you want me to **wash up**?
(*or* ... to do the washing-up?)


WASH UP

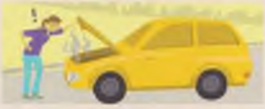
down

slow down = *go more slowly*

☐ You're driving too fast. **Slow down**!

break down = *stop working (for cars, machines etc.)*

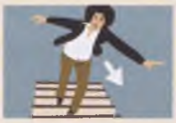
☐ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.


BREAK DOWN

over

fall over = *lose your balance*

☐ I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.


FALL OVER

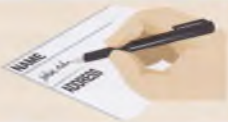
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **give up** your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

in/out

fill in / **fill out** a form = *complete a form*

☐ Can you **fill in this form**, please? *or*
Can you **fill out this form**, please?



out

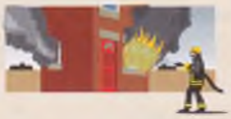
put out a fire, a cigarette etc.

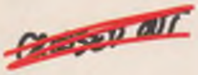
☐ The fire brigade arrived and **put the fire out**.

cross out a mistake, a word etc.

☐ If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.

PUT OUT




~~Crossed out~~

CROSS OUT

on

try on clothes = *put on clothes to see if they fit you*

☐ *(in a shop)* This is a nice jacket. Shall I **try it on**?

up

give up something = *stop doing it*

☐ Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)

☐ 'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I **gave it up**.'

look up a word in a dictionary etc.

☐ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = *make it louder or warmer*

☐ Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping

☐ I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6.30?

down

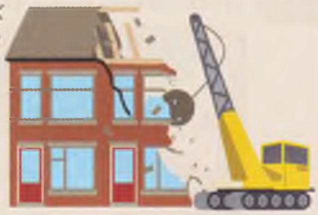
knock down a building = *demolish it*

☐ They are going to **knock down** the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc.
= *make it more quiet or less warm*

☐ The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

KNOCK DOWN

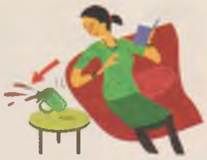


over

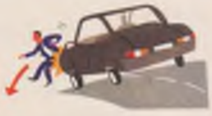
knock over a cup, a glass, a person etc.

☐ Be careful. Don't **knock your cup over**.

☐ There was an accident at the end of the road.
A man was **knocked over** by a car.
(*or* A man was **knocked down** by a car.)



KNOCK OVER



KNOCK OVER or KNOCK DOWN

away

throw away rubbish, things you don't want

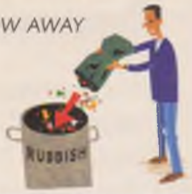
☐ These apples are bad. Shall I **throw them away**?

☐ Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.

put something **away** = *put it in the place where you usually keep it*

☐ After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

THROW AWAY



back

pay somebody **back** = *give back money that you borrowed*

☐ Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

round/around

show somebody **round/around** = *take somebody on a tour of a place*

☐ We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us round**.

Additional exercises

List of exercises:

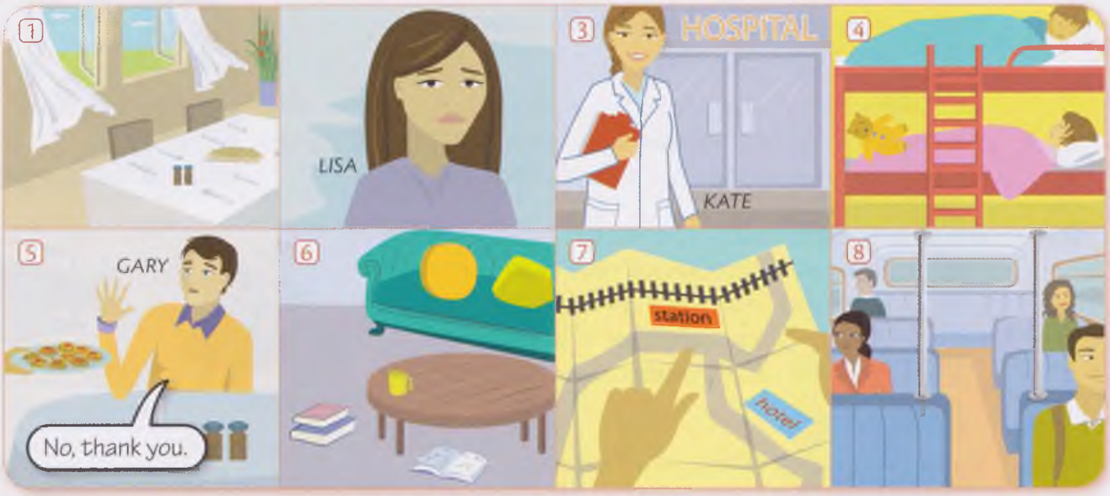
1–2	**am/is/are**	Units 1–2
3	present continuous	Units 3–4
4	present simple	Units 5–7
5–7	present simple, **am/is/are** and **have** (**got**)	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9	present continuous and present simple	Units 3–8
10–13	**was**/**were** and past simple	Units 10–12
14	past simple and past continuous	Units 11–14
15	present and past	Units 3–14
16–18	present perfect	Units 15–19
19–22	present perfect and past simple	Units 18–20
23	present, past and present perfect	Units 3–20
24–27	passive	Units 21–22
28	future	Units 25–28
29	past, present and future	Units 3–20, 25–28
30–31	past, present and future	Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105
32	**-ing** and **to** …	Units 51–55,105,112
33–34	**a** and **the**	Units 65, 69–73
35	prepositions	Units 103–108,111

---

am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/isn't/are/aren't**.



~~The windows~~
~~Lisa~~
Kate
The children
Gary
The books
The hotel
The bus

on the table
hungry
asleep
~~open~~
full
near the station
a doctor
~~happy~~

1 The windows are open.
2 Lisa isn't happy.
3 Kate ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

2 Complete the sentences.

1 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but ....I'm.... thirsty.'
2 '....How are.... your parents?' 'They're fine.'
3 'Is Anna at home?' 'No, ... at work.'
4 '........................ my keys?' 'On your desk.'
5 Where is Paul from? .... American or British?
6 .... very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, ... a student.'
8 '........................ your umbrella?' 'Green.'
9 Where's your car? .... in the car park?
10 '........................ tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
11 'These shoes are nice. How ....?' 'Sixty pounds.'

present continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.)

Units 3–4

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.

1 A: Where are your parents?
B: ....They're watching TV.... (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Paula is going out.
B: ....Where's she going?.... (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where's David?
B: .... (he / have / a shower)
4 A: ....? (the children / play?)
B: No, they're asleep.
5 A: ....? (it / rain?)
B: No, not at the moment.
6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
B: .... (they / come / now)
7 A: ....? (why / you / stand / here?)
B: .... (I / wait / for somebody)

present simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)

Units 5–7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.

1 ....Sue always gets.... to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2 ....We don't watch.... TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3 How often ....do you wash.... your hair? (you / wash)
4 I want to go to the cinema, but .... to go. (Sam / not / want)
5 .... to go out tonight? (you / want)
6 .... near here? (Helen / live)
7 .... a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8 I enjoy travelling, but .... very much. (I / not / travel)
9 What time .... in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
.... very often. (they / not / go out)
11 .... work at five o'clock. (Tom / always / finish)
12 A: What ....? (Jessica / do)
B: .... in a hotel. (she / work)

present simple, am/is/are and have (got)

Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Clare's answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

1	Are you married?	No.
2	Do you live in London?	Yes.
3	Are you a student?	Yes.
4	Have you got a car?	No.
5	Do you go out a lot?	Yes.
6	Have you got a lot of friends?	Yes.
7	Do you like London?	No.
8	Do you like dancing?	Yes.
9	Are you interested in sport?	No.

Clare

1 She isn't married.
2 She lives in London.
3 ……………………
4 ……………………
5 ……………………
6 ……………………
7 ……………………
8 ……………………
9 ……………………

6 Complete the questions.

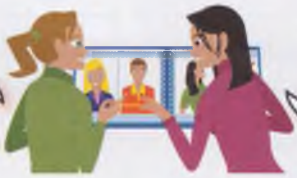
1
What's your name ?
…………………… married?
Where …………………… ?
…………………… any children?
How …………………… ?

Ben.
Yes, I am.
In Barton Road.
Yes, a daughter.
She's three.

2
…………………… ?
…………………… ?
…………………… your job?
…………………… a car?
…………………… to work by car?

I'm 29.
I work in a supermarket.
No, I hate it.
Yes, I have.
No, I usually go by bus.

3
Who is this man ?
…………………… ?
…………………… ?
…………………… in London?



That's my brother.
Michael.
He's a travel agent.
No, in Manchester.

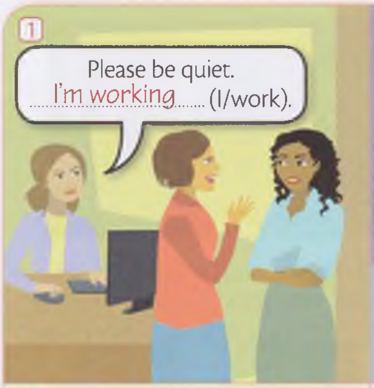
7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

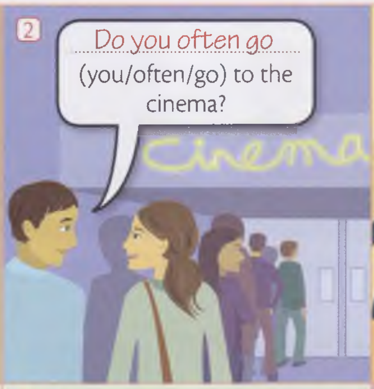
1	Sarah often / tennis	Sarah often plays tennis.
2	my parents / a new car	My parents have got a new car.
3	my shoes / dirty	My shoes are dirty.
4	Sonia / 32 years old	Sonia ……………………
5	I / two sisters	……………………
6	we often / TV in the evening	……………………
7	Amy never / a hat	……………………
8	a bicycle / two wheels	……………………
9	these flowers / beautiful	……………………
10	Emma / German very well	……………………

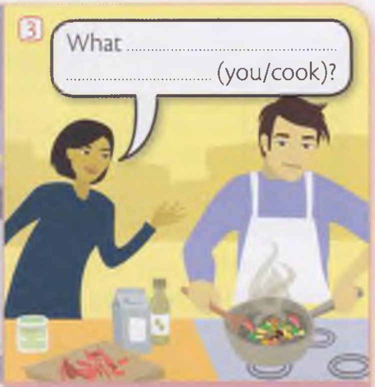
present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

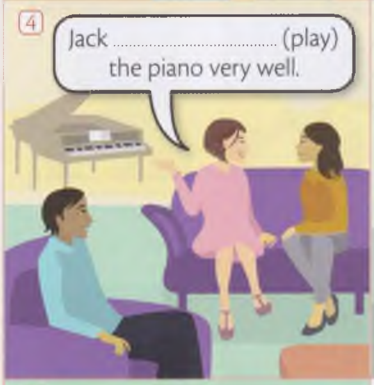
Units 3–8

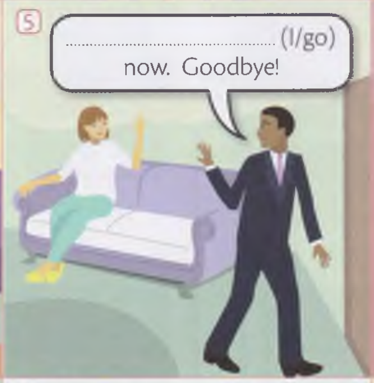
8 Complete the sentences.

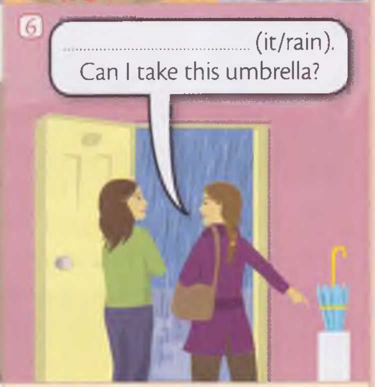

1
Please be quiet. I'm working .... (I/work).

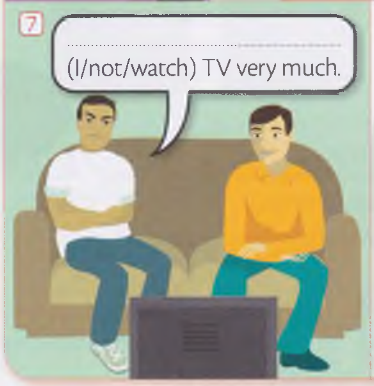

2
Do you often go .... (you/often/go) to the cinema?
Cinema

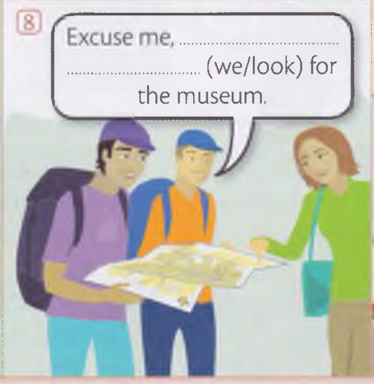

3
What .... (you/cook)?

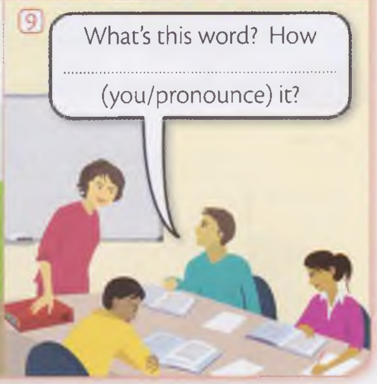

4
Jack .... (play) the piano very well.


5
.... (I/go) now. Goodbye!


6
.... (it/rain). Can I take this umbrella?


7
.... (I/not/watch) TV very much.


8
Excuse me, ... (we/look) for the museum.


9
What's this word? How .... (you/pronounce) it?

9 Which is right?

1 '~~Are you speaking~~ / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' (Do you speak *is right*)
2 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4 (*You meet Kate in the street.*) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5 How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8 'Where are Mark and Laura?' 'They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.'
9 Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10 What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11 Joe isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

Units 10–12

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1 I got up early and ....had.... a shower.
2 Tom was tired last night, so he .... to bed early.
3 I .... this key on the floor. Is it yours?
4 Kate got married when she .... 23.
5 Helen is learning to drive. She .... her first lesson yesterday.
6 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David .... me.'
7 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Amy .... it to me.'
8 We .... hungry, so we had something to eat.
9 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I .... it was very good.'
10 'Did Andy come to your party?' 'No, we .... him, but he didn't come.'

11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write sentences about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child ...

Were you tall?	No.	1	He wasn't tall.
Did you like school?	Yes.	2	He liked school.
Were you good at sport?	Yes.	3	He ....
Did you play football?	Yes.	4	....
Did you work hard at school?	No.	5	....
Did you have a lot of friends?	Yes.	6	....
Did you have a bike?	No.	7	....
Were you a quiet child?	No.	8	....

12 Complete the questions.

1	....Did you have.... a nice holiday?	Yes, it was great, thanks.
2	....Where did you go.... ?	To Amsterdam.
3	.... there?	Five days.
4	.... Amsterdam?	Yes, very much.
5	.... ?	I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
6	.... good?	Yes, it was warm and sunny.
7	.... back?	Yesterday.

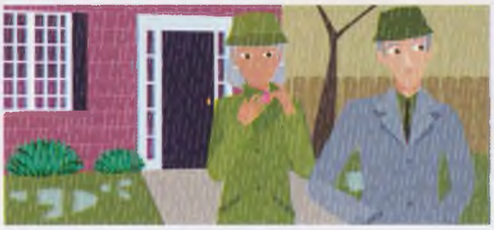
13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1 It was a good party. ....I enjoyed.... it. (I / enjoy)
2 '....Did you do.... the shopping?' (you / do) 'No, ...I didn't have.... time.' (I / have)
3 'Did you phone Adam?' 'No, I'm afraid ....' (I / forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where .... it? (you / get)
5 I saw Lucy at the party, but .... to her. (I / speak)
6 A: .... a nice weekend? (you / have)
B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
7 Paul wasn't well yesterday, so .... to work. (he / go)
8 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, ... five minutes ago.' (she / arrive)
9 Where .... before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10 The restaurant wasn't expensive. .... very much. (the meal / cost)

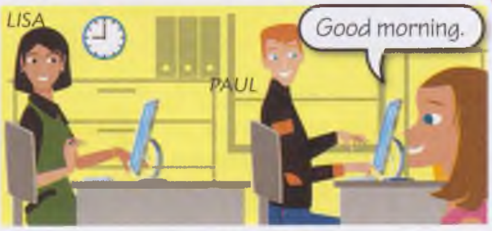
past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Units 11–14

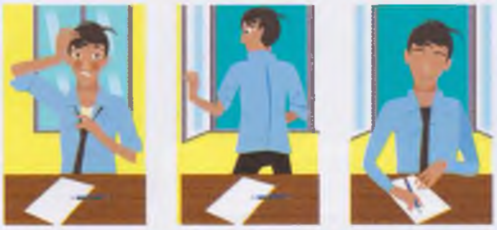
14 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

1


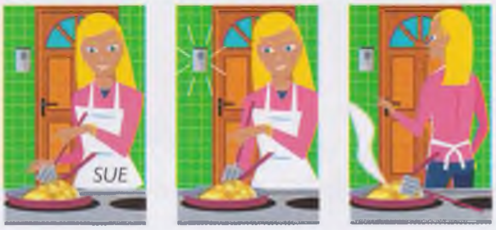
It ....was raining.... (rain) when we ....went.... (go) out.

2


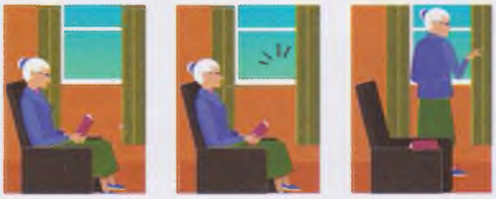
When I arrived at the office, Lisa and Paul .... (work) at their desks.

3


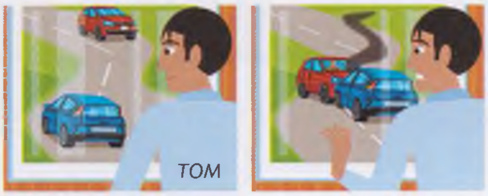
I .... (open) the window because it was hot.

4


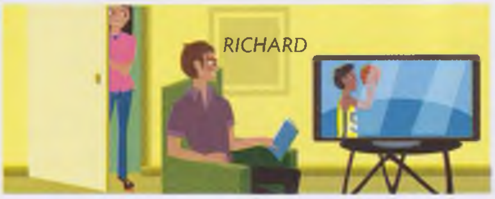
The doorbell .... (ring) when Sue .... (cook).

5


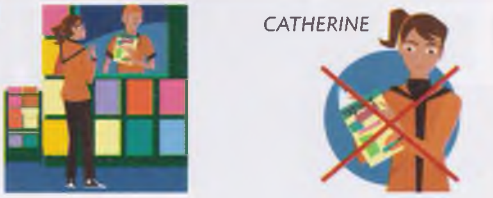
I .... (hear) a noise outside, so I .... (look) out of the window.

6


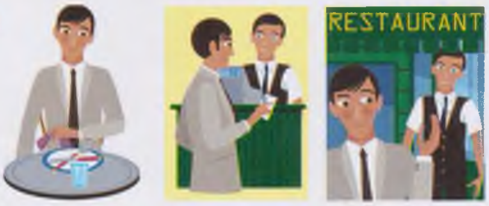
Tom .... (look) out of the window when the accident .... (happen).

7


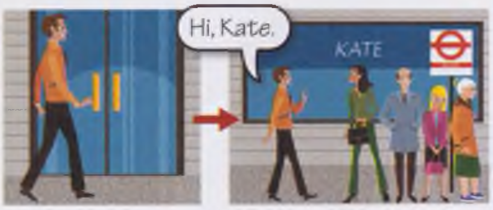
Richard had a book in his hand, but he .... (not/read) it. He .... (watch) TV.

8


Catherine bought a magazine, but she .... (not/read) it. She didn't have time.

9


I .... (finish) my meal, ... (pay) the bill and .... (leave) the restaurant.

10


I .... (see) Kate this morning. I .... (walk) along the street and she .... (wait) for the bus.

present and past

Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

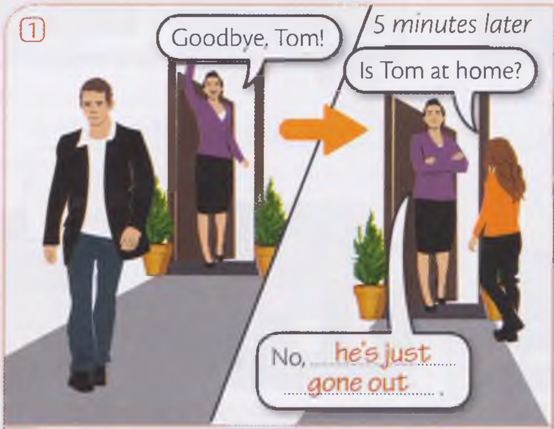
present simple (**I work/drive** etc.)
past simple (**I worked/drove** etc.)
present continuous (**I am working/driving** etc.)
past continuous (**I was working/driving** etc.)

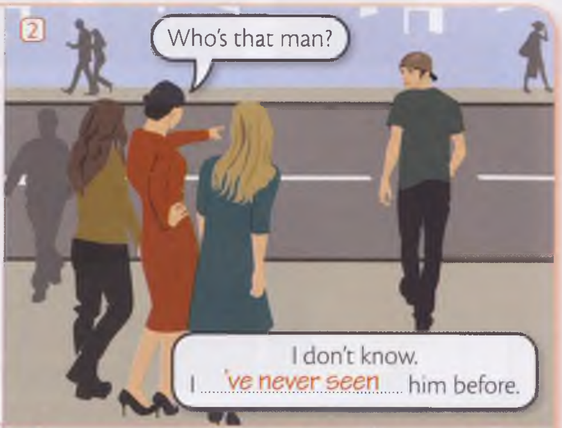
1 You can turn off the television. I 'm not watching (not/watch) it.
2 Last night Jenny fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read).
3 Listen! Somebody …………………… (play) the piano.
4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I …………………… (give) it back to you.'
5 David is very lazy. He …………………… (not/like) hard work.
6 Where …………………… (your parents / go) for their holidays last year?
7 I …………………… (see) Laura yesterday. She …………………… (drive) her new car.
8 A: …………………… (you/watch) TV much?
B: No, I haven't got a TV.
9 A: What …………………… (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?
B: I was in bed asleep.
10 Andy isn't at home very much. He …………………… (go) away a lot.
11 I …………………… (try) to find a job at the moment. It's not easy.
12 I'm tired this morning. I …………………… (not/sleep) very well last night.

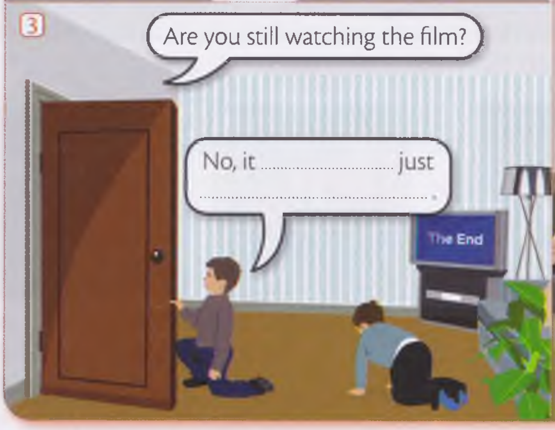
present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

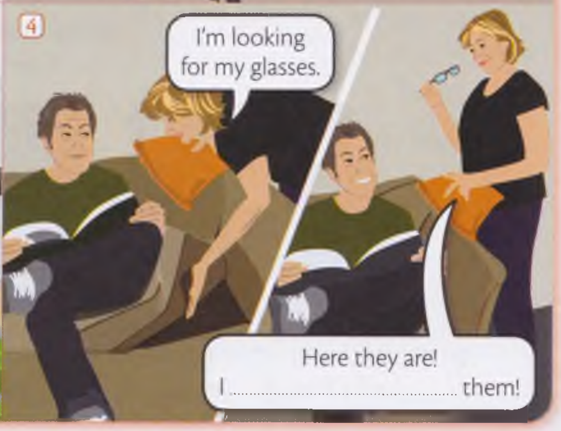
Units 15–19

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

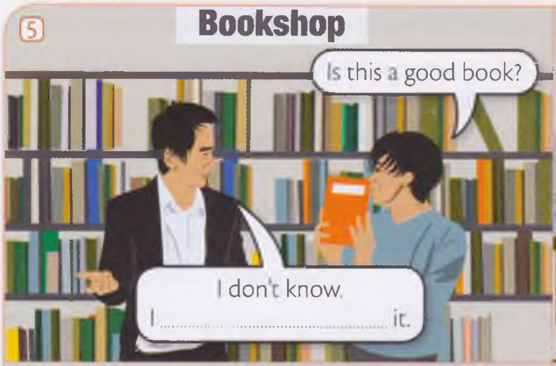

1
Goodbye, Tom!
5 minutes later
Is Tom at home?
No, he's just gone out.


2
Who's that man?
I don't know. I 've never seen him before.

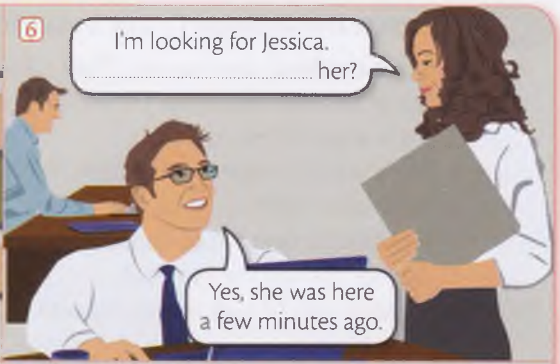

3
Are you still watching the film?
No, it …………… just …………… .
The End


4
I'm looking for my glasses.
Here they are! I …………… them!

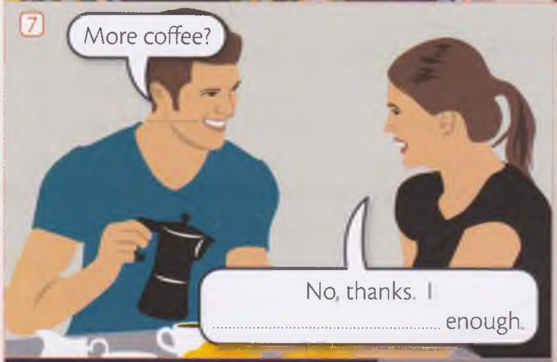
5


Bookshop
Is this a good book?
I don't know. I .... it.

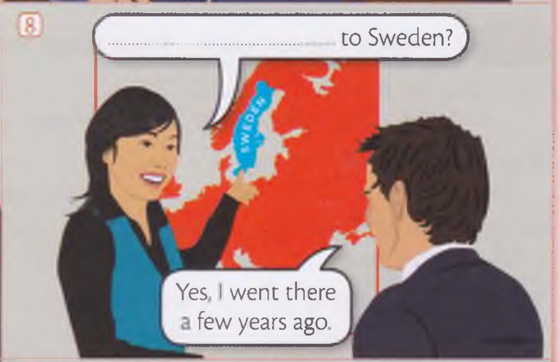
6


I'm looking for Jessica. .... her?
Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

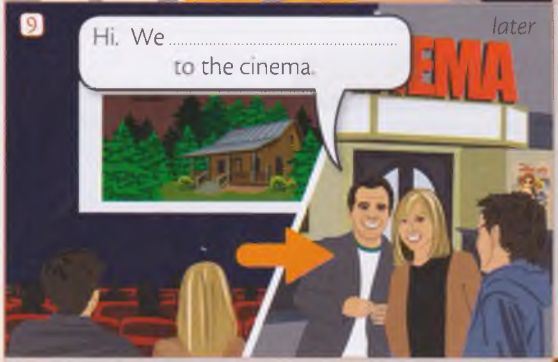
7


More coffee?
No, thanks. I .... enough.

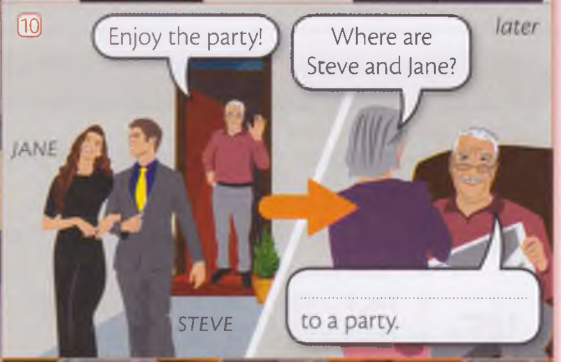
8


.... to Sweden?
SWEDEN
Yes, I went there a few years ago.

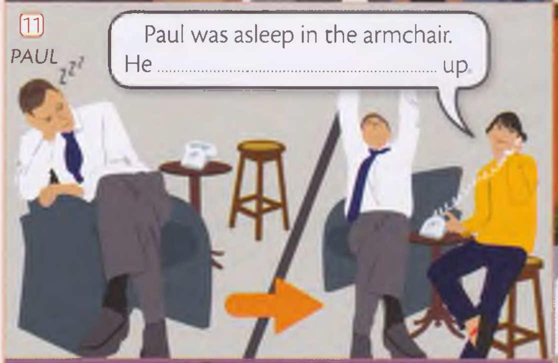
9


Hi. We .... to the cinema.
later
EMA

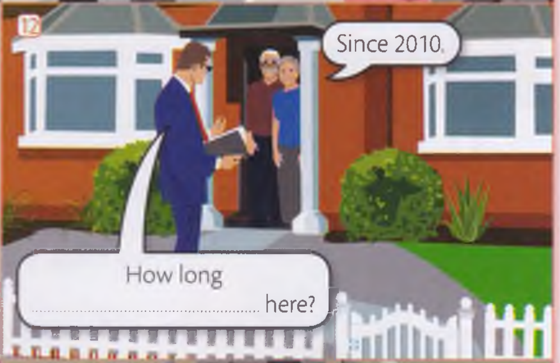
10


Enjoy the party!
JANE
STEVE
later
Where are Steve and Jane?
.... to a party.

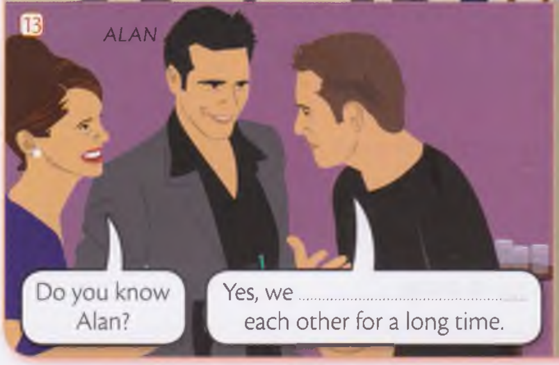
11


PAUL
zzz
Paul was asleep in the armchair. He .... up.

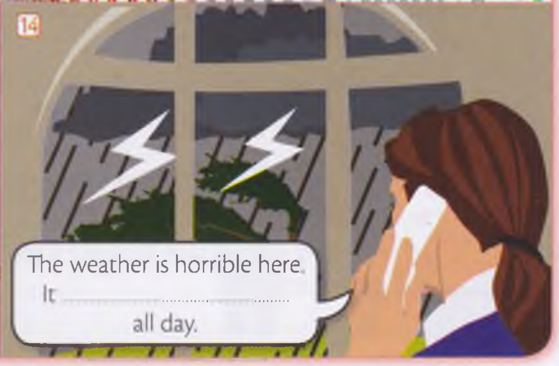
12


Since 2010.
How long .... here?

13


ALAN
Do you know Alan?
Yes, we .... each other for a long time.

14


The weather is horrible here. It .... all day.

17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

1 Mark and Sarah are married. They ......have been...... married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV ......since...... 5 o'clock.
3 Joe is at work. He .... at work since 8.30.
4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here .... five days.'
5 I've known Helen .... we were at school together.
6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long .... there?'
7 George has had the same job .... 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They .... here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1 I've never ......ridden a horse......
2 I've ......been to London...... many times.
3 I've just ....
4 I've .... (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5 I haven't .... yet.
6 I've never ....
7 I've .... since ....
8 I've .... for ....

---

present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Units 18–20

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I ......haven't been...... there.
2 A: Have you seen Kate?
B: Yes, I ......saw...... her five minutes ago.
3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
B: Yes, I .... it last week.
4 A: Are you tired this morning?
B: Yes, I .... to bed late last night.
5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
B: You can have it. I .... it.
6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
B: I .... yet. My first day is next Monday.
7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
B: No, but it .... nice yesterday.
8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
B: I don't think so. I .... her there.
9 A: Is your son still at school?
B: No, he .... school two years ago.
10 A: Is Silvia married?
B: Yes, she .... married for five years.
11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
B: Of course. He .... the first President of the United States.
12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
B: I don't know. I .... a pizza.

20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)
2 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)
3 A: What time is Paul going out?
B: .... (he / already / go)
4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
B: Yes, ... (she / leave / at 4 o'clock)
5 A: New York is my favourite city.
B: Is it? ....? (how many times / you / there?)
6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
B: I don't know. .... (I / not / decide / yet)
7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
B: .... (it / on the table / last night)
8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
B: Yes, ... (I / eat / there a few times)
9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
B: Are they? ....? (what time / they / arrive?)

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been to France?
B: Yes, many times.
A: When .... the last time?
B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
B: Yes, it is.
A: How long .... it?
B: It's new. I .... it yesterday.

Is this your car?

3 A: Where do you live?
B: In Harold Street.
A: How long .... there?
B: Five years. Before that ....
in Mill Road.
A: How long .... in Mill Road?
B: About three years.

Where do you live?

4 A: What do you do?
B: I work in a shop.
A: How long .... there?
B: Nearly two years.
A: What .... before that?
B: I .... a taxi driver.

What do you do?

22 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night) ....
3 (yesterday afternoon) ....
4 (… days ago) ....
5 (last week) ....
6 (last year) ....

---

present, past and present perfect

Units 3–20

23 Which is right?

1 '..Is Sue working? (C)..' 'No, she's on holiday.'
A Does Sue work? **B** Is working Sue? **C** Is Sue working? **D** Does work Sue?

2 'Where .... ?' 'In a village near London.'
A lives your uncle **B** does your uncle live **C** your uncle lives **D** does live your uncle

3 I speak Italian, but .... French.
A I speak not **B** I'm not speaking **C** I doesn't speak **D** I don't speak

4 'Where's Tom?' '.......... a shower at the moment.'
A He's having **B** He have **C** He has **D** He has had

5 Why .... angry with me yesterday?
A were you **B** was you **C** you were **D** have you been

6 My favourite film is *Cleo's Dream*. .... it four times.
A I'm seeing **B** I see **C** I was seeing **D** I've seen

7 I .... out last night. I was too tired.
A don't go **B** didn't went **C** didn't go **D** haven't gone

8 Tina is from Chicago. She .... there all her life.
A is living **B** has lived **C** lives **D** lived

9 My friend .... for me when I arrived.
A waited **B** has waited **C** was waiting **D** has been waiting

10 'How long .... English?' 'Six months.'
A do you learn **B** are you learning **C** you are learning **D** have you been learning

11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there ....
A for three years **B** since three years **C** three years ago **D** during three years

12 'What time .... ?' 'About an hour ago.'
A has Lisa phoned **B** Lisa has phoned **C** did Lisa phone **D** is Lisa phoning

13 What .... when you saw her?
A did Sue wear **B** was Sue wearing **C** has Sue worn **D** was wearing Sue

14 'Can you drive?' 'No, ... a car, but I want to learn.'
A I never drive **B** I'm never driving **C** I've never driven **D** I was never driving

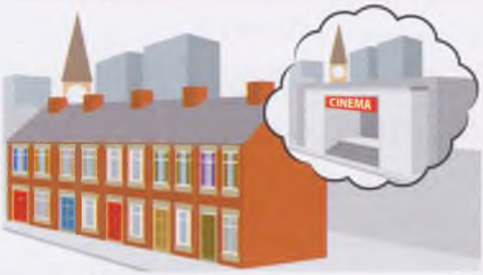
15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she .... me.
A didn't see **B** don't see **C** hasn't seen **D** didn't saw

passive

Units 21–22, Appendix 1

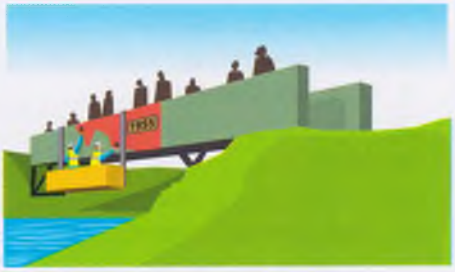
24 Complete the sentences.

1



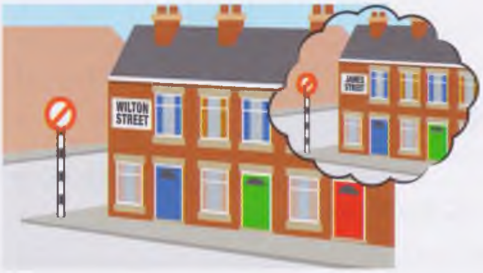
These houses ……were built…… (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building …………………… (damage) in a fire and had to …………………… (knock down).

2



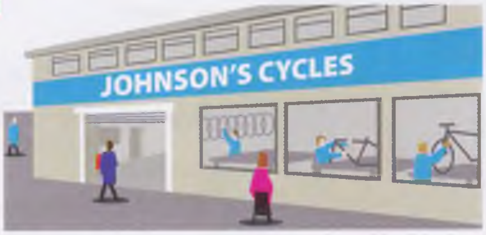
This bridge …………………… (build) in 1955. It …………………… (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge …………………… (paint).

3



This street …………………… (call) Wilton Street. It used to …………………… (call) James Street, but the name …………………… (change) a few years ago.

4



This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles …………………… (make) here since 1971. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles …………………… (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1 We ……were invited…… (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it …………………… (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings …………………… (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to …………………… (build) next year.
5 'Where's your jacket?' 'It …………………… (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will …………………… (forget).
7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it …………………… (already/do).'
8 Milk should …………………… (keep) in a fridge.
9 …………………… (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
10 My bag …………………… (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
2 Somebody stole my car last week. My car ……………………
3 Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the ……………………
4 Somebody will repair the machine. The ……………………
5 Somebody is watching us. We ……………………
6 Somebody has to do the housework. The ……………………

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1 They .....are building..... (build) a new airport at the moment.
2 These shirts are clean now. They .....have been washed..... (wash).
3 'How did you fall?' 'Somebody .... (push) me.'
4 'How did you fall?' 'I .... (push).'
5 I can't find my bag. Somebody .... (take) it!
6 My watch is broken. It .... (repair) at the moment.
7 Who .... (invent) the camera?
8 When .... (the camera/invent)?
9 These shirts are clean now. They .... (wash).
10 These shirts are clean now. I .... (wash) them.
11 The letter was for me, so why .... (they/send) it to you?
12 The information will .... (send) to you as soon as possible.

---

future

Units 25–28

28 Which is the best alternative?

1 .....We're having (B)..... a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
A We have **B** We're having **C** We'll have

2 Do you know about Karen? .... her job. She told me last week.
A She leaves **B** She's going to leave **C** She'll leave

3 There's a programme on TV that I want to watch. .... in five minutes.
A It starts **B** It's starting **C** It will start

4 The weather is nice now, but I think .... later.
A it rains **B** it's raining **C** it will rain

5 'What .... next weekend?' 'Nothing. I've got no plans.'
A do you do **B** are you doing **C** will you do

6 'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK, ... her.'
A I ask **B** I'm going to ask **C** I'll ask

7 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' '.................................... tea, please.'
A I have **B** I'm going to have **C** I'll have

8 Don't take that magazine away. .... it.
A I read **B** I'm going to read **C** I'll read

9 Rachel is ill, so .... to the party tomorrow night.
A she doesn't come **B** she isn't coming **C** she won't come

10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time .... ?
A does her train arrive **B** is her train going to arrive **C** is her train arriving

11 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No. ....'
A I go out **B** I'm going out **C** I'll go out

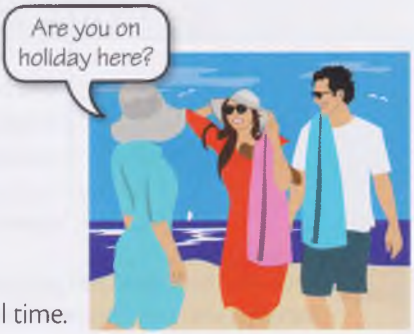
12 '.................................... you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.'
A Do I phone **B** Am I going to phone **C** Shall I phone

past, present and future

Units 3–20, 25–28

29 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
B: No, ... (I/stay) at home.
A: What .... (you/do)?
B: .... (I/watch) TV.
A: .... (you/go) out tomorrow night?
B: Yes, ... (I/go) to the cinema.
A: Which film .... (you/see)?
B: .... (I/not/know). .... (I/not/decide) yet.


Are you on holiday here?

2 A: Are you on holiday here?
B: Yes, we are.
A: How long .... (you/be) here?
B: .... (we/arrive) yesterday.
A: And how long .... (you/stay)?
B: Until the end of next week.
A: And .... (you/like) it here?
B: Yes, ... (we/have) a wonderful time.

3 A: .... (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
.... (you/want) to come with us?
B: Yes, where .... (you/go)?
A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. .... (you/ever/eat) there?
B: Yes, ... (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I
.... (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

4 A: .... (I/lose) my glasses again.
.... (you/see) them?
B: .... (you/wear) them
when .... (I/come) in.
A: Well, ... (I/not/wear)
them now, so where are they?
B: .... (you/look) in the kitchen?
A: No, ... (I/go) and look now.

past, present and future

Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105

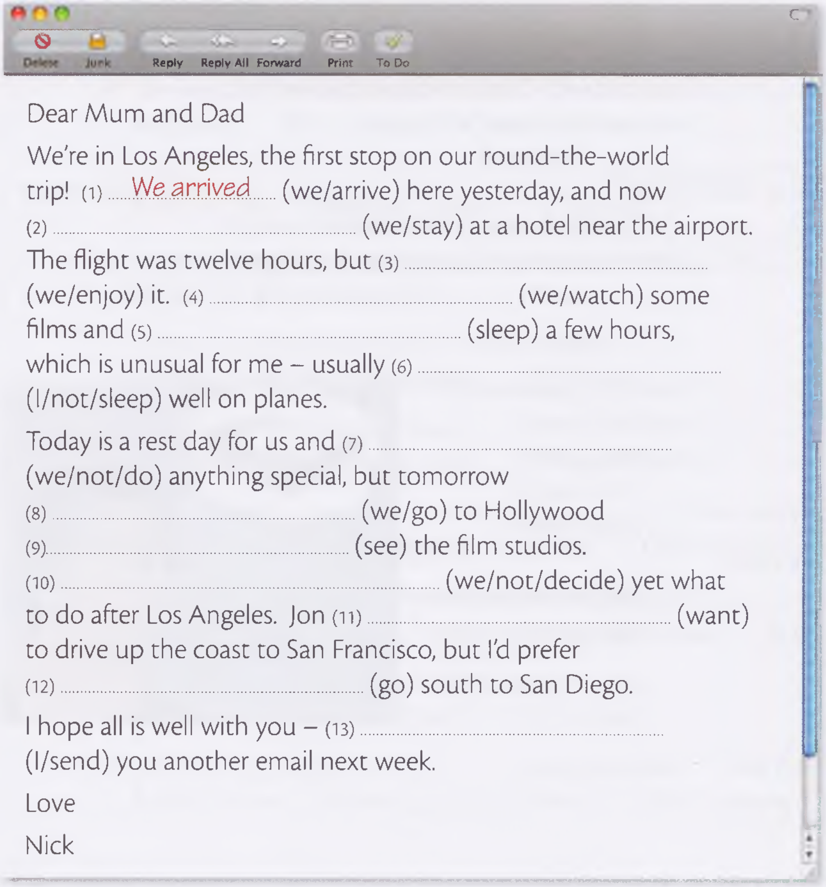
30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Rachel

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) .... (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary school, and (2) .... (we/sit) next to each other for the first lesson. (3) .... (we/not/know) any other students in our class, and so (4) .... (we/become) friends. We found that (5) .... (we/like) the same things, especially music and sport, and so (6) .... (we/spend) a lot of time together.

(7) .... (we/leave) school five years ago, but (8) .... (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) .... (be) in Mexico – at the moment (10) .... (she/work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) .... (she/come) back to England next month, and when (12) .... (she/come) back, (13) .... (we/have) lots of things to talk about. (14) .... (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.



Dear Mum and Dad

We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world trip! (1) ....We arrived.... (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now (2) .... (we/stay) at a hotel near the airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) .... (we/enjoy) it. (4) .... (we/watch) some films and (5) .... (sleep) a few hours, which is unusual for me – usually (6) .... (I/not/sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) .... (we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow (8) .... (we/go) to Hollywood (9).................................... (see) the film studios. (10) .... (we/not/decide) yet what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) .... (want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer (12) .... (go) south to San Diego.

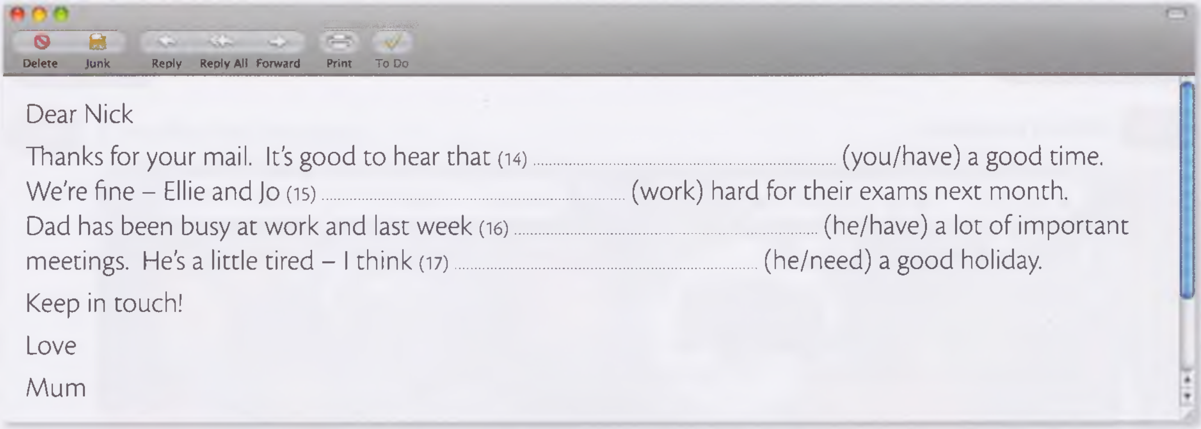
I hope all is well with you – (13) .... (I/send) you another email next week.

Love

Nick

Nick

SAN FRANCISCO
USA
LOS ANGELES
PACIFIC OCEAN
SAN DIEGO
MEXICO


Delete
Junk
Reply
Reply All
Forward
Print
To Do

Dear Nick

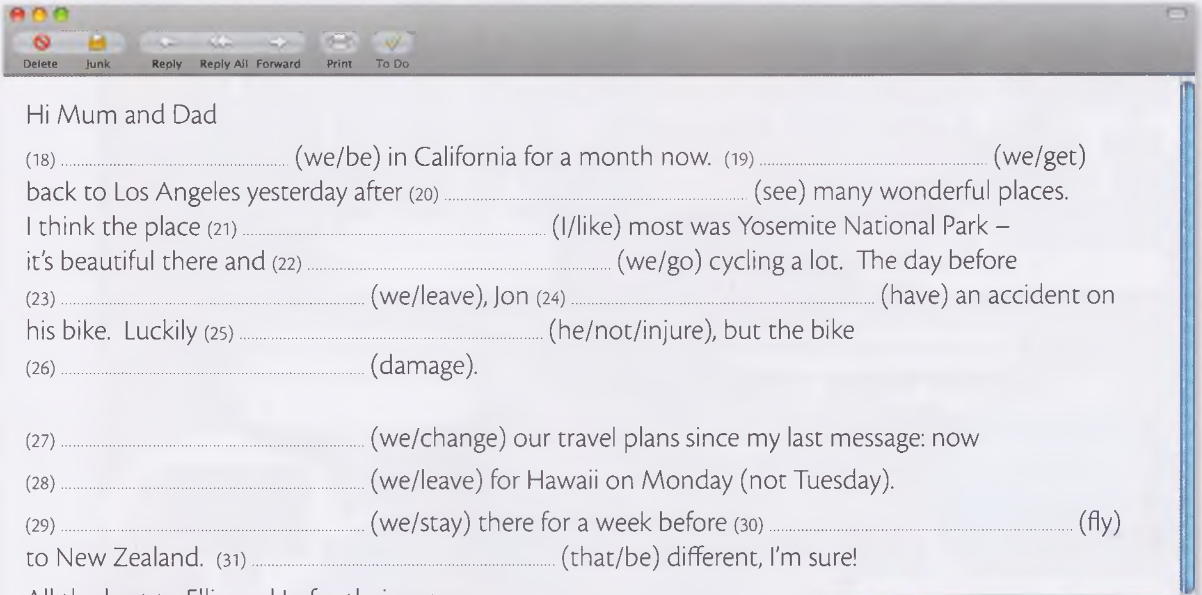
Thanks for your mail. It's good to hear that (14) .... (you/have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) .... (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) .... (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired – I think (17) .... (he/need) a good holiday.

Keep in touch!

Love

Mum

A month later …


Delete
Junk
Reply
Reply All
Forward
Print
To Do

Hi Mum and Dad

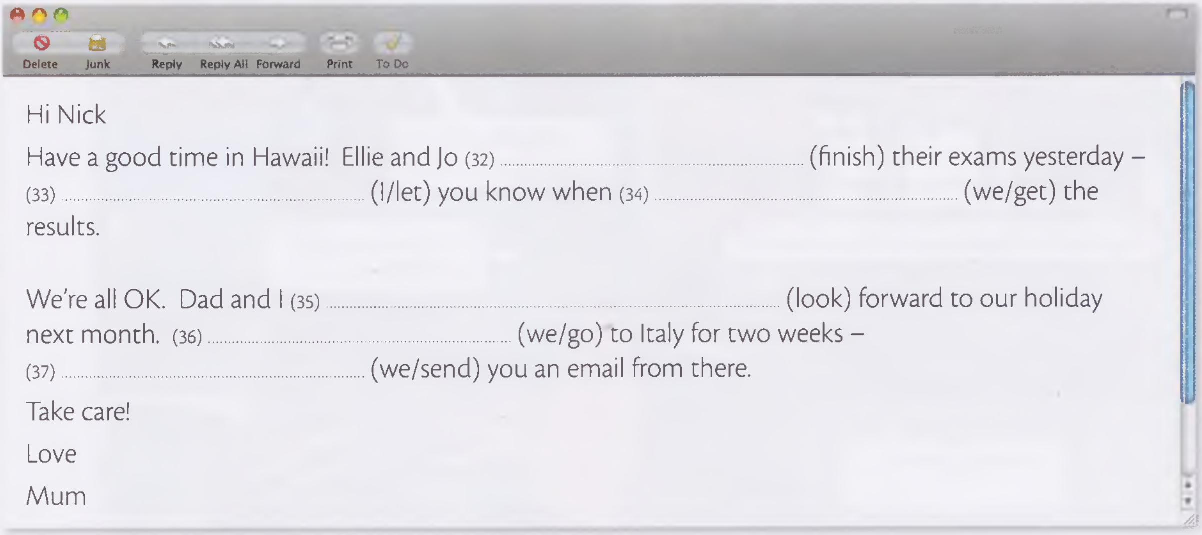
(18) .... (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) .... (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) .... (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) .... (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and (22) .... (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) .... (we/leave), Jon (24) .... (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) .... (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) .... (damage).

(27) .... (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) .... (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). (29) .... (we/stay) there for a week before (30) .... (fly) to New Zealand. (31) .... (that/be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love

Nick


Delete
Junk
Reply
Reply All
Forward
Print
To Do

Hi Nick

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) .... (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) .... (I/let) you know when (34) .... (we/get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (35) .... (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) .... (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) .... (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!

Love

Mum

-ing and to ...

Units 51–55, 105, 112

32 Which is correct?

1 Don't forget to switch (B) off the light before you go out.
A switch **B** to switch **C** switching

2 It's late. I must .... now.
A go **B** to go **C** going

3 I'm sorry, but I don't have time .... to you now.
A for talking **B** to talk **C** talking

4 Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys ....
A cook **B** to cook **C** cooking

5 We've decided .... away for a few days.
A go **B** to go **C** going

6 You're making too much noise. Can you please stop .... ?
A shout **B** to shout **C** shouting

7 Would you like .... and eat with us on Sunday?
A come **B** to come **C** coming

8 That bag is too heavy for you. Let me .... you.
A help **B** to help **C** helping

9 There's a swimming pool near my house. I go .... every day.
A to swim **B** to swimming **C** swimming

10 I need to go shopping .... some food.
A to buy **B** for buy **C** for buying

11 I'd love .... a car like yours.
A have **B** to have **C** having

12 Could you .... me with this bag, please?
A help **B** to help **C** helping

13 I don't mind .... here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
A sit **B** to sit **C** sitting

14 Do you want .... you?
A that I help **B** me to help **C** me helping

15 You should think carefully before .... an important decision.
A make **B** to make **C** making

16 I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me .... better.
A feel **B** to feel **C** feeling

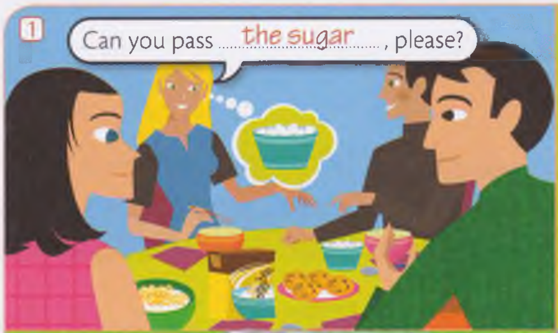
17 Shall I phone the restaurant .... a table?
A for reserve **B** for reserving **C** to reserve

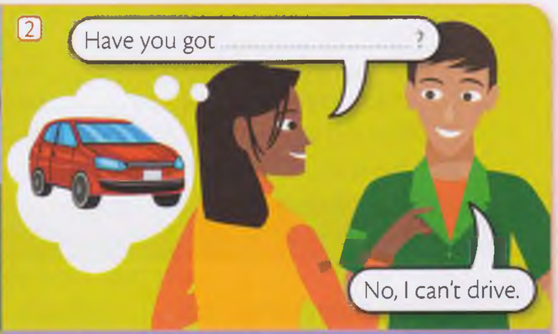
18 Tom looked at me without .... anything.
A say **B** saying **C** to say

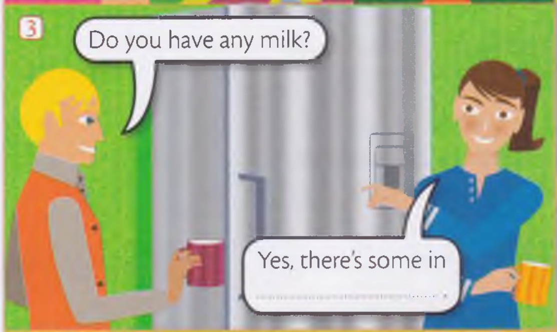
a and the

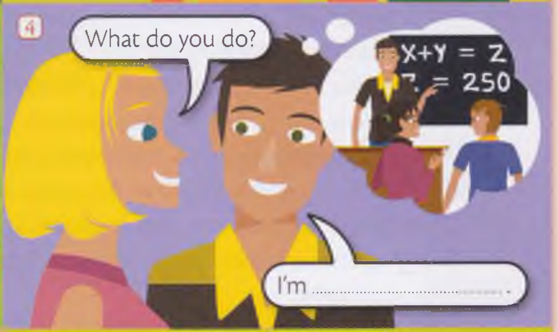
Units 65, 69–73

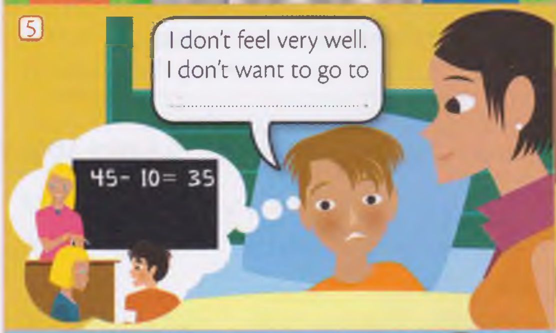
33 Complete the sentences.

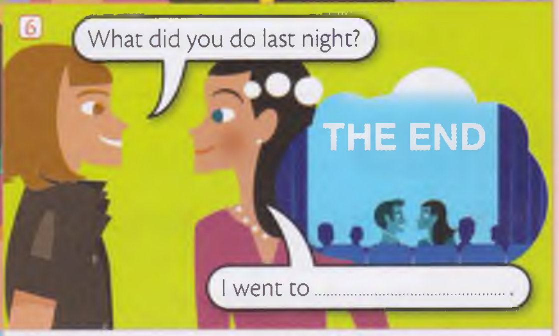
1

Can you pass the sugar ...., please?

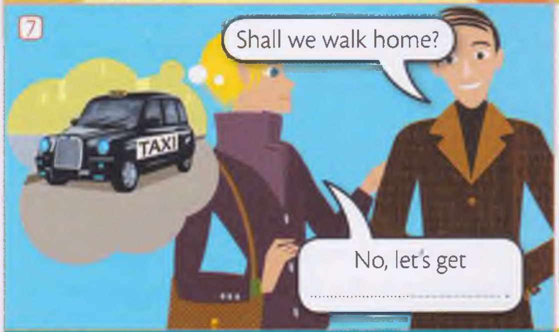
2

Have you got ....?
No, I can't drive.

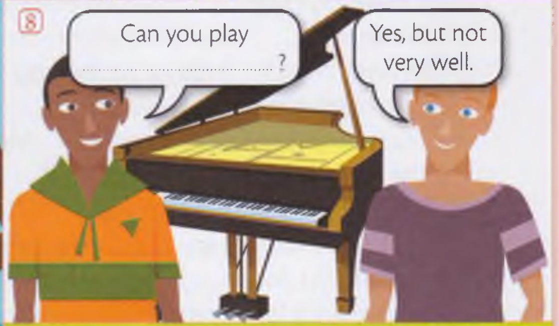
3

Do you have any milk?
Yes, there's some in ....

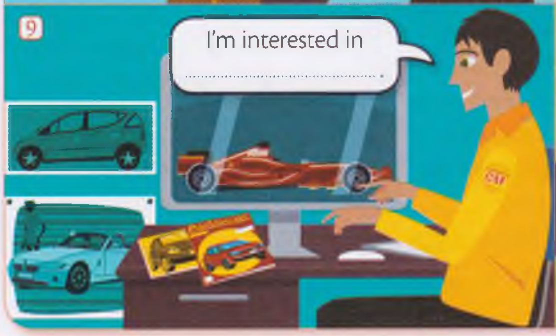
4

What do you do?
X+Y = Z
= 250
I'm ....

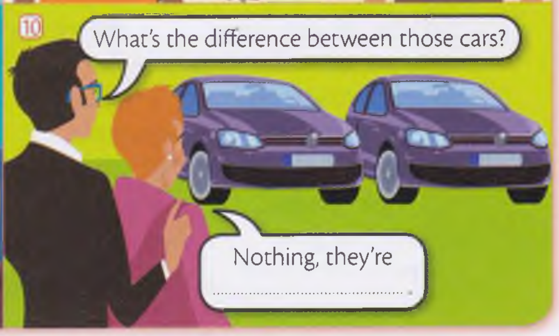
5

I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to ....
45- 10= 35

6

What did you do last night?
THE END
I went to ....

7

Shall we walk home?
TAXI
No, let's get ....

8

Can you play ....?
Yes, but not very well.

9

I'm interested in ....

10

What's the difference between those cars?
Nothing, they're ....

34 Write **a/an** or **the** if necessary. If **a/an/the** are not necessary, leave an empty space (–).

1 Who is ....*the*.... best player in your team?
2 I don't watch ....*–*.... TV very often.
3 'Is there ....*a*.... bank near here?' 'Yes, at ....*the*.... end of this street.'
4 I can't ride .... horse.
5 .... sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you .... tourist?
7 What did you have for .... lunch?
8 Who was .... first President of .... United States?
9 I'm not feeling very good. I've got .... headache.
10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember .... names.
11 What time is .... next train to London?
12 Kate doesn't often send .... emails. She prefers to call people.
13 'Where's Sue?' 'She's in .... garden.'
14 Excuse me, I'm looking for .... Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill .... last week, so he didn't go to .... work.
16 Everest is .... highest mountain in .... world.
17 I usually listen to .... radio while I'm having .... breakfast.
18 I like .... sport. My favourite sport is .... basketball.
19 Emily is .... doctor. Her husband is .... art teacher.
20 My apartment is on .... second floor. Turn left at .... top of .... stairs, and it's on .... right.
21 After .... dinner, we watched .... TV.
22 Last year we had .... wonderful holiday in .... south of .... France.

---

prepositions

Units 103–108, 111

35 Write a preposition (**in/for/by** etc.).

1 Helen is studying law ....*at*.... university.
2 What is the longest river .... Europe?
3 Is there anything .... TV this evening?
4 We arrived .... the hotel after midnight.
5 'Where's Mark?' 'He's .... holiday.'
6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still .... bed.
7 Lisa is away. She's been away .... Monday.
8 The next meeting is .... 15 April.
9 I usually go to work .... car.
10 There's too much sugar .... my coffee.
11 Joe lived in London .... six months. He didn't like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people .... the party?
13 What are you doing .... the moment? Are you working?
14 I don't know any of the people .... this photo.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped .... every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures .... the walls.
17 'Did you buy that picture?' 'No, it was given to me .... a friend of mine.'
18 I'm going away .... a few days. I'll be back .... Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone .... Italy. She's .... Milan at the moment.
20 Emma left school .... sixteen and got a job .... a shop.

Study guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 313.

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
Present		
1.1	……………… . Can you close the window, please? **A** I cold **B** I'm cold **C** I have cold **D** It has cold	1
1.2	Lisa ……………… in politics. **A** isn't interested **B** not interested **C** doesn't interested **D** doesn't interest	1
1.3	'………………?' 'No, she's out.' **A** Is at home your mother **B** Does your mother at home **C** Is your mother at home **D** Are your mother at home	2
1.4	These shoes are nice. ……………… **A** How much are they? **B** How many are they? **C** How much they are? **D** How much is they?	2
1.5	Look, there's Sarah. ……………… a brown coat. **A** She wearing **B** She has wearing **C** She is wearing **D** She's wearing	3, 23
1.6	You can turn off the television. ……………… it. **A** I'm not watch **B** I'm not watching **C** I not watching **D** I don't watching	3, 23
1.7	'……………… today?' 'No, he's at home.' **A** Is working Ben **B** Is work Ben **C** Is Ben work **D** Is Ben working	4, 23
1.8	Look, there's Emily! ……………… **A** Where she is going? **B** Where she go? **C** Where's she going? **D** Where she going?	4, 23
1.9	The earth ……………… round the sun. **A** going **B** go **C** goes **D** does go **E** is go	5, 23
1.10	We ……………… away at weekends. **A** often go **B** go often **C** often going **D** are often go	5, 23, 94
1.11	We ……………… TV very often. **A** not watch **B** doesn't watch **C** don't watch **D** don't watching **E** watch not	6, 23
1.12	'……………… play the guitar?' 'Yes, but I'm not very good.' **A** Do you play **B** Are you play **C** Does you play **D** Do you playing **E** Play you	7, 23
1.13	I don't understand this sentence. What ……………… ? **A** mean this word **B** means this word **C** does mean this word **D** does this word mean **E** this word means	7, 23

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT — STUDY UNIT

1.14 Please be quiet. .... — 8, 23
A I working. **B** I work. **C** I'm working. **D** I'm work.

1.15 Tom .... a shower every morning. — 8, 58
A has **B** having **C** is having **D** have

1.16 What .... at weekends? — 8, 23
A do you usually **B** are you usually doing **C** are you usually do
D do you usually do **E** you do usually

1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. .... a headache. — 9, 58
A She have **B** She have got **C** She has **D** She's got

1.18 They .... any children. — 9, 58
A don't have **B** doesn't have **C** no have **D** haven't got **E** hasn't got

Past

2.1 The weather .... last week. — 10
A is good **B** was good **C** were good **D** good **E** had good

2.2 Why .... late this morning? — 10
A you was **B** did you **C** was you **D** you were **E** were you

2.3 Terry .... in a bank from 2005 to 2011. — 11
A work **B** working **C** works **D** worked **E** was work

2.4 Caroline .... to the cinema three times last week. — 11
A go **B** went **C** goes **D** got **E** was

2.5 I .... TV yesterday. — 12, 23
A didn't watch **B** didn't watched **C** wasn't watched
D don't watch **E** didn't watching

2.6 'How .... ?' 'I don't know. I didn't see it.' — 12
A happened the accident **B** did happen the accident
C does the accident happen **D** did the accident happen
E the accident happened

2.7 What .... at 11.30 yesterday? — 13
A were you doing **B** was you doing **C** you were doing
D were you do **E** you was doing

2.8 Jack was reading a book when his phone .... — 14
A ringing **B** ring **C** rang **D** was ringing **E** was ring

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They .... at the bus stop. — 14
A waiting **B** waited **C** were waiting **D** was waiting **E** were waited

Present perfect

3.1 'Where's Rebecca?' '.......................... to bed.' — 15
A She is gone **B** She has gone **C** She goes **D** She have gone
E She's gone

3.2 'Are Laura and Paul here?' 'No, they ....' — 16
A don't arrive yet **B** have already arrived **C** haven't already arrived
D haven't arrived yet

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
3.3	My sister …………………… by plane. **A** has never travel **B** has never travelled **C** is never travelled **D** has never been travelled **E** have never travelled	17, 23
3.4	…………………… that woman before, but I can't remember where. **A** I see **B** I seen **C** I've saw **D** I've seen **E** I've seeing	17, 23
3.5	'How long …………………… married?' 'Since 2007.' **A** you are **B** you have been **C** has you been **D** are you **E** have you been	18
3.6	'Do you know Lisa?' 'Yes, …………………… her for a long time.' **A** I knew **B** I've known **C** I know **D** I am knowing	18
3.7	Richard has been in Canada …………………… . **A** for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago **D** in six months	19, 104
3.8	'When did Tom go out?' '…………………… ' **A** For ten minutes. **B** Since ten minutes. **C** Ten minutes ago. **D** In ten minutes.	19
3.9	We …………………… a holiday last year. **A** don't have **B** haven't had **C** hasn't had **D** didn't have **E** didn't had	20
3.10	Where …………………… on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. **A** you were **B** you have been **C** was you **D** have you been **E** were you	20

Passive

4.1	This house …………………… 100 years ago. **A** is built **B** is building **C** was building **D** was built **E** built	21, 23
4.2	We …………………… to the party last week. **A** didn't invite **B** didn't invited **C** weren't invited **D** wasn't invited **E** haven't been invited	21, 23
4.3	'Where …………………… born?' 'In Cairo.' **A** you are **B** you were **C** was you **D** are you **E** were you	21
4.4	My car is at the garage. It …………………… . **A** is being repaired **B** is repairing **C** have been repaired **D** repaired **E** repairs	22
4.5	I can't find my keys. I think …………………… . **A** they've been stolen **B** they are stolen **C** they've stolen **D** they're being stolen	22

Verb forms

5.1	It …………………… , so we didn't need an umbrella. **A** wasn't rained **B** wasn't rain **C** didn't raining **D** wasn't raining	23
5.2	Somebody …………………… this window. **A** has broke **B** has broken **C** has breaked **D** has break	24

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
Future		
6.1	Andrew …………………… tennis tomorrow. **A** is playing **B** play **C** plays **D** is play	25
6.2	…………………… out tonight? **A** Are you going **B** Are you go **C** Do you go **D** Go you **E** Do you going	25
6.3	'What time is the concert tonight?' 'It …………………… at 7.30.' **A** is start **B** is starting **C** starts **D** start **E** starting	25
6.4	What …………………… to the wedding next week? **A** are you wearing **B** are you going to wear **C** do you wear **D** you are going to wear	26
6.5	I think Kelly …………………… the exam. **A** passes **B** will pass **C** will be pass **D** will passing	27
6.6	…………………… to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? **A** We go **B** We'll go **C** We're going **D** We will going	27
6.7	'…………………… you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.' **A** I phone **B** I phoning **C** I'm phoning **D** I'll phone	28
6.8	…………………… tomorrow, so I can't meet you. **A** I work **B** I'll work **C** I'm working **D** I'll working	28
6.9	It's a nice day. …………………… for a walk? **A** Do we go **B** Shall we go **C** Are we go **D** We go **E** Go we	28
Modals, imperative etc.		
7.1	…………………… to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. **A** I'll go **B** I'm going **C** I may go **D** I might go	29
7.2	'…………………… here?' 'Yes, of course.' **A** Can I sit **B** Do I sit **C** May I sit **D** Can I to sit	29, 30
7.3	I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel …………………… . **A** can't come **B** can't to come **C** can't coming **D** couldn't come	30
7.4	Before Maria came to Britain, she …………………… understand much English. **A** can **B** can't **C** not **D** couldn't **E** doesn't	30
7.5	We …………………… walk home last night. There were no buses. **A** have to **B** had to **C** must **D** must to **E** must have	31, 33
7.6	I …………………… go yet. I can stay a little longer. **A** must **B** mustn't **C** must not **D** don't need **E** don't need to	31
7.7	It's a good film. You …………………… go and see it. **A** should to **B** ought to **C** ought **D** should **E** need	32
7.8	What time …………………… go to the dentist tomorrow? **A** you must **B** you have to **C** have you to **D** do you have to	33
7.9	We …………………… wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes. **A** don't have to **B** hadn't to **C** didn't have to **D** didn't had to **E** mustn't	33

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT **STUDY UNIT**

7.10 '.................................... some coffee?' 'No, thank you.' 34
A Are you liking **B** You like **C** Would you like **D** Do you like

7.11 Please .... Stay here with me. 35
A don't go **B** you no go **C** go not **D** you don't go

7.12 Dave .... in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket. 36
A working **B** works **C** worked **D** use to work **E** used to work

There and it

8.1 Excuse me, ... a hotel near here? 37
A has there **B** is there **C** there is **D** is it

8.2 .... a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous. 37
A Have **B** It has **C** There have **D** They are **E** There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but .... anything to eat. 38
A there wasn't **B** there weren't **C** it wasn't **D** there hasn't been

8.4 .... three kilometres from our house to the city centre. 39
A It's **B** It has **C** There is **D** There are

8.5 .... true that you're going away? 39
A Is there **B** Is it **C** Is **D** Are you

Auxiliary verbs

9.1 I haven't got a car, but my sister 40
A have **B** is **C** has **D** hasn't **E** has got

9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Sue 40
A does **B** doesn't **C** do **D** does like **E** likes

9.3 'Nicola got married last week.' '.................................... Really?' 41
A Is she? **B** Got she? **C** Did she? **D** Has she?

9.4 You haven't met my mother, ... ? 41
A haven't you **B** have you **C** did you **D** you have **E** you haven't

9.5 Ben doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers 42
A too **B** either **C** neither **D** never

9.6 'I'd like to go to Australia.' '....................................' 42
A So do I. **B** So am I. **C** So would I. **D** Neither do I. **E** So I would.

9.7 Sue .... much at weekends. 43
A don't **B** doesn't **C** don't do **D** doesn't do

Questions

10.1 'When .... ?' 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.' 44
A did the telephone invent **B** has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone **D** was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented

10.2 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How .... that?' 44
A did you **B** you did **C** you did do **D** did you do

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
10.3	Why …………………… me last night? I was waiting for you to phone. **A** didn't you phone **B** you not phone **C** you don't phone **D** you didn't phone	44
10.4	'Who …………………… in this house?' 'I don't know.' **A** lives **B** does live **C** does lives **D** living	45
10.5	What …………………… when you told him the story? **A** said Paul **B** did Paul say **C** Paul said **D** did Paul said	45
10.6	'Tom's father is in hospital.' '……………………' **A** In which hospital he is? **B** In which hospital he is in? **C** Which hospital he is in? **D** Which hospital is he in?	46
10.7	Did you have a good holiday? …………………… **A** How was the weather like? **B** What was the weather like? **C** What the weather was like? **D** Was the weather like?	46
10.8	…………………… taller – Joe or Gary? **A** Who is **B** What is **C** Which is **D** Who has	47
10.9	There are four umbrellas here. …………………… is yours? **A** What **B** Who **C** Which **D** How **E** Which one	47, 75
10.10	How long …………………… to cross the Atlantic by ship? **A** is it **B** does it need **C** does it take **D** does it want	48
10.11	I don't remember what …………………… at the party. **A** Kate was wearing **B** was wearing Kate **C** was Kate wearing	49
10.12	'Do you know ……………………?' 'Yes, I think so.' **A** if Jack is at home **B** is Jack at home **C** whether Jack is at home **D** that Jack is at home	49
Reported speech		
11.1	I saw Steve a week ago. He said that …………………… me, but he didn't. **A** he phone **B** he phones **C** he'll phone **D** he's going to phone **E** he would phone	50
11.2	'Why did Tim go to bed so early?' 'He ……………………' **A** said he was tired **B** said that he was tired **C** said me he was tired **D** told me he was tired **E** told that he was tired	50
-ing and to		
12.1	You shouldn't …………………… so hard. **A** working **B** work **C** to work **D** worked	51
12.2	It's late. I …………………… now. **A** must to go **B** have go **C** have to going **D** have to go	51
12.3	Tina has decided …………………… her car. **A** sell **B** to sell **C** selling **D** to selling	52
12.4	I don't mind …………………… early. **A** get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up	52

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
12.5	Do you like .... early? **A** get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up	52
12.6	Do you want .... you some money? **A** me lend **B** me lending **C** me to lend **D** that I lend	53
12.7	He's very funny. He makes .... **A** me laugh **B** me laughing **C** me to laugh **D** that I laugh	53
12.8	Paula went to the shop .... a newspaper. **A** for get **B** for to get **C** for getting **D** to get **E** get	54
Go, get, do, make and **have**		
13.1	It's a nice day. Let's go .... **A** for a swim **B** on a swim **C** to swimming **D** swimming	55
13.2	I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she .... better soon. **A** has **B** makes **C** gets **D** goes	56
13.3	Kate .... the car and drove away. **A** went into **B** went in **C** got in **D** got into	56
13.4	'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll .... it.' **A** do **B** make **C** get **D** open	57
13.5	I'm sorry, I .... a mistake. **A** did **B** made **C** got **D** had	57
13.6	'.................... a good time in Tokyo?' 'Yes, it was great.' **A** Have you **B** Had you **C** Do you have **D** Did you have	58
Pronouns and possessives		
14.1	I don't want this book. You can have .... **A** it **B** them **C** her **D** him	59, 62
14.2	Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with .... ? **A** her **B** they **C** them **D** him	59, 62
14.3	I know Amy, but I don't know .... husband. **A** their **B** his **C** she **D** her	60, 62
14.4	Oxford is famous for .... university. **A** his **B** its **C** it's **D** their	60
14.5	I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me .... **A** her **B** hers **C** her umbrella **D** she's	61, 62
14.6	I went out to meet a friend of .... **A** mine **B** my **C** me **D** I **E** myself	61, 62
14.7	We had a good holiday. We enjoyed .... **A** us **B** our **C** ours **D** ourself **E** ourselves	63
14.8	Kate and Helen are good friends. They know .... well. **A** each other **B** them **C** themselves **D** theirselves	63

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Determiners and pronouns

		STUDY UNIT
16.1	'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, ... nice.' **A** it's **B** this is **C** that's	74
16.2	'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's .... at the end of this street.' **A** some **B** it **C** one **D** a one	75
16.3	This cup is dirty. Can I have .... ? **A** clean one **B** a clean one **C** clean **D** a clean	75
16.4	I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy .... clothes. **A** any **B** some	76
16.5	'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have ....' **A** one **B** some **C** any	76
16.6	Tracey and Jack .... **A** have no children **B** don't have no children **C** don't have any children **D** have any children	77, 78
16.7	'How much money do you have?' '.......... ' **A** No. **B** No-one. **C** Any. **D** None.	77
16.8	There is .... in the room. It's empty. **A** anybody **B** nobody **C** anyone **D** no-one	78, 79
16.9	'What did you say?' '.......... ' **A** Nothing. **B** Nobody. **C** Anything. **D** Not anything.	78, 79
16.10	I'm hungry. I want .... **A** something for eat **B** something to eat **C** something for eating	79
16.11	Ben watches TV for about two hours .... **A** all evening **B** all evenings **C** all the evenings **D** every evenings **E** every evening	80
16.12	.... friends. **A** Everybody need **B** Everybody needs **C** Everyone need **D** Everyone needs	80
16.13	.... children like playing. **A** Most **B** The most **C** Most of **D** The most of	81
16.14	I like .... those pictures. **A** both **B** both of **C** either **D** either of	82
16.15	I haven't read .... these books. **A** neither **B** neither of **C** either **D** either of	82
16.16	Do you have .... friends? **A** a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** much of **E** many of	83
16.17	We like films, so we go to the cinema .... **A** a lot of **B** much **C** many **D** a lot	83
16.18	There were .... people in the theatre. It was nearly empty. **A** a little **B** few **C** little **D** a few of	84
16.19	They have .... money, so they're not poor. **A** a little **B** a few **C** few **D** little **E** little of	84

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT — **STUDY UNIT**

Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any ………………………… . — 85
A foreign languages **B** languages foreign **C** languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very ………………………… . — 86
A quick **B** quicker **C** quickly

17.3 You speak English very ………………………… . — 86
A good **B** fluent **C** well **D** slow

17.4 Helen wants ………………………… . — 87
A a more big car **B** a car more big **C** a car bigger **D** a bigger car

17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel ………………………… .' — 87
A good **B** worse **C** more bad **D** more worse

17.6 Athens is older ………………………… Rome. — 88
A as **B** than **C** that **D** of

17.7 I can run faster ………………………… . — 88
A than him **B** that he can **C** than he can **D** as he can **E** as he

17.8 Tennis isn't ………………………… football. — 89
A popular as **B** popular than **C** as popular than **D** so popular that
E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same ………………………… yesterday. — 89
A as **B** that **C** than **D** like

17.10 The Europa Hotel is ………………………… in the city. — 90
A the more expensive hotel **B** the most expensive hotel
C the hotel most expensive **D** the hotel the more expensive
E the hotel more expensive

17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the ………………………… film I've ever seen. — 90
A worse **B** baddest **C** most bad **D** worst **E** more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got ………………………… . — 91
A enough money **B** money enough **C** enough of money

17.13 Is your English ………………………… a conversation? — 91
A enough good to have **B** good enough for have **C** enough good for
D good enough to have

17.14 I'm ………………………… out. — 92
A too tired for go **B** too much tired for going **C** too tired to go
D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue ………………………… . They're very nice. — 93
A bought yesterday some new shoes **B** bought some new shoes yesterday
C yesterday bought some new shoes

18.2 ………………………… coffee in the morning. — 94
A I drink always **B** Always I drink **C** I always drink

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

18.3 .... during the day. 94
A They are at home never **B** They are never at home
C They never are at home **D** Never they are at home

18.4 'Where's Emma?' 'She ....' 95
A isn't here yet **B** isn't here already **C** isn't here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave 96
A Sarah the keys **B** to Sarah the keys **C** the keys Sarah
D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when .... more time. 98
A I'll have **B** I had **C** I have **D** I'm going to have

19.2 .... late this evening, don't wait for me. 99
A If I'm **B** If I'll be **C** When I'm **D** When I'll be

19.3 I don't know the answer. If I .... the answer, I'd tell you. 100
A know **B** would know **C** have known **D** knew

19.4 I like this jacket. .... it if it wasn't so expensive. 100
A I buy **B** I'll buy **C** I bought **D** I'd bought **E** I'd buy

19.5 Emma lives in a house .... is 400 years old. 101
A who **B** that **C** which **D** it **E** what

19.6 The people .... work in the office are very friendly. 101
A who **B** that **C** they **D** which **E** what

19.7 Did you find the books .... ? 102
A who you wanted **B** that you wanted **C** what you wanted
D you wanted **E** you wanted it

19.8 I met .... can speak six languages. 102
A a woman who **B** a woman which **C** a woman **D** a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! I'll see you 103
A until Friday **B** at Friday **C** in Friday **D** on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves .... five minutes. 103
A at **B** on **C** from **D** after **E** in

20.3 'How long will you be away?' '.............................. Monday.' 104
A On **B** To **C** Until **D** Till **E** Since

20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played .... two hours. 105
A in **B** for **C** since **D** during

20.5 I always have breakfast before .... to work. 105
A I go **B** go **C** to go **D** going

20.6 Write your name .... the top of the page. 106
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

	IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
20.7	There are a lot of apples .... those trees. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	106
20.8	What's the largest city .... the world? **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** of	107
20.9	The office is .... the first floor. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	107
20.10	I met a lot of people .... the party. **A** on **B** to **C** in **D** at	108
20.11	I want to go .... Italy next year. **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	108
20.12	What time did you arrive .... the hotel? **A** at **B** on **C** in **D** to	108
20.13	'Where is David in this picture?' 'He's .... Laura.' **A** at front of **B** in the front of **C** in front of **D** in front from	109
20.14	I jumped .... the wall into the garden. **A** on **B** through **C** across **D** over **E** above	110
20.15	Jane isn't at work this week. She's .... holiday. **A** on **B** in **C** for **D** to **E** at	111
20.16	Do you like travelling .... ? **A** with train **B** with the train **C** in train **D** on train **E** by train	111
20.17	I'm not very good .... telling stories. **A** on **B** with **C** at **D** in **E** for	112
20.18	Tom left without .... goodbye. **A** say **B** saying **C** to say **D** that he said	112
20.19	I have to phone .... today. **A** with my parents **B** to my parents **C** at my parents **D** my parents	113
20.20	'Do you like eating in restaurants?' 'It depends .... the restaurant.' **A** in **B** at **C** of **D** on **E** over	113
Phrasal verbs		
21.1	The car stopped and a woman got .... **A** off **B** down **C** out **D** out of	114
21.2	It was cold, so I .... **A** put on my coat **B** put my coat on **C** put the coat on me **D** put me the coat on	115
21.3	I've got Rachel's keys. I have to .... to her. **A** give back **B** give them back **C** give back them **D** give it back	115

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 65
  a and *some* 67–68
  a/an and *the* 69
about 111E
above 109E
active and **passive** Appendix 1
across 110
adjectives 85
  adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 86
  comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 87–89
  superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 90
  get + adjective (*get tired* etc.) 56B
  possessive adjectives (*my/your/her* etc.) 60, 62
  something/anybody etc. + adjective 79C
  adjectives + preposition (*afraid of* etc.) 112A
adverbs 86
  word order (*always/usually/often* etc.) 94
advise (*advise somebody to* ...) 53B
afraid (of) 112A
after 98, 105
ago 19B
all
  all and *every* etc. 80
  all (of) 81
  word order 94
along 110
already 95C
  already + present perfect 16B
  word order 94
also (word order) 94
always
  always + present simple 5C
  word order 94
am/is/are 1–2
  am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  there is / there are 37
an see **a**
and 97
angry (with/about) 112A
another 65B
any
  any and *some* 76
  not + *any* 77
  any and *no* 77
  any (of) 81
anybody/anyone/anything 76D, 78–79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (*I'm, it's* etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 64
are see **am/is/are**
around 110, 114–115, Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (*a/an/the*) 65–73
  a/an 65, 67–68
  a/an and *the* 69
  the 70–73
as (*not as* ... *as*) 89
ask
  ask somebody to ... 53B
  ask somebody for ... 113A
at
  at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103
  at the bus stop / at work etc. 106–107
  at and *to* 108
  at the age of ... 111B
auxiliary verbs 23, 40–42
away
  run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

back
  come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
be (infinitive of *am/is/are*)
  am/is/are 1–2
  am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  was/were 10
  was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18
  passive 21–22, Appendix 1
  will be 27
because 97
been
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18
  been and *gone* 17C
  there has/have been 38B
before 98, 105
begin (*begin to* ... or *begin -ing*) 52C
behind 109A
belong (to) 113A
below 109E
beside 109A
best 90B
better 87D
between 109A
bit (*a bit older/bigger* etc.) 88D
born 21C
both 82
  word order 94
but 97
by 111C
  by after the passive (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 21D
  by myself / by yourself etc. 63C
  by (= *beside*) 109C

can/can't 30
comparative (*older / more expensive* etc.) 87–89
conditional (*if* ...)
  if I do ... 99
  if I did ... 100
conjunctions 97–100
  and/but/or/so/because 97
  when/before/while/after/until 98
  if 99–100
continue (*continue to* ... or *continue -ing*) 52C
contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've* etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 30C–D
countable and uncountable nouns 67–68

depend (on) 113C
did
  didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
  did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A
different (from) 112A
direct speech and reported speech 50
do and **make** 57
  don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
  do/does in questions 7, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A
  don't go / don't fall etc. (imperative) 35B
down 110
  sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
during 105

Index

each other 63D
either
  either and *too* 42A
  either (of) 82
embedded questions (*Do you know what … ? etc.*) 49
end (*at the end of*) 103B, 106B
enjoy
  enjoy -ing 52B
  enjoy myself/yourself etc. 63A
enough 91
  enough and *too* 92D
ever
  Have you ever … ? 17
  superlative + *ever* 90E
  word order 94
every 80
everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere 80C
expect 52A, 53B

far
  How far is it? 39A, 47D
  far → further 87B
fast 86C
fed up (**with**) 112A
few / **a few** 84
finish (*finish -ing*) 52B
for
  for ten minutes / for three years etc. 19, 104D
  for and *to …* 54B
  go for a walk etc. 55C
  for and *during* 105C
from 104A, 110
front (*in front of*) 109A–B
full (**of**) 112A
further 87B
future 25–28
  I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous) 25
  The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 25C
  (I'm) going to (do something) 26
  will 27–28
  shall 27D, 28C
  future after *when/before/while* etc. 98B
  future after *if* 99B

geographical names with and without *the* 73
gerund see **-ing**
get 56
  get to (a place) 56C, 108C
  get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114, Appendix 6

give
  give something to somebody / give somebody something 96
  give up / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 6–7
go 55
  go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
  go home / go to work / go to the cinema 71
  go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114
going to (*I'm going to do something*) 26
gone and **been** 17C
good
  good and *well* 86D
  good at 112A
got
  past of *get* 11C, 56
  have/has got 9, 58A

had
past of *have* 11C
  had to 33B
  He said he had (done something) 50, Appendix 1.1
happen (**to**) 113A
hard 86C
has see **have**
hate 52C–D
have 9, 58
  have got / has got 9, 58A
  have done / have been etc. (present perfect) 15–18, 23C
  have to 33
  have a nice time / have fun etc. 35A
  there has/have been 38B
  have breakfast / have a shower etc. 58B
her 59–60, 62
hers 61–62
herself 63
him 59, 62
himself 63
his 60–62
holiday (*on holiday*) 55B, 111A
home 55A, 71A, 108B
  get home 56C, 108C
how 47
  How long have you … ? (present perfect) 18
  how big? / how old? / how far? etc. 47D
  How long does it take? 48
  how much? / how many? 83A

I/**you**/**he**/**she** etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62

if 99–100
  if we go / If you see etc. 99
  if and *when* 99C
  if I had / if we went 100
  Do you know if … ? 49C
imperative (*do this / don't do that* etc.) 35
in
  in April / in summer etc. 103
  in a room / in hospital etc. 106–107
  in five minutes / in three years etc. 103E
  in and *to* 108
  put something in 110
  go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
infinitive (*do/see/play* etc.)
  infinitive (*do/see* etc.) and *to* + infinitive (*to do / to see* etc.) 51, 53
  can/will/should etc. + infinitive 51A
  verbs + *to* + infinitive (*I want to go* etc.) 51B, 52–53
  infinitive and *-ing* (*do/doing* etc.) 51–52
  I went to the shop to buy … (infinitive for purpose) 54
  infinitive and *for …* 54B
  adjective + infinitive (*it's easy to …*) 39B
  something to eat / nowhere to go etc. 79D
-ing (*doing/playing/going* etc.)
  am/is/are + *-ing* (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
  -ing and infinitive (*do/doing* etc.) 51–52
  verbs + *-ing* (*enjoy -ing* etc.) 52B–C
  go -ing (*go swimming* etc.) 55D
  prepositions + *-ing* 105D, 112B
interested (**in**) 112A
into 110
irregular verbs 11C, 24B, Appendix 2–3
is see **am**/**is**/**are**
it 39, 59B
  it is and *there is* 37B, 39A
  it's and *its* 60C
its 60

just
  just + present perfect 16A
  word order 94

- **kind** (*kind to somebody / kind of somebody*) 112A
- **know** (*Do you know where … ?*) 49

- **learn** (*learn to …*) 52A
- **left** (*on the left*) 109A
- **lend** (*lend something to somebody*) 96
- **less** 88C
- **let** 53D
- **let's** (*let's go / let's dance* etc.) 35C, 53D
- **like** (*What is it like?*) 46B
- **like** (verb)
  - *would like* 34, 52D, 53A
  - *do you like?* and *would you like?* 34C
  - *like to …* or *like -ing* 52C
- **listen (to)** 113A
- **little / a little** 84
- **look**
  - *look* + adjective (*look tired* etc.) 85C
  - *look at/for/after* 113B
- **lot (a lot of …)** 83
- **love** 52C–D

- **make** 57
  - *make somebody do something* 53D
  - *make* and *do* 57
- **many**
  - *many* and *much* 83
  - *not as many (as)* 89B
  - *too many* 92C
- **married**
  - *married to* 112A
  - *get married* 56B
- **may** 29D
- **me/you/him** etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
- **middle** (*in the middle of*) 107A, 109A
- **might** 29
- **mind** (*I don't mind -ing*) 52B
- **mine/yours/hers** etc. (possessive pronouns) 61–62
- **modal verbs** (*will/can/might* etc.) 27–34, 51A
- **more** 87C, 88
- **most**
  - *most (of)* 81
  - *the most expensive / the most difficult* etc. 90
- **much**
  - *much* and *many* 83
  - *much bigger / much more expensive* 88D
  - *not as much (as)* 89B
  - *too much* 92C
- **must** 31
- **mustn't** 31C
  - *must* and *should* 32E
  - *must* and *have to* 33D
- **my/your/his** etc. (possessive adjectives) 60, 62
- **myself/yourself** etc. (reflexive pronouns) 63

- **need**
  - *don't need to …* 31D
  - *need to …* 52A
- **negatives** 43
  - negative questions 44C
  - *no* and *none* 77
  - *not* + *any* 77–78
- **neither**
  - *Neither am I / Neither do I* etc. 42B
  - *neither (of)* 82
- **never**
  - *never* + present simple 5C
  - *never* + present perfect 17B
  - word order 94
- **next to** 109A
- **nice** (*nice to somebody / nice of somebody*) 112A
- **no** (*no money / no friends* etc.) 77A–B, 81B
- **nobody/no-one/nothing** 78–79
  - *no-one* and *none* 77C
- **none** 77B–C, 81B–C
- **nor** (*Nor am I / Nor do I* etc.) 42B
- **nouns** (countable and uncountable) 67–68
- **nowhere** 79

- **of**
  - *the roof of the building* etc. 64C
  - *the … of …* 73E
- **off** 110
  - *get off / turn off* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6
- **offer** (*to do something*) 52A
- **often**
  - *often* + present simple 5C
  - word order 94
- **on**
  - *on Monday / on 25 April* etc. 103
  - *on the table / on the wall* 106–107
  - *on the left/right* 109A
  - *on holiday / on television* etc. 111A
  - *go on* (*holiday/ a trip* etc.) 55B
  - *get on / put on* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- **one/ones** 75
- **opposite** 109B
- **or** 97A–B
- **ought to** 32F
- **our** 60, 62
- **ours** 61–62
- **ourselves** 63
- **out**
  - *out of* 110
  - *go out / put out* etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- **over** 110
  - *climb over / knock over* (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

- **pair** (*a pair of …*) 66B
- **passive** 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
  - present simple (*is done*) and past simple (*was done*) 21
  - present continuous (*is being done*) and present perfect (*has been done*) 22
  - *will/can/must* (etc.) *be done* Appendix 1.2
- **past** (*Go past the cinema …*) 110
- **past continuous** (*was/were* + *-ing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C
  - past continuous (*I was doing*) and past simple (*I did*) 14
  - past continuous passive Appendix 1.1
- **past participle** (*cleaned/done/seen* etc.) 24A
  - present perfect (*I have cleaned*) 15, 23C
  - passive (*the room was cleaned*) 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
  - regular (*cleaned*) and irregular (*seen*) 24B, Appendix 2–3
- **past perfect**
  - *He said he had (done something)* 50
  - active and passive Appendix 1.1
- **past simple** (*did/cleaned/saw* etc.) 11–12
  - negative (*didn't …*) 12, 43B
  - questions (*did … ?*) 12, 44B
  - *was/were* 10
  - regular (*cleaned*) and irregular verbs (*saw*) 11B–C, Appendix 2–3
  - past simple + *ago* 19B
  - past simple (*I did*) and present perfect (*I have done*) 20
  - past simple (*I did*) and past continuous (*I was doing*) 14
  - past simple passive (*the room was cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
  - *if* + past simple (*if I had / if we went*) 100
- **people** 66C–D
- **personal pronouns** (*I/me/you* etc.) 59, 62
- **persuade** (*persuade somebody to …*) 53B

phrasal verbs (*get up / put on* etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
plural (*cup → cups / man → men* etc.) 66
police (plural) 66D
possessive adjectives (*my/your/his* etc.) 60, 62
possessive pronouns (*mine/yours/his* etc.) 61–62
prefer 52C–D
prepositions 103–113
  at/on/in (time) 103
  for/since 19, 104
  until 104A–B
  before/after/during/while 105
  in/at/on (places) 106–107
  to/in/at (places) 108
  on 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A
  at 103, 106–108, 111B
  under/behind/opposite etc. (position) 109
  up/over/through etc. (movement) 110
  by 109C, 111C
  with/without 111D, 112B
  about 111E
  prepositions + *-ing* (*in -ing /without -ing* etc.) 105D, 112B
  adjective + prepositions (*afraid of* etc.) 112A
  verb + preposition (*listen to / wait for* etc.) 113
  prepositions at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 46
  prepositions in relative clauses (*the man she is talking to*) 102B
present continuous (*am/is/are + -ing*) 3–4, 23A, 51C
  negative (*I'm not -ing*) 3
  questions (*are you -ing?*) 4
  present continuous (*I am doing*) and present simple (*I do*) 8
  present continuous passive 22A, Appendix 1.1
  present continuous for the future (*What are you doing tomorrow?*) 25
present perfect (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C
  present perfect + *just* 16A
  present perfect + *already* 16B
  present perfect + *yet* 16C, 95B
  Have you ever ... ? 17
  gone and *been* 17C
  How long have you ... ? 18
  present perfect + *for/since* 18–19
  present perfect continuous (*I have been -ing*) 18B
  present perfect (*I have done*) and past simple (*I did*) 20
  present perfect passive 22B, Appendix 1.1
  regular and irregular verbs 15B, 24, Appendix 2–3
present simple (*I work / she works* etc.) 5–7, 23D
  negative (*don't/doesn't*) 6, 43B
  questions (*do/does ... ?*) 7, 44B
  present simple + *always/usually/never* etc. 5C
  present simple (*I do*) and present continuous (*I am doing*) 8
  present simple passive (*the room is cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
  present simple for the future (*The concert starts at 7.30.*) 25C
  present simple after *when/while* etc. 98B
  present simple after *if* 99B
promise (*promise to ...*) 52A
pronouns
  personal pronouns (*I/me/you* etc.) 59, 62
  possessive pronouns (*mine/yours* etc.) 61–62
  reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 63
  one/ones 75
  relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 101–102
put
  put something in ... 110
  put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7

questions 44–47
  am/is/are ... ? 2
  do/does ... ? (present simple) 7, 44B
  did ... ? (past simple) 12, 44B
  Why don't ... ? / Why isn't ... ? etc. 44C
  Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45
  preposition at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 46
  What / Which / How ... ? 47
  How long does it take? 48
  Do you know where ... ? (embedded questions) 49
  reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?* etc.) 41A
  question tags (*... do you? / ... isn't it?* etc.) 41B

reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 63
regular and irregular verbs 11, 24, Appendix 2–3
relative clauses 101–102
relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 101–102
reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?*) 41A
reported speech
  He said that ... / He told me that ... 50
  He told me to ... 53B–C
right (*on the right*) 109A
round 110
  turn round / show round (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

's (apostrophe **'s**) 64, Appendix 4.5
same 70B, 89E
say/said
  He said that ... (reported speech) 50
  say and *tell* 50B
scared (of) 112A
shall 27D, 28C
short forms (*I'm / it's / you've* etc.) Appendix 4
should 32
simple past see **past simple**
simple present see **present simple**
since 19A, 104C
singular and plural (*flower → flowers*) 66
so
  so am I / so do I etc. 42B
  I was tired, so I went to bed. 97
some
  some and *a/an* 67–68
  some and *any* 76
  some (of) 81
somebody/someone/something/somewhere 76, 79
sometimes
  sometimes + present simple 5C
  word order 94
sorry (*sorry about* and *sorry for*) 112A
speak (to) 113A
spelling Appendix 5
start (*start to ...* and *start -ing*) 52C
still 95
  word order 94
stop (*stop -ing*) 52B
suggest (*suggest -ing*) 52B
superlative (*the biggest / the most expensive* etc.) 90

tags (question tags) 41B
take (*How long does it take?*) 48
talk (to) 113A
tell/told
  He told me that ... 50
  tell and *say* 50B
  Can you tell me where ... ? 49A
  He told me to ... 53B–C
tenses
  active and passive Appendix 1.1
  present continuous (*I am doing*) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  present simple (*I do*) 5–7, 23D, 25C
  past simple (*I did*) 11–12, 14, 20, 23D
  past continuous (*I was doing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C
  present perfect (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C
  be/have/do in present and past tenses 23
than 88–89
that 74
  He said that ... (reported speech) 50C
  that and *this* 74
  a thing that ... (relative clauses) 101
the 69–73
  the and *a/an* 69
  the same 70B
  the sun / the sky etc. 70C
  the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc. 71B
  flowers / the flowers 72
  the in names of places 73
  the biggest / the most expensive etc. 90
their 60, 62
theirs 61, 62
them 59, 62
themselves 63
there
  there is/are 37
  there was/were 38A
  there has/have been 38B
  there will be 38C
  there is and *it is* 37B
these 74
think (*think about / think of*) 113A
this 74
those 74
through 110
till (= *until*) 104B
to
  time 104A
  places 108, 110
  go to ... 55A, 108A
  get to ... 56C, 108C
to + infinitive (*to go / to be* etc.)
  see **infinitive**
too 92
  too and *either* 42A
turn (*turn round / turn on* etc.) (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

uncountable nouns (*salt/water/music* etc.) 67–68
under 109D, 110
until 98B, 104A–B
up 110
  get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
us 59, 62
used (*I used to ...*) 36
usually
  usually + present simple 5C
  word order 94

verbs
  present tenses 1–9, 23, 25
  past tenses 10–14, 20, 23
  present perfect 15–20, 23
  passive 21–22, Appendix 1
  regular and irregular verbs 24, Appendix 2–3
  future 25–28
  modal verbs (*will/can/should* etc.) 27–34, 51A
  negatives 43
  questions 44–47
  reported speech 50
  verbs + *-ing* 51–52
  verbs + *to* ... (infinitive) 51–53
  verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to* etc.) 113
  phrasal verbs (*get up / put on* etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

wait (for) 54C, 113A
want
  want to ... 52A
  want somebody to ... 53A
was/were 10
  was/were + *-ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
  was/were done (passive) 21, 23B
  there was/were 38A
  if I was/were ... 100B
well 86D
were see **was**
what
  What ... ? and *Who ... ?* 45C
  What ... like? 46B
  What ... ? 47
  What ... ? and *Which ... ?* 47C
when 98
  when and *if* 99C
whether 49C
which
  Which ... ? 47
  Which ... ? and *What ... ?* 47C
  Which one/ones? 75B
  a thing which ... (relative clauses) 101
while 98, 105
who
  Who ... ? 45
  a person who ... (relative clauses) 101
whose (*Whose is this?*) 61D
will 27–28
  will and *shall* 27D, 28C
  won't 27A
  there will be 38C
with/without 111D
  with/without + *-ing* 112B
won't (= *will not*) 27A
word order
  questions 44–46
  present continuous questions 4B
  present simple questions 7B
  past simple questions 12D
  passive 21–22
  Do you know where ... ? (embedded questions) 49
  verb + object 93A
  place and time 93B
  always/usually/often etc. 94
  after *give/lend/send* etc. 96
worse 87D
worst 90B
would
  I'd like / would you like? 34
  would like/love etc. 52D
  He would buy a car if he had the money. 100

yet 95B
  yet + present perfect 16C
you 59, 62
your 60, 62
yours 61–62
yourself/yourselves 63